



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

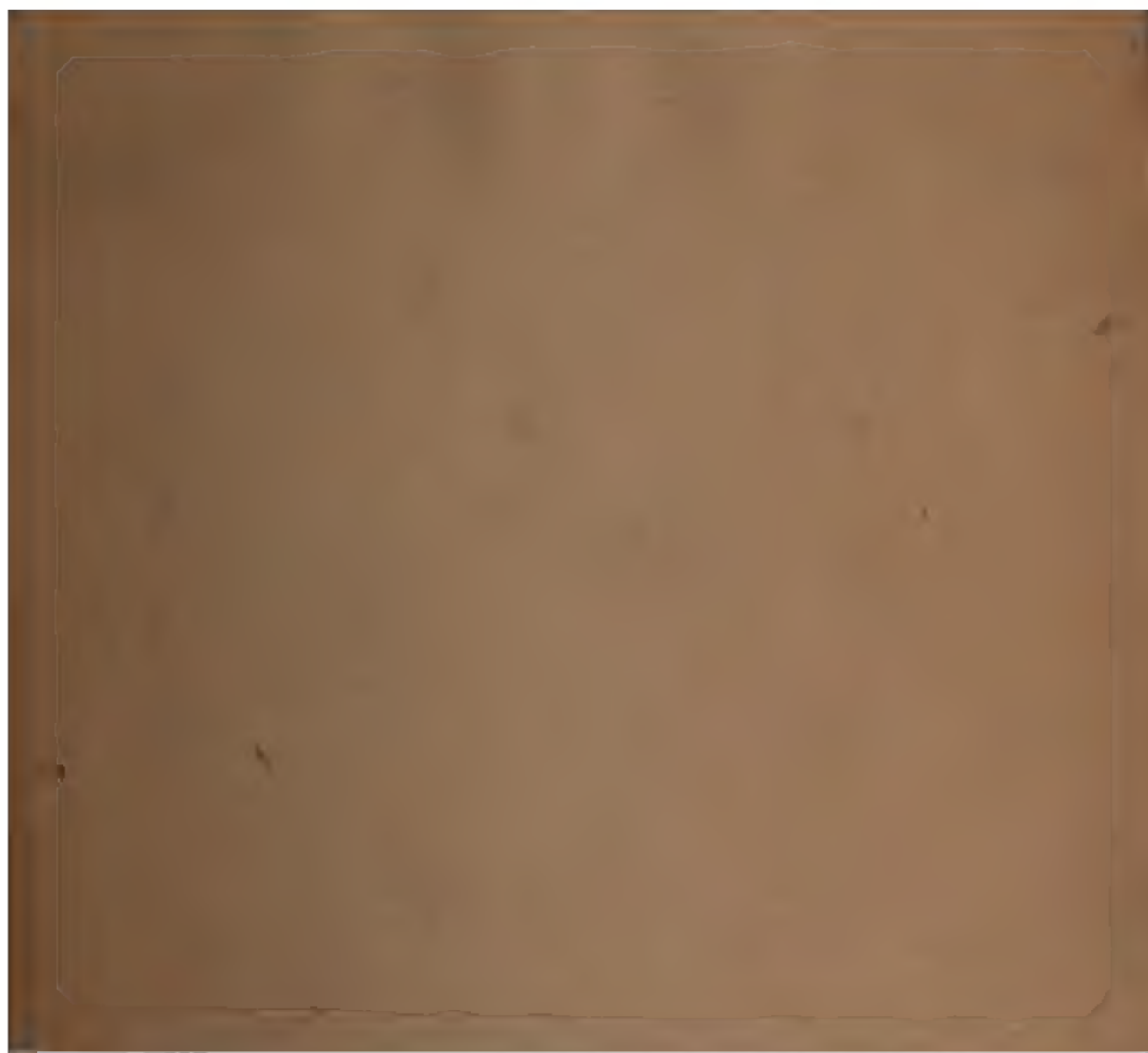
Wan 1158.34





W2v 1158.34

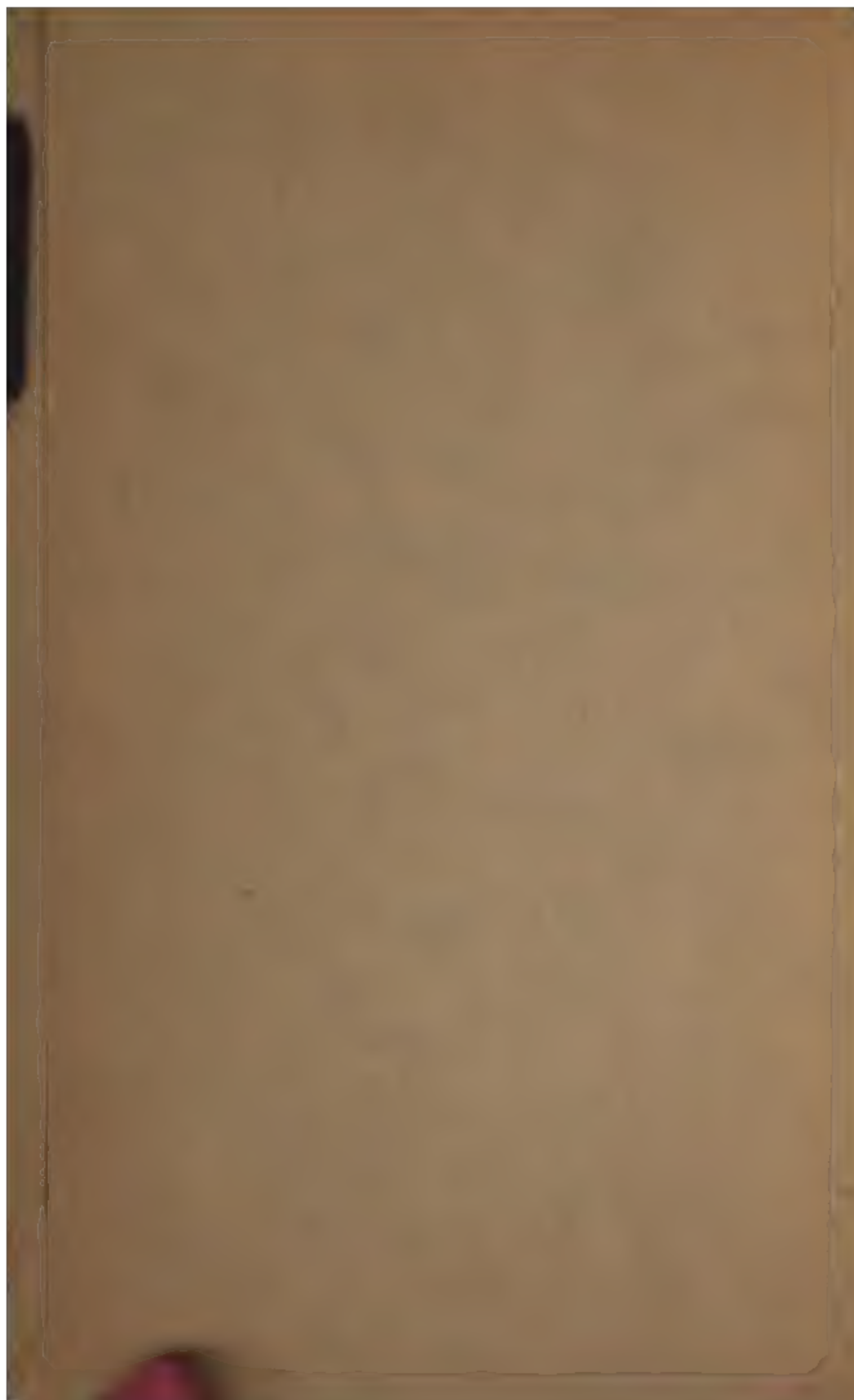




War 1158.34









A SYSTEM OF TACTICS

28:

Rules for the

Exercises and Manœuvres

of the

CAVALRY AND LIGHT INFANTRY

AND RIFLEMEN

of the

United States

War

By Authority of the Department of War.

City of Washington.

PRINTED & PUBLISHED

By Francis & John Blair

1834

at No. 12, N. 2, N. 2, N. 2

1878 Sept. 25.
Gift of
Prof. William Brewster,
of Cambridge.
(H. 1857.)

2044-7

~~VII 863~~

War 1158.34

BOUND SEP 4, 1914

WASHINGTON, December 11, 1826.

Sir: The Board of Officers assembled at this City, under your orders of October 5, 1826, among other purposes, to report "*A Complete System of Cavalry Tactics*," have now the honor to submit, through its Recorder, (Lieutenant Eakin,) the annexed sheets.

WINFIELD SCOTT,

Maj. Gen. and Pres. of the Board.

T. CADWALADER,

Maj. Gen. Penn. Militia.

WM. H. SUMNER,

Adj. Gen. Massachusetts.

BEVERLY DANIEL,

Adj. Gen. of the Militia, N. C.

ABRM. EUSTIS,

Lieutenant Col. 4th Artillery.

Z. TAYLOR,

Lt. Col. 1st Reg. U. S. Infantry.

E. CUTLER,

Lieutenant Colonel 3d Infantry.

CHARLES J. NOURSE,

U. S. A.

TO THE SECRETARY OF WAR.



TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CAVALRY TACTICS,

PAGE.

SECTION I.

ARTICLE I..... 1

ARTICLE II.

On horses intended for military service..... 1

ARTICLE III.

Instructions for training a young horse..... 2

Bridling..... 2

Cavesson..... 3

Longing..... 3

Trot..... 4

Bending..... 5

Reining back..... 5

Saddling..... 5

Girthing..... 6

Crupper..... 6

Breast plate..... 6

Mounting..... 7

Walk..... 7

Trot..... 8

Aids..... 8

ARTICLE IV.

Mode of accustoming horses to military noises, &c..... 8

ARTICLE V.

Of the equipments of the horse..... 9

The saddle..... 9

The bridle..... 10

The halter..... 10

Manner of saddling..... 10

Manner of bridling..... 11

Manner of unbridling..... 11

Manner of unsaddling..... 12

Manner of folding the cloak..... 12

ARTICLE VI.

Nomenclature of the pistol..... 13

Nomenclature of the sword..... 13

SECTION II.

ARTICLE I.

Of the soundings..... 13

ARTICLE II.

Of the assembly of a regiment, (mounted).....	14
Form of escorting the standards of a regiment.....	14
Composition of the regiment.....	15

ARTICLE III.

Formation of a regiment, of four squadrons, in order of battle, (or line)	16
Posts of the field officers and staff, of a regiment of cavalry, in order of battle, (or line).....	17
Posts of officers and non-commissioned officers, of a squadron, in order of battle.....	18

ARTICLE IV.

Formation of a regiment in column.....	20
Column of twos or fours.....	20
Column of platoons.....	21
Column of divisions.....	22
Close column.....	22

ARTICLE V.

Definitions and general principles.....	23
---	----

SECTION III.

School of the Trooper, (dismounted.)

ARTICLE I.

Lesson 1. Position of the trooper.....	27
Facings	28
Principles of the ordinary step.....	28

ARTICLE II.

Lesson 2. Marching to the front.....	30
To march by a flank.....	31

CONTENTS.

Lesson 3. Instruction of the men without the longe	and stirrups	21
To mount		
To march to the right hand		
to the left hand		
Changes of direction		
To passage		
To close the files		21
Alignment		22
Wheelings		22
Lesson 4. Instruction of the men without the longe, and full bridle		23
To form in two ranks		
To form in one rank, (from two)		
Alignment in two ranks		
Wheelings in two ranks		
Lesson 5. Movements by four		
Of the direct march		
Of the oblique march		
Of wheelings		
To open the ranks		
Inspection of arms		
To draw swords		
Pistol exercise		
Sword exercise		
Lesson 6. Exercising at the gallop		70
Running at the ring, and giving edge		71
Leaping		72
Principles and practice of the charge		73

SECTION V.

School of the Squadron, (dismounted.)

ARTICLE I.

To open ranks	75
To close ranks	75
To march in column	75

ARTICLE II.

To change direction in column at full distance	76
--	----

ARTICLE III.

To halt the column	79
--------------------	----

ARTICLE IV.

To form line to the left from column at full distance	80
---	----

School of the Squadron, (mounted.)

ARTICLE V.

The first military march	81
--------------------------	----

	Page.
ARTICLE VI.	
To form platoons.....	81
Front, left, or right, into line.....	82
ARTICLE VII.	
The second military march.....	83
ARTICLE VIII.	
The third military march.....	83
ARTICLE IX.	
Of alignments.....	84
ARTICLE X.	
Alignments of platoons, in the squadron.....	85
ARTICLE XI.	
Alignment of the squadron.....	86
ARTICLE XII.	
Of the direct march.....	87
ARTICLE XIII.	
Of the direct march by single ranks of platoons.....	88
Of the direct march in squadron.....	89
ARTICLE XIV.	
Wheelings.....	92
ARTICLE XV.	
Of the oblique march, by file.....	96
ARTICLE XVI.	
Of the march by a flank.....	97
ARTICLE XVII.	
Of the march in column.....	99

	PAGE.
Changes of pace in column	106
Change of direction by successive wheels.....	107
The squadron marching in column of platoons, right in front, to form line on its right flank.....	108
Breaking by the left to march to the right; marching in column; changes of direction, and the formations with the left in front	109
To break to the rear, by the right, to march to the left.....	109
The squadron being in column of platoons, to form line to the front.....	109
The squadron being in line, to break to the right by platoons, to move forward after the wheel, and without a halt.....	110
The squadron in column of platoons, right in front, to form line to the front by inversion.....	110
The squadron marching in line, to wheel it about to the right or left by fours.....	111
The squadron marching in line, to march it to the rear.....	112
The squadron marching in line, to break to the front by platoons	112
Change of direction of a column, from a halt.....	113
Of the formation of the squadron....	114
Passage of obstacles, the squadron marching in line.....	114
Of the oblique march by platoons.....	115
Of the countermarch.....	116

ARTICLE XIX.

The squadron being in line, to exercise it in the charge.....	117
---	-----

ARTICLE XX.

Skirmishing.....	118
Rallying.....	119

SECTION VI.

Manœuvres of the line.....	120
Preliminary remarks.....	120
Of the choice of points of direction.....	121
Manner of fixing the intermediate points when a single point of direction only is established.....	122
Manner of fixing the intermediate points between two given points.....	122

ARTICLE I.

Of the different modes of forming column from line.....	123
<i>First Manœuvre.</i> To form into close column, from a halt.....	123

ARTICLE II.

Of the march in column.....	125
<i>Second Manœuvre.</i> To pass from open to close column by the successive formation of squadrons.....	126
To change direction of a close column from a halt.....	127
To change direction of the close column on a march.....	127
To diminish the front of a close column, or to change it to an open column.....	128

ARTICLE III.

Of the different modes of passing from column into line.....	129
<i>Third Manœuvre</i>	129
<i>Fourth Manœuvre</i> . To form into line on the right or left.....	129
<i>Fifth Manœuvre</i> . To form line to the front.....	130
<i>Sixth Manœuvre</i> . To form line faced to the rear.....	132
<i>Seventh Manœuvre</i> . To form line upon a central platoon.....	133
<i>Eighth Manœuvre</i> . Formation in line by two movements....	135
<i>Ninth Manœuvre</i> . Deployment of a close column, to the front or rear.....	136
<i>Tenth Manœuvre</i> . To deploy a close column upon one of its flanks.....	137

ARTICLE IV.

Passage of lines.....	138
<i>Eleventh Manœuvre</i>	138
Movement of the first line.....	139
Movement of the second line.....	140
Passage of the second line to front.....	140
<i>Twelfth Manœuvre</i>	141
Chequered retreat from a halt	141

ARTICLE V.

Changes of front.....	143
<i>Thirteenth Manœuvre</i> . Change of front upon the wings and upon the centre	143

ARTICLE VI.

Passage of defiles.....	145
<i>Fourteenth Manœuvre</i> . Passage of a defile to the front from line	145
<i>Fifteenth Manœuvre</i> . Passage of a defile to the rear from line..	147

ARTICLE VII.

Of the march by echelons.....	149
<i>Sixteenth Manœuvre</i> To march by echelons, advancing and re-	149

APPENDIX.

Page.

ARTICLE XI.

Compliments by cavalry under review.....	159
--	-----

ARTICLE XII.

Form and course of inspection, &c.....	161
--	-----

ARTICLE XIII.

Assembly, inspection, and parade of guards.....	163
---	-----

LIGHT INFANTRY AND RIFLE TACTICS.

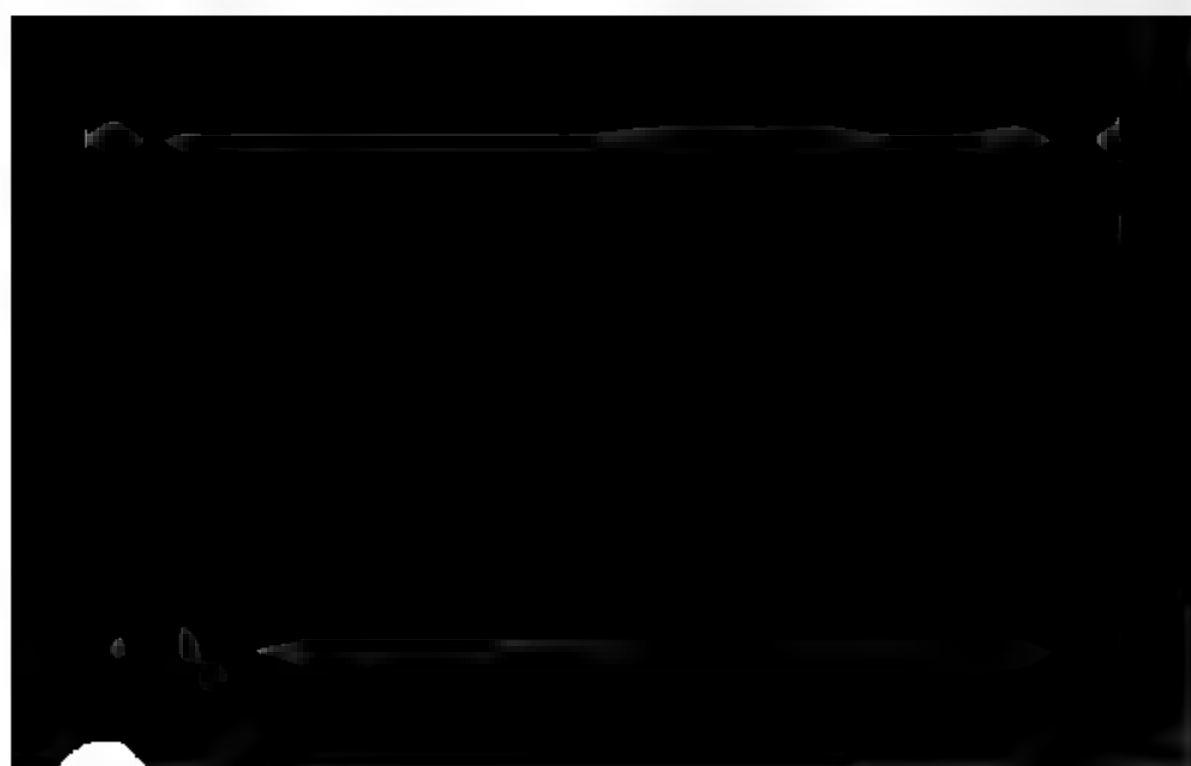
COMPANY.

Manual exercise.....	171
To load as riflemen.....	173
To load as light infantry.....	173
Firing.....	176
To fire and load, kneeling and lying.....	180
To march by a flank.....	181
To change direction by file.....	182
To halt the company marching by a flank, and to front it.....	183
To advance by files from the right or left.....	183
To retire by file from the right or left.....	184
To form single file.....	185
Formations in line, from file.....	186
To the front.....	186
On the right (or left).....	187
Faced to the rear.....	187
To advance by files from the centre.....	187
Advancing by files from the centre, to form line to the front....	188
Advancing by files from the centre, to form line on either flank	188
To retire by files from the centre.....	189
Retiring by files from the centre, to form line, faced to the then rear.....	189
Countermarch.....	190
Change of front.....	191
To break into column.....	192
To resume the formation in line.....	193
To the left.....	193
To march in column.....	193
To change direction in column, at full distance.....	194
To halt the column.....	196
To form line on the right or left, from column at full distance.	197
Diminishing and increasing front, by platoons and sections.....	198
Diminishing.....	198
Increasing.....	199
Column of route.....	199
Diminishing and increasing front, by files.....	201
To extend.....	202
Supports and reserves.....	204

	Page.
To fire in extended order.....	205
Advancing.....	205
Retiring.....	206
Intervals between ranks.....	206
To cease firing.....	207
To close.....	208
To recall.....	208
To halt.....	208
To annul.....	208
To incline.....	209
To throw forward a flank.....	209
Too fast (or too slow).....	209
Signals.....	209
Simple signals.....	209
Combined signals.....	210

BATTALION.

To open ranks.....	210
To close ranks.....	211
Firings.....	211
To march by a flank.....	215
To advance by the right (or left) of companies.....	216
To retire by the right (or left) of companies.....	216
To advance by the centre of companies.....	217
To retire by the centre of companies.....	217
Formations in line, from file.....	217
To the front.....	217
On either flank, or at any angle forward of the original line.....	219
Faced to the rear of the march retiring.....	220
On either flank retiring, at any angle in rear of the original line.....	221
Different methods of forming open column.....	222
To break into column.....	222
To file into column.....	222



CAVALRY TACTICS.

SECTION I.

ARTICLE FIRST.

1. The commanding officer of every regiment, squadron, or troop, is responsible for its instruction and discipline.

2. The training of the horses, riding lessons, and instruction, embraced in the school of the trooper, will be given in a ridinghouse. If there be no such establishment, a piece of ground, one hundred and twenty feet long and eighty feet wide, may be used, enclosed with a fence, or at least the corners marked with posts, in order to exercise only inside of them.

ARTICLE SECOND.

On Horses intended for Military Service.

3. A horse, intended for military service, ought to be of the middle height, (about fifteen hands.) He should have a good mouth, and an upright carriage; he ought to be light in hand and yielding to the bit; good tempered, cool, bold, and powerful: but supple, light in the shoulders, and strong in the haunches. He must be neither vicious nor apt to start: for vicious or shy horses can never be well broken; they relapse into their faults after some days of rest, or bad riding. A trooper cannot, at one and the same time, fight the enemy and struggle with his horse. Stallions are generally troublesome in the ranks. White and grey horses are too conspicuous, and are never to be employed in the night patrols, or where concealment is desirable.

4. When a horse has the good qualities abovementioned, it will be easy to train him for the purposes of war; to render him supple and obedient to the hand and legs, and prompt in executing whatever his rider may require, without having a will of his own. He must move readily at a walk, trot, or gallop; must change those paces quickly; stop short, or turn to the right, left, or about, at either of them. He should be taught to rein back, and to passage to either side; to leap standing and flying, and to stand quietly in mounting and dismounting.

5. Besides these requisites, so essential to fit a horse for the ranks, it is absolutely necessary to accustom him to the rattle, flash, and movement of arms; the fire of cannon and musketry; to the smoke and smell of powder; the waving of colors, and the noise of drums and trumpets. Gentle means will always succeed best; many an excellent horse is spoiled, and made restive, by injudicious handling. Few horses are naturally vicious.

ARTICLE THIRD.

Instructions for Training a Young Horse.

6. The first object in the training of a horse is, by gentle and progressive lessons, to make him familiar and tractable; and, for that purpose, all the means which can be devised must be resorted to, such as feeding, patting, handling, rubbing him, taking up his feet, &c.

7. The practice of the *longe* is intended to facilitate this end, as well as to render him supple, and to teach him to move forward, to stop,

both corners of it, without gagging or making him uneasy; the throat band must be sufficiently slack to admit the breadth of three fingers under the jaw bone. The snaffle reins are to be tied, so as to hang loose and easy about his neck.

Cavesson.—(PLATE 1.)

10. The snaffle bridle having been properly fitted, the horse should be encouraged, and the cavesson put on. It should be placed about three inches above the nostrils; if higher, it would partly lose its power; if lower, it would affect his breathing. The strap of the cavesson, (which should act both as a nose band and curb) going under the snaffle, must not be buckled too tight, as the horse would thereby be made uneasy; the additional strap, from cheek piece to cheek piece, under the jaw bone, is to keep the cavesson back from his eyes.

11. These preparations should be made by two men only: if more be employed, a young horse is apt to take alarm. No noise with whips should be made, and care should at all times be taken, that nothing hurt, constrain, tickle, or otherwise annoy him.

12. The first lesson to be taught a young horse is *to go forward*; and, until he does this freely, nothing else should be required of him, as it would probably cause him to become restive. When he is accustomed to go forward *readily*, he should be occasionally stopped and caressed.

Longing.

13. This lesson should be commenced on a circle, from twenty to thirty yards in diameter. It is of very little importance upon which hand the *longing* is begun, provided the horse be rendered equally familiar with the practice on either hand; but, as horses are usually fed, watered, saddled, and led, on the *near* side, they are generally inclined to follow and lead better by the *left* rein, than by the right. If it should be found that a horse is less tractable on the *off* than on the *near* side, two lessons may be given on the *right*, to one on the *left*. A young horse must not be deemed to be restive if he should hesitate or stand still when it is intended that he should move on, such hesitation is often caused by alarm, which may be overcome by encouragement.

14. A man with a whip, (with which the horse must not be struck,) following at a distance, should show it now and then when the horse seems to hang back, and he should strike the ground in the rear of the horse, if he should disregard the encouragement of the man who leads him.

15. Whenever the horse's head requires to be rendered steady, it should be carefully done with the cavesson, and not with the snaffle rein; by this mode the horse's mouth will not only be preserved, but the feeling of the different aids of the longing rein be more easily understood by him. When the horse is borne up by the snaffle, and the man pulls him with the cavesson rein, the snaffle bit being thus drawn, reins him back, and the animal is confused by the counteraction of the aids.

Trot.

16. After the horse has been led several times round the riding-house, or circle, at a walk, the man holding the longing rein should gently urge him to a *trot*. Should the horse go quietly, he may gradually lengthen the longing rein, so that the horse may scarcely feel the effect of it; he should continue to go round the circle at an active pace, nearly opposite the horse's shoulders, so as to keep him out, and to urge him forward.

17. If the horse takes kindly to his lesson, the man with the whip will be sufficient to keep him out to the circle and up to his pace; and the man holding the cavesson may lengthen it by degrees, until



19. Having practised the above lesson for a few days, the horse may be urged a little more in the trot; but the greatest care and attention are requisite to teach him to use his limbs without straining them; an accident which may easily occur in this lesson by a sudden jerk, or by a too forcible pull of the cavesson.

Bending.

20. After each lesson, which ought never to be so long as to fatigue the horse, he should be encouraged and led into the centre of the circle, and placed straight upon all fours; he should be caressed, and a few oats may be given to him. The man holding the longing rein should take it short in one hand, at the same time patting and rubbing the horse about the neck and head with the other; he should then try with the right hand to *bend* the horse's neck a little to the right; the *bend* ought to be in the very poll of the neck. This must be done very carefully and by slow degrees; and by being repeated after each lesson, to the left as well as to the right, it will greatly facilitate the future instruction of the animal.

Reining back.

21. After the above lesson of bending, the horse must be tried to *rein back*; to effect this the man who holds the cavesson, placing himself in front, and facing the horse, should take the snaffle reins, near the ring of the bit, in both hands, and endeavor, by a gentle and alternate pressure of the bit against the bars of the horse's mouth, to make him go back a step or two, always moving him forward after reining him back; if he yield to the pressure of the bit, this will at first be sufficient.

Saddling.

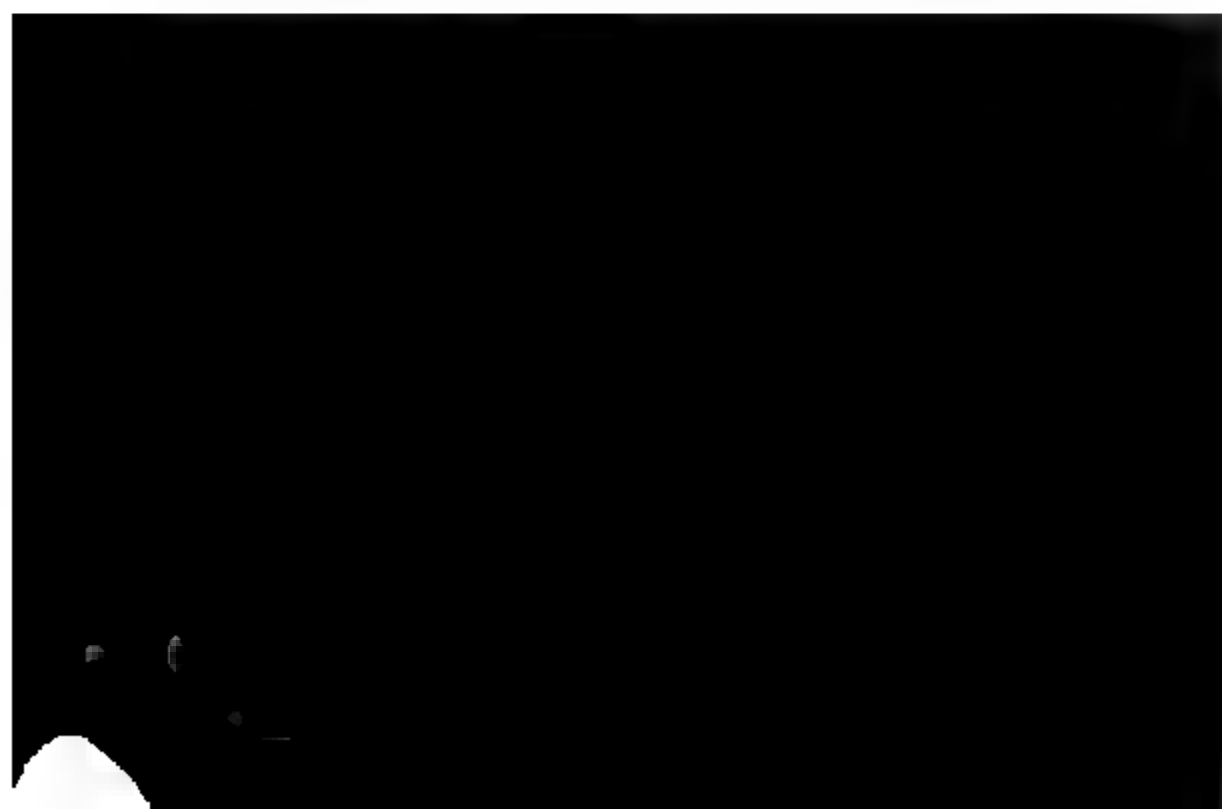
22. The greatest caution is requisite in *saddling* a young horse; which should be done, in the first instance, in the ridinghouse or longing ground. One of the men, facing the horse, and taking the snaffle in both hands, near the ring of the bit, should hold him, while the other gently places the saddle on his back, holding it with both hands and passing it over the croup, the girths and stirrups being laid upon it. The girths may then be carefully let down. The saddle is to be placed in the middle of the horse's back, the front of it about the breadth of a hand behind the play of the shoulders.

Girthing.

23. Having placed the saddle, and the horse showing no uneasiness or symptoms of resistance, the man may take the girths very gently and draw them on each strap, loosely at first, so as merely to prevent the saddle from falling off; he may afterwards tighten them by degrees, by drawing them on the straps, alternately, a single hole at a time; great care must be taken that the girths be not drawn so tightly as to occasion uneasiness to the horse; they should always admit of the fingers being passed between them and the body. The horse, being thus treated kindly and carefully, and the saddle kept on his back for a few hours each day, will soon bear to be saddled with less precaution; a proper degree of caution is, however, to be always observed in *girthing* horses, whether young or old.

Crupper.

24. Great caution must also be used in putting on the *crupper*; any mismanagement in the early attempts is very likely to create a difficulty which will not be easily overcome. Almost all horses will bear a smooth, firm handling of their quarters and tail, if gradually introduced by patting and rubbing the body; but few will suffer a light or undecided touch. In putting on the *crupper* care must be taken that none of the long hair of the tail remain between it and the *crupper*. The *crupper*, when properly fitted and placed, should admit the breadth of the hand between it and the croup of the horse.



the stirrups may be let down, in order to accustom him to them; he is now to go through the former longing lesson. No attempt to mount him should be made until he becomes reconciled to the saddle.

28. After the horse has gone through these lessons, he should be bent to the right and left, and be reined back a few paces, in the manner before directed.

Mounting.

29. When practice shall have reconciled the young horse to the saddle, and the instructor deems him sufficiently prepared by the previous exercise of the longe, he will be mounted.

30. Great caution and quietness are necessary to this important operation, and two men should assist the person who is to mount: one with the cavesson, facing the horse, is to hold him with the bridle, keeping his head rather high, and engaging his attention; the other, on the off side, should take hold of the stirrup leather, near the saddletree, with the thumb upon the strap and the fingers under it; and, by pressing upon it with the elbow at the proper moment, endeavor, by preserving the equilibrium of the saddle, to prevent the horse being disturbed while the man is mounting. The man who is to mount, (who should at first be without spurs,) must proceed with great gentleness, frequently commencing, desisting, and recommencing, until, by an imperceptible progression, flattering and caressing the horse between each attempt, he finally seats himself in the saddle.

Walk.

31. If the horse has been perfectly quiet during the above process he may be carefully led forward, and encouraged; the man who leads the horse by the cavesson rein, should fix his eyes attentively upon him; should he perceive any disposition to kick or plunge he must endeavor, by gently shaking the cavesson, to keep the horse's head up, and to engage his attention; he should then be led round the circle at a walk, right and left, formed up in the centre, caressed, and a few oats given to him. The man should dismount with the same care and attention; he should once more mount and dismount, pat and stroke the horse, to signify his satisfaction with his performance, bend his head to the right and left, make him step back a pace or two, and dismiss him.

32. This lesson should be continued for a few days, until the horse performs it with ease to himself, and allows the man to mount and dismount without the least restraint.

33. When the horse becomes familiar with the circle, and is accustomed, by the gentle application of the aids, to go forward, to bend, and turn to the right and left, to rein back, and to halt—the cavesson may be taken off, and the horse may be ridden round the ridinghouse or lunging ground, the man on foot occasionally assisting.

Trot.

34. The horse must be confirmed in the *walk* and *trot* round the ridinghouse. The quicker paces grow out of each other. When the horse *walks freely*, he is to be pressed into a *trot*, moderately at first, supported by a light and lively hand; then into a *full trot*, whenever the instructor shall deem him to be sufficiently practised in the previous lessons.

Aids.

35. All *aids* with a young horse, particularly in his early lessons, ought to be as simple as possible, in order that they may be easily distinguished by the animal.

36. The necessary precautions being at all times observed, the attention of the horse constantly kept alive, and nothing required of him but what he has been prepared for by previous and progressive lessons, a ready compliance, on the part of the animal, with the wishes of his instructor, will be found almost without exception, to

firings, to allow time for the horse to become composed; but as he begins to show less and less alarm, the fire will be repeated more rapidly.

39. Every opportunity will be taken to render the horse familiar to the sight and noise of soldiers under arms, and to the manual movements, music, and firings; the rider will not approach too suddenly; but will follow their movements, in the first instance, bringing the horse nearer by degrees, and as his uneasiness subsides. The horse, then placed between old and steady horses, will be rode slowly towards a squad while firing—the squad ceasing to fire when the horses approach within twenty-five yards, and retiring in the first instance; after which the horses are rode up to them and caressed. By similar means, horses are to be rendered indifferent to the waving of standards and colors, and to all the sights and noises of war.

40. In the whole course of the instruction of the horse, but in this part of it especially, gentle treatment and patience will be the most effectual auxiliaries; and it is seldom difficult to accomplish the task unless the animal has been injured or rendered timid by previous severity. The idea of overcoming fear by force is quite a mistaken one.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

41. *Of the Equipments of the Horse.*

*The Saddle.** (PLATE 2.) Its several parts, as seen in its covered state, are:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. The head, or pommel. | 5. Two flaps. |
| 2. Seat. | 6. Loop for halter strap. |
| 3. Cantle. | 7. Two loops for strap of hobler pipe. |
| 4. Two skirts. | |

* The saddle, bridle, and other equipments, commonly in use in the United States, are here described.

The *Hussar Saddle* is, however, preferable, and is accordingly recommended; it is covered with a skin called a *Schabracke*, through which the cantle peak passes, protecting the value as well as the holsters; the surcingle is buckled over it.—See Plate 3, 2d Fig. 1 and 2.

The saddle has the following appendages:

8. Two stirrup straps.

9. Two stirrups, (each consisting of an eye, 10; and bottom iron, 11.)

12. Girth.

13. Housing.

The breast plate. (PLATE 2. 2d No. 7.)

Crupper. (PLATE 5.)

Holsters. (The upper part called the body, the lower the pipe.

The right holster ought to contain a horse shoe, nails, curry-comb, and brush, &c., and ought to be six inches wide. PLATE 3.)

The Bridle, (snaffle and curb; the front uniting the two head stalls,) consisting of the following parts: (PLATE 4.)

1. Head piece.

6. Snaffle reins.

2. Cheek piece.

7. Curb reins

3. Front.

8. Snaffle bit.

4. Nose band.

9. Curb bit.

5. Throat strap.

The Halter, (PLATE 5,) consisting of—

1. Head stall.

2. Two linking rings.

3. Halter strap, (10 feet long, and tapering 2 feet from the end.)

Manner of Saddling.

42. After fixing the blanket in the proper number of folds, according to its size, the trooper will place it on the horse's back, so that the corners will hang on the sides; he will be careful to pass it over



seize the crupper with the right hand, and pass it over the tail; in putting on the crupper, care must be taken that none of the long hair of the tail remain between it and the crupper; he will then repair to the off-side, raise the saddle in order to carry it forward, let down the stirrups, breast plate, surcingle, and girth; and pass the girth through the loop of the strap attached to the breast plate, taking care that the strap is adjusted in the centre, between the horse's legs; he then returns to the near side, round the horse's head, and buckles the breast plate.

45. The position of the saddle, on the horse, is described in page 5.

Manner of Bridling.

46. The trooper will pass his left hand first between the reins of the curb and snaffle, and then between the top of the head piece and the front, the bridle thus hanging on his left arm; he will then detach the end of the halter strap from the ring to which the horse has been fastened, and passing it along the near side of the neck will run the end of it through the loop in front of the pommel, so as to give full play to the head of the horse, and fastening the strap there with a sliding knot, will throw the end of it over the off side of the neck; he will then take the bridle by the top of the head piece with the right hand, the nails downwards, and seize the bits of the curb and snaffle above the cheek rings; pass his right arm over the horse's head in order to hold him, and press his left thumb on the bars to make him open his mouth, in which he will place, at the same time, the bits of the curb and snaffle; he will then pass the horse's ears between the front and the top of the head piece, fixing the right ear first; he will now buckle the nose band, and the throat strap, clear the forelock, hook the curb chain, and throw the reins over the horse's neck.

47. The bridle should exactly fit the head of the horse, so as to bring the bit to bear gently on the bars, without raising the corners of the lips; the nose band should not be tight; and the throat strap should be so easy as not to interfere with his respiration.

Manner of Unbridling.

48. The trooper will begin by unhooking the curb chain, unbuckling the nose band, and the throat strap; then he will bring the reins

of the curb and snaffle over the head piece with the right hand, passing them over the horse's ears, and take off the bridle; at the same time he will pass his left hand between the reins of the curb and snaffle, and between the top of the head piece and the front, the bridle hanging on his left arm, as before described in bridling; he will then unclip the knot of the halter strap from the loop on the pommel, and fasten the halter to the picket or stable ring.

Manner of Unsaddling.

49. The trooper will begin by unbuckling the breast plate; then the surcingle, and the girth, which last he will disengage from the loop of the strap attached to the breast plate; he will then gently throw over the saddle, the breast plate, surcingle, girth, and stirrups; then raise the saddle, and carry it a little towards the croup, in order to unfix the crupper; he will take off the saddle in the same manner that he placed it on the horse's back; he will then take off the blanket, bringing it over the croup, double it, so that the side that was on the horse's back be inwards, place it on the saddle, fixing it there by means of the crupper, which he will bring over the pommel, and pass the strap for the cloak through it; this will enable him to raise and carry off the saddle with facility.

Manner of Folding the Cloak.

50. The cloak will be folded wrong side outwards; the sides laid inwards, equally and smoothly, so that the cloak may be two feet in length, when folded; it will then be rolled neatly and tightly. When



loops, (2) four loops for valise straps, (3) and two straps (4) to attach it to the saddle.

53. The men ought to be frequently practised, in presence of their officers, in saddling, bridling, and accoutring their horses.

ARTICLE SIXTH.

54. *Nomenclature of the Pistol.*—(PLATE 7.)

A. Barrel.	K. Ramrod.
B. Stock.	L. Swivel.
C. Lock plate.	M. Band.
D. Cock.	N. Band spring.
E. Cock pin.	O. Guard.
F. Hammer.	P. Trigger.
G. Hammer spring.	Q. Side plate.
H. Pan.	R. Butt plate.
J. Slide.	S S. Sights.

Sword.—(PLATE 8.)

A. Blade and Scabbard.	D. Two Rings.
B. Gripe, }	E. Sword knot.
C. Guard, } Hilt.	

SECTION II.

ARTICLE FIRST.

55. *Of the Soundings.*—(See PLATES 66 to 72.)

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. The general. | 11. Cease firing. |
| 2. Boots and saddles. | 12. Officers' call. |
| 3. To horse. | 13. The reveille. |
| 4. The assembly. | 14. Stable call. |
| 5. The march, trot, and gallop. | 15. Watering call. |
| 6. The charge. | 16. Distributions. |
| 7. Disperse. | 17. Surgeons' call. |
| 8. The rally. | 18. Peas on the trencher, (break-fast call.) |
| 9. The halt. | |
| 10. The retreat. | 19. Daily fatigue call. |

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 20. Orders. | 23. Trumpeters' call. |
| 21. Roast beef, (dinner call.) | 24. Parade call, (for dress parade.) |
| 22. Sergeants' call. | 25. Tattoo. |

ARTICLE SECOND.

Of the Assembly of a Regiment, (Mounted.)

56. When the troops are called to arms, and the cavalry are to mount, for a march, *the general* will be sounded by all the trumpets; at which signal the men will pack necessities.

57. At the signal, *boots and saddles*, they will saddle, bridle, and accoutre horses.

58. At the signal *to horse*, the sergeants will turn out their squads, and march them to their respective troop parades, where they will be inspected by their officers, and rolls will be called. The troops will then be united in squadron, and reports made to its chief by the captains. The chief will then inspect his squadron, and at the sound of the *assembly*, will march it to join the regiment; when the colonel will receive the reports of the chiefs of squadrons of the two wings, through the lieutenant colonel and major.

59. After the regiment is formed, its commander will detach one of the flank troops, and all the trumpets, with an adjutant at their head, for the standards.

60. In case of alarm, or surprise, when the troops are to be under arms as quickly as possible, *to horse* will be sounded, instead of *the general*, when the men will pack up, saddle, bridle, and accoutre, at the

marching by fours, and will furnish a rear guard of a corporal and two men, who will march, with drawn swords, five paces in rear of the second platoon. Two other men, with drawn swords, ten paces in the rear, will close the march.

65. The captain will be on the left flank, abreast of the interval left for the standards, between the two platoons.

66. The junior second lieutenant on the right flank, in a line with the captain.

67. No music will sound on the outward march of the escort; nor are swords drawn, except by the advanced and rear guards.

68. When arrived at the place where the standards are lodged, the escort will be wheeled into line; the adjutant then dismounts, receives the standards, and hands them to the bearers, who are in the centre.

69. When the adjutant receives the standards, he faces to the escort, and the commandant orders *Draw—Sword*, when the officers salute, taking time from the commander, and trumpets flourish. The escort then wheels off, and returns to the regiment in the same order, with trumpets sounding; the standards in one rank.

70. The commander of the regiment or squadron, when the escort arrives within twenty-five paces of its flank, orders, *Draw—Sword*, when the officers salute; the escort then halts, and the standard bearers, filing out of the column, march down the front, boot top to boot top, each wheeling into his place as he comes opposite the centre of his squadron; and the escort, with the trumpets, passing by the rear, form into their places.

71. When the standards are at a distance from the regiment or squadron parade, the escort is detached before the *assembly*.

72. Standards are escorted back in the order prescribed above.

Composition of the Regiment.

73. The regiment is supposed to consist of four squadrons, of two divisions (or troops) each, and to be officered as follows:

One colonel.

One lieutenant colonel, who shall superintend the movements of the first and second squadrons; and

One major, who shall superintend the movements of the third and fourth squadrons.

74. Each division is supposed to consist of—

One captain,
 One first lieutenant,
 Two second lieutenants,
 Five sergeants,
 Five corporals,
 One saddler,
 One farrier,
 Two trumpeters, (or buglers,) and
 Sixty-two privates.

75. The regimental staff is supposed to consist of—

One adjutant } To be taken from the subalterns of
 One quartermaster, } the regiment.
 One surgeon,
 One assistant surgeon,
 One veterinary surgeon,
 One sergeant major,
 One quartermaster sergeant, and
 One trumpet major.

ARTICLE THIRD.

Formation of a Regiment of Four Squadrons in Order of Battle, or Line.—(PLATE 9.)

76. The squadrons of the same regiment will be designated as 1st,

2d, 3d and 4th, commencing from the right and the 5th be the



81. For the first rank will be selected the tallest and most intelligent men, and the best riders, with the tallest and best trained horses, as far as may be practicable.

82. Care will be taken to place upon the wings of platoons, the most steady and active horses.

83. The squadron will be formed in two ranks, distant two feet from each other, measuring from the croup of the horses of the front rank to the head of the one of the rear rank.

84. The squadron for exercise will be habitually of forty-eight files, as large a number as will probably be *present for duty*, consequently each division will be composed of twenty-four files, and each platoon of twelve. Sixty-four files is also a convenient number for exercise.

85. When the squadrons are formed, and the platoons equalised, in ranks of fours, if any files remain they are placed on the left of the regiment, to be disposed as the colonel may direct.

Posts of the Field Officers, and Staff of a Regiment of Cavalry, in Order of Battle, or Line.—(PLATE 9.)

86. The colonel in advance of the centre of the regiment eight paces from the front rank, having on his left, one pace retired, a lieutenant from the rank of file closers, or in case of deficiency, a sergeant; and behind him the trumpet major.

87. The lieutenant colonel shall be in advance of the interval between the first and second squadrons; and,

88. The major in advance of the interval between the third and fourth squadrons, both on a line with the colonel.

89. The colonel will move wherever his presence may be necessary, within the extent of his regiment; the lieutenant colonel and major wherever their presence may be necessary within the extent of their respective wings.

90. The lieutenant colonel, whenever the regiment is marching in line, dressed to the right, will be charged with the duty of giving the points of direction, and of superintending the guides, and the direction of the march.

91. The major will perform similar duties, when the regiment, marching in line, is dressed to the left.

92. The adjutant will be on the line of the front rank, two paces

from the right of the regiment, and the sergeant major on the same line, two paces from the left of the regiment. The adjutant shall aid the lieutenant colonel, and the sergeant major shall aid the major in the performance of their respective duties in the evolutions.

93. Hence the adjutant and sergeant major are not always named in the evolutions, it being understood that the lesser duties of the lieutenant colonel and major may be performed by their assistants, under their superintendence.

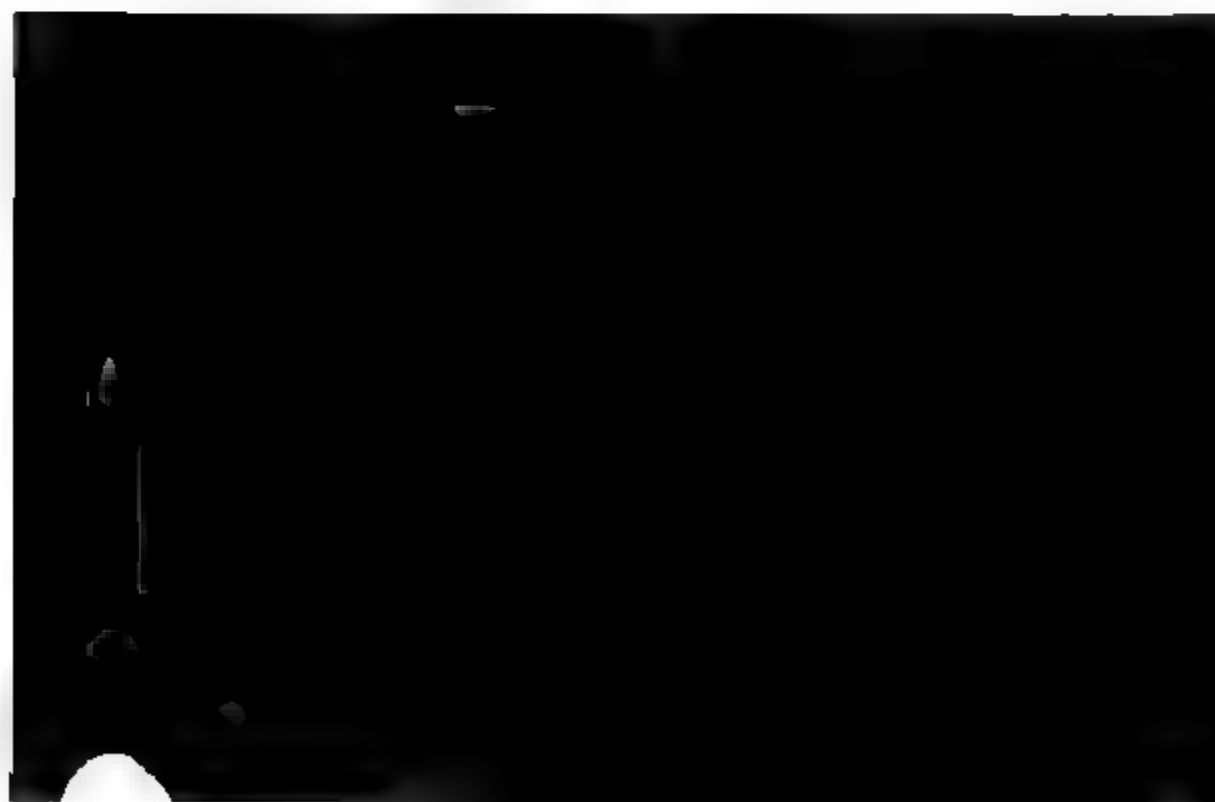
94. The colonel being absent, would be replaced by the lieutenant colonel, and the latter by the major. All the field officers being absent, the regiment would be commanded by the senior captain; but if one field officer be present, he would perform all the duties, as far as practicable, of the three, without (except in extraordinary cases) calling to his aid the senior captain, to act as field officer.

95. The quartermaster, surgeon, and his assistant, drawn up from right to left, in the order in which they are mentioned, will be posted in the rear of the right of the third squadron, four paces retired from the rank of file closers, having the veterinary surgeon on their left, at the distance of six paces.

96. The quartermaster sergeant will be in rear of the right of the second squadron, six paces retired from the rank of file closers.

97. And the trumpets will be placed twenty paces in the rear of the centre of the regiment.

Posts of Officers and Non-commissioned Officers of a Squadron in Order of Battle.



divisions, the heads of their horses one pace from the croupe of those of the rear rank.

103. Two sergeants will be in rear of the left of the squadron in the rank of file closers, and employed as general guides.

104. One sergeant will be placed on the right of the squadron, not told off in the rank.

105. A second on the left of the squadron not told off.

106. A third on the right of the second platoon.

107. A fourth on the right of the third platoon.

108. A fifth on the right of the fourth platoon.

109. A sixth on the left of the first platoon.

110. A seventh on the left of the second platoon; and when he is to bear the standard, he will change places with the corporal on his right, and will be the second man from the left of the platoon.

111. The eighth sergeant will be on the left of the third platoon. The six last sergeants to be told off in the rank.

112. Corporals will be next to the sergeants who are on the flanks of platoons.

113. Saddlers and farriers will be in rear of the left of their divisions, eight paces retired from the rank of file closers.

114. Absent officers will be replaced by the next in rank, and sergeants by corporals.

115. In a squadron acting singly, the trumpets will be twenty paces in the rear of the centre.

116. *If a troop were acting singly*, the officers in order of battle will be posted as follows:

117. The captain in front of the centre, one pace distant from the front rank.

118. The first lieutenant in rear of the centre, in the rank of file closers.

119. The senior second lieutenant will command the first platoon, and the junior second lieutenant the second platoon, and will be posted in front of the centre of their respective platoons, in a line with the captain.

120. The first sergeant will be in rear of the left, in the rank of file closers.

121. The second and third sergeants on the right and left of the troop, not told off.

122. The fourth sergeant on the left of the first platoon, and the fifth sergeant on the right of the second platoon.

123. Corporals will be next to the sergeants who are on the flanks of the platoons.

124. The saddler and farrier will be in rear of the left of the troop, eight paces retired from the line of file closers, and the trumpets twenty paces in rear of the centre.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

Formation of a Regiment in Column.

Column of Twos or Fours, (Right in Front.)

125. The colonel will be at the centre of the regiment, eight paces from the left flank of the column on the right side of the guides, having on his left the lieutenant and in his rear the trumpet major. He will move wherever his presence may be required.

126. The lieutenant colonel habitually abreast of the centre of the two first squadrons, on the same flank.

127. The major will be habitually abreast of the centre of the two last squadrons on the same flank.

128. The adjutant will be on the left, and abreast of the files at the head of the column, to superintend the guides and the direction of the march. He will generally assist the lieutenant colonel.

129. The sergeant major will be in the rear of the column, and if the left is in front, he will be to the side of the colonel and will



134. When the nature of the ground obliges the officers and file closers to enter into the column, they will place themselves there successively.

135. When the column marches with the right in front, the sergeants who, in line, were on the flanks of squadrons, will be placed, the one of the right one pace in advance of the first file, and the one of the left in rear of the last files of the squadron. When the column marches with the left in front, the places of these two sergeants will be inverted.

136. In this order of column, the distance between the regiments will be six paces, measured from the croup of the horses of the last men of the preceding regiment, to the head of the horse of the sergeant in advance of the trumpets of the regiment following.

Column of Platoons.

137. The colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major, will march as in column of twos and fours.

138. The adjutant will usually march in rear of the file on the left of the first platoon, to superintend the principal guide of the column; and he will sometimes move in advance of that file, to ascertain whether the guides of the several platoons observe the same direction.

139. The sergeant major will march in the rear of the column, and if the left be in front, he will perform the duties assigned to the adjutant, when the right is in front, in a corresponding position towards the side of the guides.

140. The chiefs of squadrons will march on the flank towards the guides, and habitually abreast of the second platoon. The captains in the rank of file closers will be upon the flank opposite to the guide, and abreast of the third platoon.

141. The lieutenants commanding platoons will remain at their centre, respectively, one pace before the front rank.

142. The chiefs of platoons at the head of squadrons, will take care always to preserve, independently of the front of the platoon, the ten paces prescribed for the interval between squadrons or regiments.

143. The lieutenants who, in line, were in the rank of file closers in rear of the centre of their divisions, will be placed in rear of the centre of the first platoon of their divisions.

144. The sergeants in that rank will be one pace in rear of the centre of their platoons.

145. When the column is marching with the right in front, the sergeants who, in line, were on the right flank of squadrons, will remain on the right of the first platoons, and the sergeants on the left flank will be in the rank of file closers, in rear of the second file of the fourth platoons. When the column marches left in front, the places of these sergeants will be inverted.

146. The trumpets will be six paces in front as in the column of twos and fours.

147. The distance between platoons ought to be equal to the front of a platoon, *less the depth of the two ranks*: this distance measured from the croups of the horses of the rear rank of a first platoon, to the heads of the horses of a front rank of a second platoon, will be six paces (or yards.)

148. The distance from one regiment to another will be six paces.

Column of Divisions.

149. The field officers, chiefs of squadrons, adjutant, sergeant major, sergeants, and trumpets, will be placed in the same manner as in column of platoons.

150. All the other officers, and non-commissioned officers, will be placed as in line.

151. This column, not being advantageous for manœuvre, will be rarely used.



156. All the other officers, and non-commissioned officers, will remain as in line, except chiefs of squadrons, who will be posted on their flanks, on the side of the guides.

157. Distances in close column will be ten paces. The distance between regiments, when several regiments are in order of battle, one in rear of the other, are fifteen paces for each squadron of which the front regiment may consist.

158. In all movements in column, the surgeons, and all officers not otherwise provided for, will march in rear of the regiment, unless another place has been assigned to them by the colonel.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

Definitions and General Principles.

159. *A rank*, is composed of men abreast of each other.

160. *A file*, of any number of men, each successive man covering the one in front of him.

161. *File leader*, is the man who goes before the other in marching; all the front rank men are file leaders to those of the rear rank.

162. *Front*, is the extent from flank to flank.

163. *Flank*, is the extremity of the right or left of a military body, in a line or column.

164. *Depth*, is the number of ranks of which a line is composed: as *two or three ranks deep*.

165. To ascertain the extent of the front of a body of cavalry, it must be observed that the breadth of a horse, with his rider, is one-third of his length, or rather less than three feet, and is estimated at that measure; so that the breadth of a squadron is nearly as many yards as files. The depth of the two ranks is about twenty feet, allowing two feet for the distance of the ranks.

166. The *direct march*, is that which is made perpendicularly to the front.

167. The *diagonal march*, is so called, in relation to the front, from which a change of direction is made by a half wheel to arrive at a determined point towards the right or left.

168. The *oblique march*, is that by which a line advances, gaining ground towards one of its flanks, without changing its front; it may be performed individually, or by a whole rank.

169. The *wheel*, is an arc of a circle, described at the same time by all the men of a rank.

170. *Pivot man*, is the man on one of the flanks of the front rank, who forms the central point of the wheel. Such pivot is either *fixed* or *moveable*; the former when he turns upon himself, and the latter, when, in a wheel, he describes an arc of a circle greater or lesser.

171. *Filing*, is executed by the two ranks; the men, of either flank, making, in succession, a turn to the right or left, to move afterwards into column on the point designated, and to form there again, in line, by the contrary movement, as they in succession reach it.

172. *Alignment*, means men placed abreast of each other, no one more advanced or retired than another; and being on the same parallel direction.

173. *Alignments* are of two sorts: *individual* alignments, and the alignments of *one division upon another*. Every division which is to be aligned upon another, will halt abreast of the file closers, and parallel to the line of formation, to move forward into the alignment of the division already formed.

174. The chief of a regiment, or squadron, which first enters a line, will place himself on the side of the division on which he is to form; the chiefs of other regiments, or squadrons, on the opposite side.

175. *A regiment in line*, is formed of its squadrons fronting on the same line.

176. *A regiment in open column*, is formed of its squadrons march-



182. *Distance*, is the space between one division and another in column.

183. The distance between open ranks (mounted) is six paces, and between ranks, at close order, two feet, (on foot, four paces is the distance for open order, and one foot for close order.)

184. *Fixed points*, (*of direction*;) serve to indicate the object towards which it is intended to march a division, in line or column, and on which is to be established the right or left of a line.

185. *Intermediate points*, are used in preserving the direction of the march, and to ensure the correctness of formation.

186. *General guides*, are non-commissioned officers employed to mark lines. There is one for each squadron, chosen by the colonel, from the sergeants; one other general guide, chosen by the colonel from the whole body of sergeants, to follow the adjutant, if the right be leading, or the sergeant major, if the left be leading, who, in marking lines, under the direction of the lieutenant colonel and major, will place them at the points required.

187. The sergeants nearest the flanks, will be employed to mark the point where the right or left of the regiment is to rest. The general guides will march abreast of the first division of each squadron, when in column; in line, they will be behind the left of their squadrons, in the rank of file closers.

188. *Particular guides*, are the sergeants on the right and left of squadrons, who place themselves on the line, as their squadrons arrive there, to mark the formation; at the command of caution, those guides who are on the flank of squadrons nearest to the point of formation, move successively, and press the boot of the guides already on the points.

189. *Guide of the column*, is the man of the front rank of one of the flanks of a division, who preserves the direction of the march, and on whom the alignment is made. The guide is always on the left when the right is leading; and on the right when the left is leading; except, however, when circumstances or peculiar movements would place him otherwise in manœuvre.

190. In a column composed of Cavalry and Infantry, the guides of the divisions of Cavalry will cover the second file of the divisions of Infantry on the side of their guides.

191. In a *line*, so composed, chiefs of squadrons will take their alignment on the rank of file closers of Infantry.

192. When the line is halted, the field officers of Cavalry will be aligned on those of Infantry, and when marching on the column.

193. *Paces.* For the Cavalry there are three paces, (or gaits,) the *walk*, the *trot*, and the *gallop*: (on foot there are but two steps; the *common* and the *quick*.)

194. The term *pace*, by which distances or intervals are measured, will be considered as one yard.

195. It is difficult to measure with exactness the length of the step of a horse in his different paces, as they vary according to the size or figure of the animal, and as he may be more or less urged; but it may be generally calculated that a horse passes over, at each step of the *walk*, two feet eight inches; at each step of the *trot*, three feet eight inches; and at each stroke of the *gallop*, about ten feet. From calculations of the different paces of a horse, it is found, that, in a minute, at a *walk*, he will generally pass over one hundred yards; at a *trot*, two hundred and forty yards; and at a *gallop*, three hundred yards.

196. *Words of command*, are of three kinds; those of *caution*, as *attention*; after which the men are to be silent, steady, and attentive, till the word *rest*; those of *preparation*, indicating the movement to be made; and those of *execution*, as *march*, *halt*; at *march*, the movement will commence, and will continue till *halt*.

197. When a line breaks from a halt by a wheel, the chief of each division will judge of the instant when the movement ought to



SECTION III.

School of the Trooper, (Dismounted.)

ARTICLE FIRST.

LESSON I.

Position of the Trooper.

200. The heels on the same line, as near each other as the conformation of the man will permit; the feet turned out equally, and forming with each other something less than a right angle; the knee straight, but not stiff, the body perpendicular on the haunches, inclining a little forward; the shoulders kept back, and falling equally; the arms hanging naturally; the elbows near the body; the palm of the hand turned a little to the front, the little finger back, and along the seam of the breeches; the face well to the front; the chin a little drawn in without constraint; and the eyes cast on the ground at a distance of fifteen paces.

201. The instructor having established the position, shall teach the motions of the head, by the commands,

Eyes—Right!

202. The head is turned gently to the right, so that the corner of the left eye nearest the nose, shall be in a line with the centre buttons of the jacket; then,

Front!

203. The head resumes gently its habitual position to the front. The motion of *Eyes—Left* and *Front*, will be executed by inverse means. In these motions, care must be taken to maintain the squareness of the shoulders.

At the command,

Right!

204. The men will not be required to maintain their position or steadiness; but the left heel shall not quit its place.

205. To make the squad resume its position, the instructor will command,

ATTENTION!

206. When the men will fix their attention, and resume the prescribed position and steadiness.

They will next be taught the facings.

Facings.

207. In going through the facings from a halt, the left heel never quits the ground.

1. *Squad.* 2. *Right or (Left) Face!*

208. At the second command, the men turn on the left heel, bringing the right heel to its relative position as before.

1. *Squad.* 2. *'Bout—Face!*

209. At *'bout*, half face to the right, slip the right foot to the rear, the hollow opposite to, and full three inches from the heel; at *face*, turn on both heels, raising the toes a little; the hams straight; and face to the rear; bring, at the same time, the right heel to the side of the left.

Principles of the Ordinary Step.

210. The instructor shall explain to them the principles and



distance prescribed from the right foot; the whole weight of the body resting on the foot which comes to the ground. The men shall smartly, but without a jerk, pass the right foot to the front, near the ground, and will plant it at the same distance, and in the same manner, as has been explained for the left foot. They will march in this manner, keeping the shoulders square, and the head direct to the front.

213. When the instructor wishes the squad to halt, he will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *HALT!*

214. At the second word, let the rear foot be brought up to the side of the other.

To Mark Time.

215. The men marching with the ordinary step, shall receive the command,

1. *Mark Time.* 2. *MARCH!*

216. At the second word, which shall be given at the instant the foot is coming to the ground, the men shall make a semblance of marching, by bringing back the heels alternately to the side of each other, without advancing, observing the cadence of the step.

217. The instructor, wishing the ordinary step to be resumed, will command,

1. *Forward.* 2. *MARCH!*

218. At the second word, given as above, the men shall resume the step of twenty-eight inches.

To Change Step.

219. To the men marching with the ordinary step, the instructor will command,

1. *Change Step.* 2. *MARCH!*

220. At the second word, to be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the men shall quickly bring up the foot in the rear, to the side of that planted in front, which latter foot will step off.

ARTICLE SECOND.

LESSON II.

Marching to the Front.

221. When the men shall be well confirmed in the principle and mechanism of the step, and the position of the body, the instructor will unite from six to ten men, in order to instruct them in the principles of the touch of the elbow; marching to the front and to a flank; the quick step; the principles of changes of direction; wheeling on a moveable, and on a halted pivot; and the principles of alignment.

222. The instructor will place them in one rank, elbow to elbow, and command,

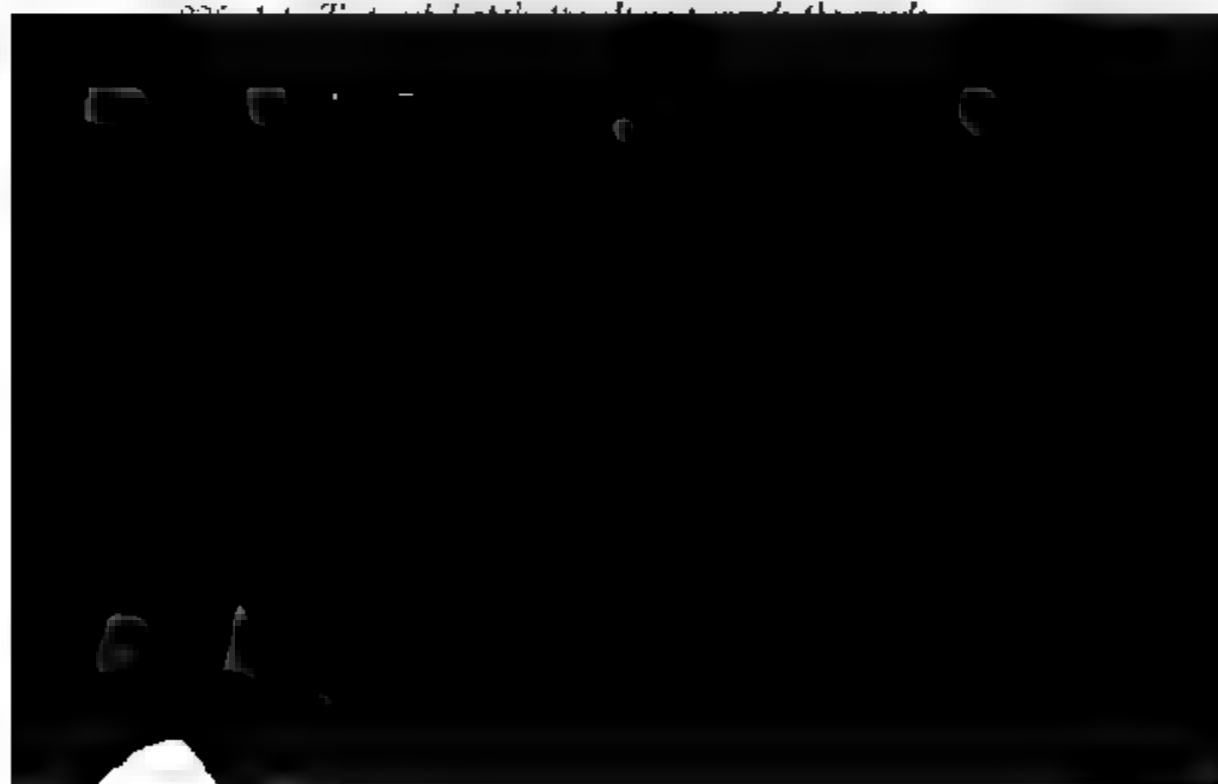
1. *Squad—forward.* 2. *Guide Left (or Right,)* 3. *MARCH!*

223. At the word *march*, the rank shall step off smartly with the left foot.

224. The instructor will cause a well instructed man to march two paces in front of the man on the right or left of the rank, according to the flank to which the guide may be ordered; he shall direct the man on the flank to march exactly in the trace of the man who precedes him, preserving the distance of two paces from him: this is the surest means of making the men contract the habit of taking the step of the prescribed length and cadence.

225. The instructor will cause the following rules to be observed:

226. 1. *The touch of the elbow must be maintained.*



To March by a Flank.

234. The men drawn up in one rank, elbow to elbow, the instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *Right (or Left)—Face!* 3. *Forward—March!*

235. At the second command, the men will face to the right or left.

236. At the word *march*, they shall step off quickly, with the left foot, and in common time.

Remarks on Marching by a Flank.

237. The instructor will place a well instructed man by the side of the leading man, on the flank to which the rank has faced, in order to conduct it, and regulate its step; and it will be a man who is on the leading flank, to touch the elbow of the man who is to direct him.

238. At the word *march*, the whole file will step off smartly together; first with the left foot, then the right, at the prescribed pace of twenty-eight inches, which will bring the foot last raised, (except that of the file leader,) on the ground, about six inches in advance of the foot of the man immediately in front. In this way only, can the original or facing distances of the men in file marching, be preserved.

239. The instructor will be careful to cause the men in file to cover each other accurately, and will see that they do not bend the knee, or look downwards; either of which would cause the loss of the lock step and cadence.

240. The instructor, during the march, will place himself five or six paces in front, to see that the principles prescribed above are strictly observed.

241. He will also, sometimes, place himself in rear of the file, and let it pass him fifteen or twenty paces, to observe whether the men cover the file leader exactly.

242. The instructor, to cause the rank to turn, by file, to the right or left, will command,

1. *By File Right (or Left.)* 2. *MARCH!*

243. At the second word, the leading man will turn to the right or

left, and then march straight forward; each man turning successively on the same ground.

244. The instructor will cause the men to *face to the right and left*, on the march, thus:

1. *By the Right (or Left) Flank.* 2. *March!*

245. At the second word, to be given a little before either foot comes to the ground, the men will turn the body, plant the foot that is raised, in the new direction, and step off with the other foot, without altering the cadence of the step.

246. When the instructor wishes to *halt and front*, the rank marching by the flank, he will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *HALT!* 3. *FRONT!*

247. At the second word, the rank marching in file will halt, and no man will move, even to rectify a false distance; this attention being necessary, to habituate the soldier to the constant observance of his distance.

248. At the third word, each man will front, by facing to the left, if marching by the right flank; and by facing to the right, if marching by the left flank.

Alignment.

249. The instructor will exercise the men in aligning themselves, one by one, that they may better comprehend the principles of the alignment; and for this purpose, he will order the 1st or 2nd on the

this man, whose elbow he is lightly to touch, without opening out his own.

251. Aligning to the left is executed on the same principles.

252. When the men shall have learned thus, one by one, to align correctly, the instructor will cause the whole rank to align at once, by the following command:

Right (or Left)—Dress!

253. At this word, the whole rank, except the two men previously placed as a base of alignment, shall steadily march up to, and place themselves on the new line, according to the principles prescribed, No. 250.

254. The instructor, placed five or six paces in front of, and facing to the rank, shall carefully observe that the principles are adhered to; to verify this, he will proceed to the flank which has served for a base of alignment.

255. The instructor, seeing nearly the whole of the rank aligned, will command,

FRONT!

256. At this command the men shall turn the head to the front, and remain steady.

257. Should the instructor observe that some file or files be not correctly aligned, he will order *such file or files forward*, (or *back*,) designating them by their numbers. The files designated, only, will cast their eyes towards the side of the alignment, in order to judge how far they should move up or back, and will steadily place themselves on the line, turning afterwards the head to the front.

258. The instructor will previously number the files.

259. Alignments to the rear are executed on the same principles; the men step back a little beyond the line, and then move up to it, by small steps to the front, as prescribed, No. 250.

Remarks on the Principles of Alignment.

260. The instructor shall inculcate the observance of the following principles:

261. 1st. *That the trooper steadily arrive on the line.*

262. 2d. *That he do not bend the body back, or the head forward.*

263. 3d. *That he turn the head in the least possible degree, and only so as to see the line of the eyes.*

264. 4th. *That he never pass beyond the line.*

265. 5th. *That, at the command "Front," all movement on the part of the trooper cease, even though he may not be aligned.*

266. 6th. *That, at the command "such file" or "such files forward," or "back," those not designated do not move.*

LESSON III.

Wheelings.

267. Wheelings are of two sorts: on a halted, and on a moveable pivot.

268. Wheelings on a halted pivot are used for passing from line into column, or from column into line.

269. Wheelings on a moveable pivot are used for changes of direction of a column, when they are executed to the reverse flank.

270. In wheels from a halt, the pivot man turns in his place, without advancing or receding; but, in wheeling from line into column, and from column into line, he will face as will be pointed out in the text, under those heads, respectively.

271. In wheeling on a moveable pivot, the pivot man takes steps of seven inches, in order to clear the wheeling point. This is necessary in order that the divisions of a column may be enabled to change direction, without losing their distance.



flank of the column, is that by wheeling up to which the divisions of the column are brought into line in their regular order, and to their proper front. The other is called the reverse flank.

276. The flank of a division, on which a wheel is executed, is, with reference to that particular wheel, termed the pivot, although, with a reference to the column, it may be the reverse flank.

277. At the second word the men will step off with the left foot, and turn, at the same time, the head a little to the left, their eyes fixed in the direction of those of the men who are on the left. The pivot man shall only mark time, conforming to the movement of the marching flank, the man who conducts that flank will march steps of twenty-eight inches; from the first step bring forward the left shoulder a little, cast his eyes on the ground he is to go over, and, from time to time, along the rank; and he will always feel the elbow of the man next to him; but lightly, and without pressing him.

278. The other men must keep up the light touch of the elbow on the side towards the pivot, and resist all pressure coming from the opposite flank; each man proportioning his step to his distance from the pivot.

279. The instructor shall make the rank describe a circle once or twice before he halts it, in order to render the principle understood; and he shall carefully see that the rank wheel straight, and do not open out from the centre, or break, or displace the pivot.

280. He shall make the rank wheel to the left on the same principles, and will command a halt, as follows:

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT!

281. At the second word the rank will halt, and no man will move until a further command.

282. The instructor shall go to the flank opposite the pivot and place the two outer men of that flank in the direction he chooses to give to the rank, leaving sufficient space between them and the pivot for the others to place themselves in; and command,

Left (or Right)—DRESS!

283. At this command the rank will place itself on the alignment of the two men who are to serve as a base, conforming to the principles prescribed.

284. The instructor will then order *Forward*, which will be executed as in No. 256.

Remarks on Wheeling on a Halted Pivot.

285. The instructor shall inculcate the observance of the following principles:

286. 1st. *To turn the head a little towards the marching flank, and fix the eyes in the line of the eyes of the men who are towards that flank.*

287. 2d. *To keep up the light touch of the elbow towards the pivot.*

288. 3d. *To resist a pressure coming from the marching flank.*

To Wheel on a Moveable Pivot.

289. When the men wheel on a halted pivot with accuracy, the rank will be taught to wheel on a moveable pivot.

290. For this purpose, in order to cause the rank on the march to change direction on the reverse flank, the instructor commands,

1. *Right (or Left) wheel.* 2. *March!*

291. The first command shall be given when the rank is within two paces of the wheeling point.

292. At the second word the wheel will be executed as on a halted pivot, except that the touch of the elbows will be towards the marching flank; that the pivot man, in lieu of turning in his place, shall conform to the movement of the marching flank; feel lightly the elbow of the man next to him; take steps of seven inches;

To Change Direction on the Pivot Flank.

296. This is effected by the following commands:

1. *Left (or Right) turn.* 2. *March!*

297. The first word shall be given when the rank is within two paces of the turning point, as above.

298. At the second word, to be given at the instant when the rank is to commence turning, the guide will turn to the left, (or right,) in marching, and, without changing the cadence, or without lengthening or shortening the step, move forward in the new direction; the rest of the rank will quickly conform to the new direction of the guide; and, for this purpose, each man will advance the shoulder further from the guide; will turn the head and eyes to the flank the guide is on; touch the elbow of the next man towards the guide; placing himself on the same alignment with the guide, and then turn his head and eyes to the front. Each man arrives thus, *successively*, on the alignment of the guide.

299. This lesson must be often practised singly and in squads; a knowledge of marching on foot being necessary to volunteers, who frequently appear dismounted, for parade and duty. Preparatory to marching on foot the men will always *lock swords*; which is done by raising the sword with the left hand, and passing the upper ring of the scabbard into a hook fastened to the waist-belt over the left hip. (See PLATE 5.)

SECTION IV.

School of the Trooper, (Mounted.)

300. The horse is supposed to be accoutred with saddle and stirrups, and with a curb and snaffle bridle.

LESSON I.

301. This lesson ought to be given to the men singly, if practicable, but a squad of four men will be herein supposed.

Position before Mounting.

302. The horses are placed three paces distant from each other.

The men place themselves on the near (or left) side of their horses; square to the front, the feet on a line with the fore feet of the horse, the right hand with the back upwards, holding the rein of the snaffle over the curb, six inches from the ring of the bit; their position, in other respects, is as directed in the school of the trooper dismounted, and is called the position of *stand to horse*.

303. After examining the position of each man, and making such corrections as may be necessary, the instructor will command,

1. *Attention*. 2. *Prepare to—Mount!*

304. At the second word, the men face to the right, and placing the left hand where the right was, they run the right up to the middle of the reins or *nob*, which they hold between the finger and thumb: they then step to the right, opposite the horse's shoulder, and taking both sides of the curb reins with the left hand, just under the right, put the little finger between them, with the back of the hand towards the horse's head: the left hand is then run down to the neck of the horse, and, still holding the bridle, they seize, with the fore fingers of the left hand, a lock of the mane, about one foot from the saddle; then seizing the stirrup leather, with the right hand, just above the eye, and stepping back with the right foot, they place the ball of the left foot in the stirrup, the knee close to the horse's shoulder, laying the right hand on the off side of the cantle of the saddle.

MOUNT!



fore finger, and, finally, the bridle hand is raised so as just to feel the horse's mouth.

Position of the Trooper, (Mounted.)

306. The head and body should be upright; the shoulders thrown back; the chest advanced; the arms easy; the elbows near to the sides, without pressing them; the bridle hand three or four inches above the pommel of the saddle; the right hand hanging naturally, the thumb behind the seam of the breeches; the whole person unconstrained, and in a natural position; the thighs turned in, from the hips downwards, so as to bring the flat of the thigh to the saddle, and the legs behind the stirrup leather, the stirrups being of such a length, as that the bottom iron may strike just under the ankle-bone, when the legs hang in a natural position: the toe is to be raised; the heel sunk; and the knee bent sufficiently to allow the stirrup to carry the weight of the leg, which is all it should do: when the bottom-iron of the stirrup is at the root of the great toe, the knee should be close behind the stirrup leather, the toe in a perpendicular line with it, and turned inwards from the thigh, and not from the ankle. The calf of the leg near the horse, but not touching; and the knee, though close, is never to be pressed against his side, nor made use of to hold by; as it defeats its purpose by raising the rider on his saddle, and throwing him out of his seat. The great point is to preserve the balance of the body, usually called the equilibrium. When that is lost, or in danger of being lost, and on all occasions of plunging, rearing, leaping, or any unexpected motion of the horse, the proper grasp is by the thigh and calf of the leg; but that is not to be held longer than is necessary, and is never recurred to, except to preserve or restore the proper seat. What is usually called the *hand*, in horsemanship, is of infinite consequence, and more depends upon the dexterous management of it, than can be conceived by any one but a good rider. The position of it, and the manner of holding the reins, have been already mentioned. The nails should be opposite the centre of the body, and seen by the rider when he looks down; the thumb, pressing the reins on the first joint of the fore finger, should cross the body, and point a little towards the horse's right ear, which will give a proper bend to the wrist. The arms, from the shoulders, should be flexible, but

never drawn behind the body, and, upon many occasions, must be steadied against it; the two first fingers firmly closed, and the two others lightly so. The little finger, being between the reins of the curb, which a trained horseman ought always to ride with, will feel every motion of the horse's mouth, and cannot be moved without being felt and obeyed by a well broke horse. For this reason, the hand ought not to move with the body, even in a rough trot, but be kept steady. At each halt, the instructor will take care that the foregoing directions are observed. In this and the next lesson, the stirrups are not to be used, except in mounting and dismounting: after mounting they are crossed over the neck of the horse, the legs and feet hanging naturally: the curb reins are to be tied in a knot, and in the first three lessons the snaffle only is to be employed; one rein of which is held in each hand; the fingers closed; the thumb along each rein; the upper part of the arms hanging perpendicularly from the shoulder; the lower at right angles with the upper; the elbows lightly closed at the hips, without stiffness; the wrists rounded a little outwards; the hands six inches apart; the fingers towards each other. Spurs will not be worn till the stirrups are used.

307. The instructor will be aided by a man carrying a whip, which is to be used cautiously: when necessary, gently threatening the horse with it from behind.

Aids.



To March.

The command will be given by the instructor,

1. *Squad.* 2. *Forward.* 3. **MARCH!**

310. The two last words ought to follow each other quickly. At the second command, the men will raise the hands a little to feel the horse's mouth, approach the legs without closing them and prepare him for what is required of him; this is what is called in the manège "*rassembler son cheval,*" to "*gather your horse,*" a preparative to all movements; and which need not be repeated in the explanation.

311. At the word *march*, turn the nails downwards, so as to give two or three inches more rein, and close the calves of both legs according to the sensibility of the horse; when the horse obeys, ease the legs by degrees, and replace the hands quietly in their former position.

After marching a few rounds, the instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. **HALT!**

312. At the second word, the men will feel the reins equally and firmly, drawing the hands towards the body, and closing for an instant both legs, in order to press the horses well up to the bridle. When the horse has obeyed, the former position is resumed. In this movement, the instructor will walk by the side of the men, correcting any faults.

To Rein Back.

The instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *Rein Back.* 3. **MARCH!**

313. At this command, the men will raise the hands a little, and draw them gently to the centre of the body, bending a little forward till the horse obey; use the calves of the legs only to keep him straight, if he should throw his croup out to one side or the other.

1. *Squad.* 2. **HALT!**

314. As before directed.

To Turn to the Right.

The instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *By file, right turn.* 3. *March!*

315. At the word *march*, the men will open the right rein, closing gradually the right leg, making the horse pass over a quarter of a circle of two or three paces, on the line of the shoulders; the movement being nearly completed, they will diminish the effect of the rein and right leg, sustaining the horse with the left rein and leg, to terminate the movement.

316. At *Squad—HALT!* they will resume their former position.

317. *Turning by file to the left*, is performed on the same principles, by contrary movements.

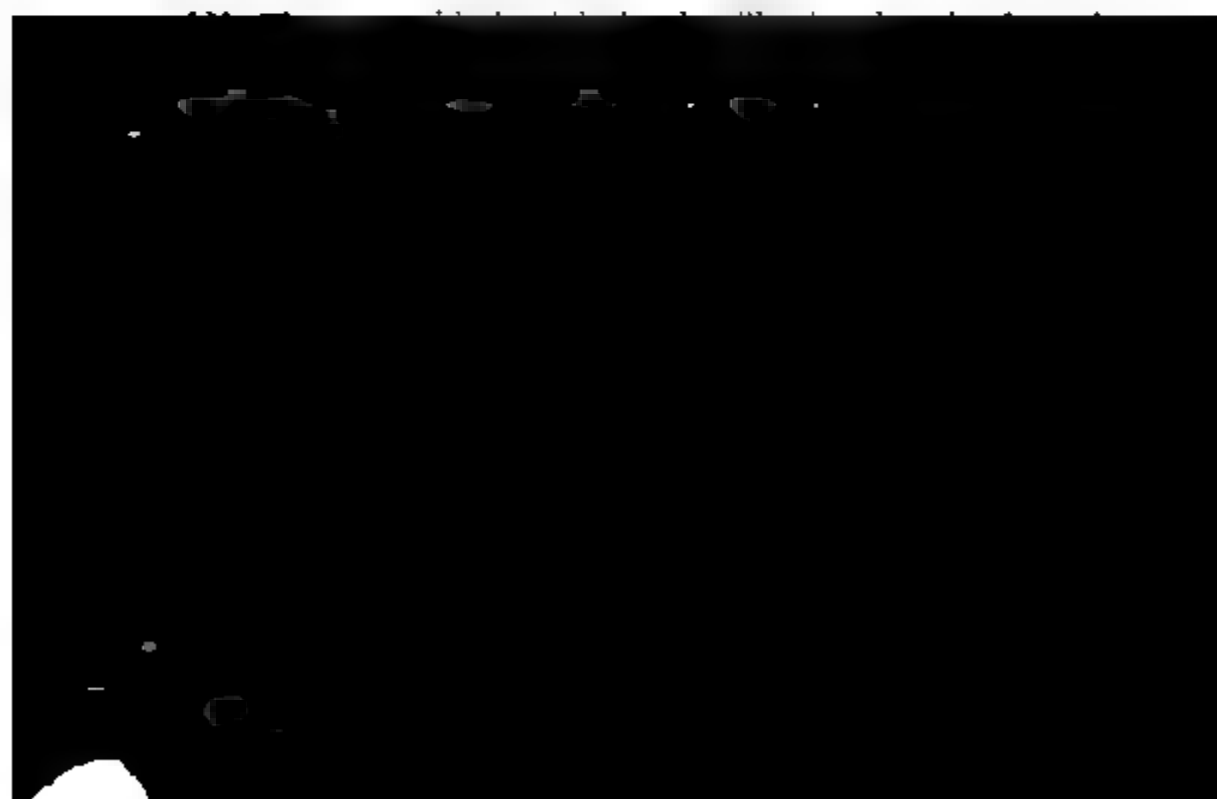
318. *Turning to the right (or left) about*, is performed by similar movements continued, and making the horse pass over a *half circle* of about five paces, on the line of the shoulders.

To Dismount.

319. The instructor will order the men to let down their stirrups, to untie the curb rein, and to assume their position as after mounting.

He will then command,

Prepare to—DISMOUNT!



cantle to preserve the balance of the body, as in the act of mounting; the right foot is brought to the ground, and then the left, when the men will seize the reins with the right hand, under the left, and advance with the left foot first, to the position of *stand to horse*, as before described. They will then *back swords*.

323. At all riding lessons, the men should go once through the motions of mounting and dismounting; they should also be occasionally practised in mounting and dismounting on the off side.

324. They may also be exercised in mounting and dismounting *without stirrups*, in the following manner:

325. *To dismount*, throw the weight of the body on the hands, which must be placed on the pommel or holsters, and, by a spring, raise the body out of the saddle, before the leg is brought over the horse.

326. *To mount*. After taking up the reins, instead of seizing the mane, the men will lay hold of the pommel and cantle, and mount by a spring of both legs, raising the body to the centre of the saddle; then, by a spring of both arms, the leg is carried over the horse, and the men slide gently into their seats, closing the knees on the saddle.

327. From the last position of *stand to horse*, the men may be filed off to the stable, by the command,

1. *By the right (or left) file off.* 2. MARCH!

328. At the word *march*, the leading man will move off, followed by the others, each holding the hand on a line with the shoulders, to keep the horses from playing.

Instruction with the Longe. (PLATE 1.) (*The Stirrups crossed over the Horses' Necks.*)

329. The men being somewhat accustomed to the motion of the horse, four of them, mounted, will be placed abreast of each other, with intervals of four paces.

330. They will first practise the motions of the head; at the command, *Eyes—RIGHT!* each man will turn the head gently to the right, so that the corner of the left eye, on the side of the nose, is on a line with the centre buttons of the jacket.

331. *Eyes—LEFT!* will be executed by the contrary movement.

332. At the word *Forward!* they will replace the head gently to its habitual position, which is direct to the front.

333. As the men ought only to turn the head in dressing from a halt, and in the wheelings, it is essential to accustom them to turn it but in a very small degree.

334. They will then be put in motion: if they are to break from the right, the instructor will command, (the longe being fixed to the horse on the right,)

1. *Squad.* 2. *By file, right turn.* 3. *March!*

335. This movement will be made on the principles explained in the early part of this lesson; when nearly finished, he will command,

4. *Forward!*

336. At the last word, the men will keep their hand and legs ready to follow the man who is led by the longe.

337. At the second command, the instructor, who holds the longe, will place himself on the right of the horse that is to lead, holding the longe in his right hand, and seizing it with the left, near the horse's head.

338. At *march*, he will aid the first horse in turning to the right; and at *forward*, he will direct the first man upon the circle; after which he will fix himself behind the rank, at the centre of the circle.

339. The instructor will observe, that the men are in their proper positions, and when they are so fixed he will command, *halt!* and



will turn his horse, still advancing, afterwards halting, and fronting to the outside of the circle.

343. The second man will continue to march four paces beyond the point where the first turned, and will move on to place himself on his right, being directed by the instructor, who will give him the command, *Right—Turn!*

344. The third, directed in like manner by the instructor, will do the same, turning as before, when four paces beyond where the man before him turned; and the same with the fourth.

345. When again to be put in motion, the instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *By file, left turn.* 3. *MARCH!*

(PLATE 10. Fig. 2.) The men will make a turn to the left, all together, according to the principles before explained.

346. At the word *forward*, the men, lowering their hands, will follow the man who is led with the longe; they will then be marching to the left round the circle.

347. The same will be practised by the left leading, on the same principles, but by contrary movements.

348. In this lesson with the longe, the instructor must occasionally put the men into a moderate trot; but throughout must be careful to confirm them in their proper position, passing from one to the other, and giving his instructions to each, so clearly as not to confuse him, and correcting all faults.

LESSON II.

Instruction with the Longe to a Squad of Eight Men.

349. The men will place their horses in one rank, about one foot apart, holding them as directed in the first lesson; when the instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *Tell off by—Fours!*

350. The men will number themselves, one, two, &c. from the right, in the same tone, distinctly, without turning their heads. The instructor will then command,

Prepare to—Mount!

370. At the word *march*, all assume the trot, except the leading man. The first man who counted *two* will then open the left rein, closing the left leg, and thus moving obliquely to the left will bring himself abreast of number one: when there, he will pull into a walk, and dress upon him. All the rest continue to trot directly forward, numbers two and four doubling successively, and not until numbers one and three, on whom they are to double, are at one pace distance from the croup of the horses before them, and are at a walk. When thus marching by twos to the left hand, to form fours, the instructor will command,

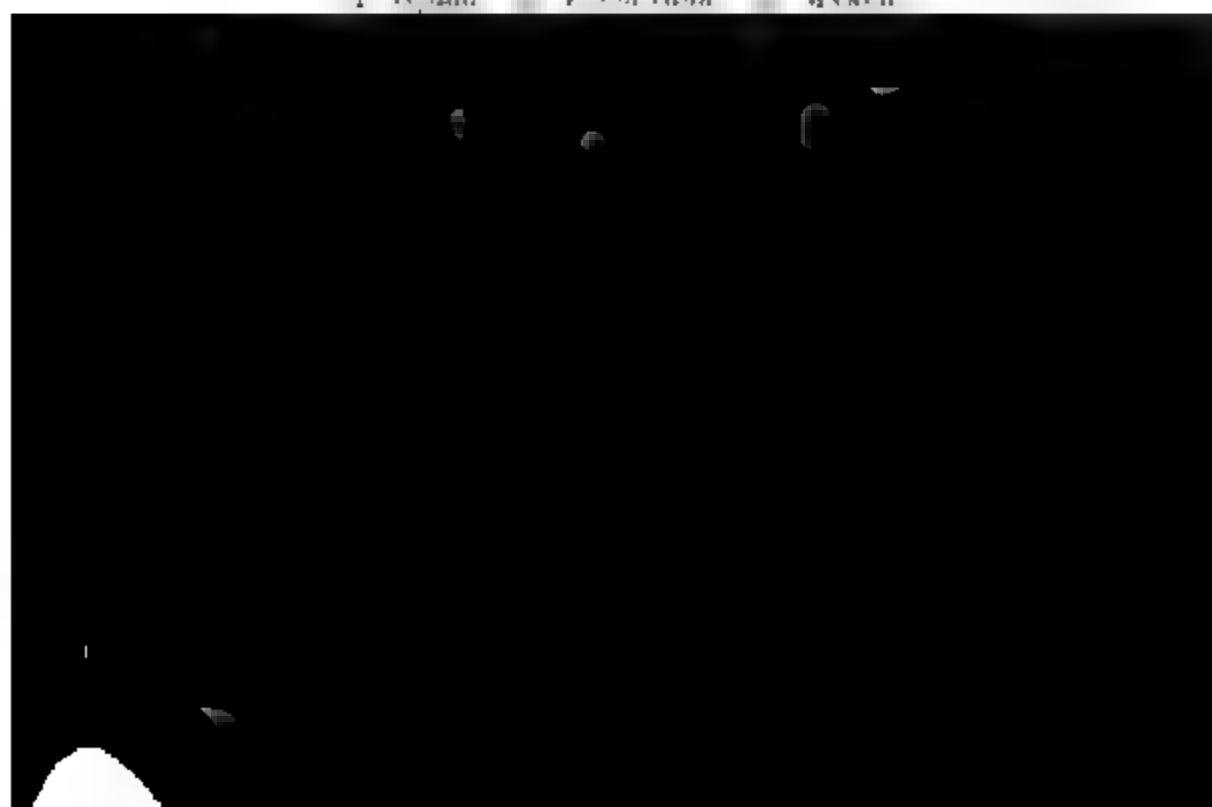
1. *Squad.* 2. *Form fours.* 3. *March!*

371. At the second command, all will prepare to trot, except the leading twos.

372. At the word *march*, all will commence the trot, except the leading twos. The two first men who counted *three* and *four* will carry their bridle hands to the left, closing the left leg, and thus bringing themselves obliquely to the left, abreast of the leading twos; when they will pull into a walk, and dress upon them. All the rest continue to trot directly forward, numbers three and four doubling successively *together*, and not until numbers one and two, on whom they are to form, are at one pace distance from the croups of the horses before them, and are at a walk.

Marching thus by fours to the left, the instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *Form rank.* 3. *MARCH!*



376. At the second command, all, except the four on the right, prepare to pull up.

377. At the word *march*, those four continue to move on, without change of pace; the rest slacken their pace, and as soon as they are uncovered, make a quarter wheel singly to the right, placing themselves by fours behind their leaders, and then taking their pace.

378. On the same principles they diminish to twos and files.

Remarks.

379. When the men march to the right hand, (or with the left leading,) they increase front by obliquing to the right, and diminish front by obliquing to the left. In marching thus by twos, and fours, and by rank with the longe, the men will accustom themselves, mechanically, to the movements of the wheel; but its principles will not yet be explained to them. The longe passing before the noses of the horses, will be sufficient to regulate the rate of pace of each man.

380. The last movements ought not to be practised till the men are masters of their horses, so as to be able to execute them: till then they must only be exercised in trotting singly.

381. The rest of this lesson will be similar to the first.

382. When it is to be closed, the stirrups will be let down, and the men, formed in one rank, will be made to *dismount*; numbers two and four reining back at the preparatory command, the movements being made as in the first lesson, and the men leading off to the stables.

383. When sufficiently instructed to work without the longe, the men will be passed to the third lesson.

LESSON III.

Instruction of the Men without the Longe and with Stirrups.

384. The men, dismounted, will be placed in the position of *stand to horse*, as in the second lesson, in two ranks, at open order, (six paces distance,) forming together a squad of sixteen to twenty-four men. (*Sixteen men are here supposed.*)

385. For this lesson there ought to be two instructors, selected

from the officers of the troop, squadron, or regiment; one to superintend each rank; and each rank should be led by a sergeant.

386. Care will be taken in the first instance to have the stirrups adjusted to the proper length, so that when the legs hang naturally down, the bottom iron will strike just under the inner ankle bone: when the man rises in his stirrups, there will then be six inches between his fork and the seat of the saddle. In the first lessons with the stirrups, however, they will be fixed a little longer, until the men contract gradually the habit of using them without deranging their position and seat.

387. The position of the leg and foot is described in the first lesson.

To Mount.

388. (PLATE 12. Fig. 1 and 2.) Each rank will be told off by fours from right to left, and the men will mount as directed in the second lesson, and resume their respective ranks. When the rear rank is formed, it will be closed to the distance of two feet from the front rank.

389. The ranks being closed, the command will be given by the senior instructor,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By twos, (or fours.)* 3. *March!*

390. (PLATE 13.) At the command *march*, the two (or four) files of the right move forward, followed by the two (or four) files on their left, who do not move, so the heads of their horses are on a



393. They will now be formed by twos or fours, and when marching in a parallel direction with one of the long sides of the ridinghouse, and about the middle of it, the instructor will command,

1. *Form platoon.* 2. *MARCH!*

394. (PLATE 14. Fig. 1.) At the word *march*, the leading fours of the front and rear rank move to the front four paces and stand fast; the rest form on their left, by an oblique movement to the left, if the right is leading; and, on their right, by an oblique to the right, if the left is leading.

Remarks.

395. The small extent of the ridinghouse seldom permitting the pace to be doubled in forming the platoon, it generally becomes necessary to halt the first files; but, whenever the space is sufficient to admit of the formation without a halt, the rear of the column should double its pace.

396. The instructor will give to the front rank of the platoon the following command:

1. *Front rank—Right about wheel.* 2. *MARCH!*

(PLATE 14. Fig. 2.) The rear rank will stand fast.

397. The front rank will make its movement at a walk. At the end of the wheel the word *HALT* will be given by the instructor.

398. The instructors will not exercise the two ranks together till each rank has been separately exercised in the details of this lesson, and till they are assured that the men are well acquainted with what they have been doing, so as to be capable of performing well in the two ranks at the same time.

399. In beginning to exercise the ranks separately, it will be necessary to form the platoon at one of the extremities of the ridinghouse, in order that the rank which remains at rest may not interfere with the movements of the other.

400. The front rank, after being exercised, will be formed in the rear of the other, the words *HALT* and *FRONT* being given.

401. The rear rank will be exercised in like manner.

To March to the Right Hand.

402. The instructor will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By the left file to the front.* 3. *March!*

(PLATE 15.) At the second command the sergeants will place themselves at the heads of the two ranks.

403. At the word *march*, the men on the left of the two ranks will move forward four paces, and then direct themselves diagonally to the left, opening the left rein and closing the left leg, in order to bring themselves to the side of the ridinghouse; the other men of each rank will successively break in the same manner, and will place themselves in file in rear of the leading men; they will be careful to reach the same point of the ridinghouse marched upon by the sergeants who lead the ranks, and when there to dress their horses.

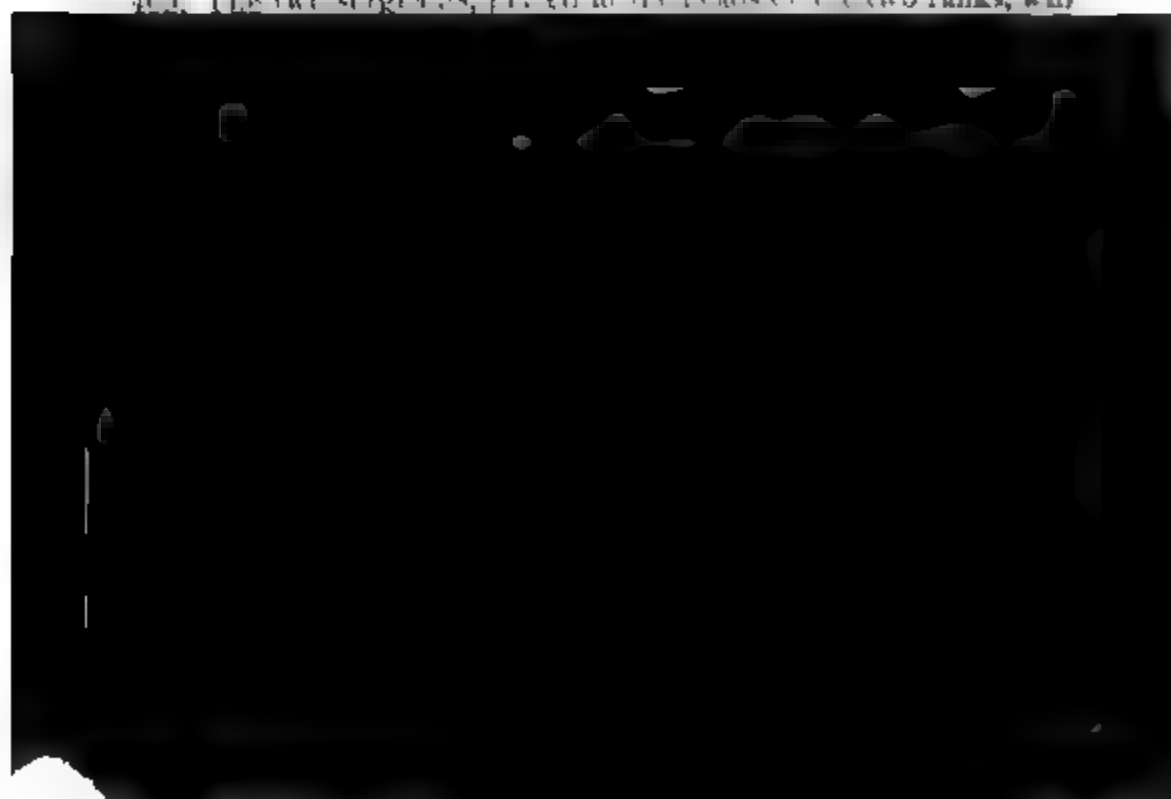
To March to the Left Hand.

The instructor will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By the right file to the front.* 3. *March!*

404. At the word *march*, the men on the right of each rank will break together, and march directly forward until they reach the side of the ridinghouse: they will then turn to the left and follow the track. all the other men will move four paces forward, and place themselves in file according to the prescribed principles.

405. The two sergeants, placed at the heads of the two ranks, will



407. The men will be instructed to check their horses on reaching the corners: to open the right rein, and close the right leg, when marching to the right hand; and to use contrary means when marching to the left.

408. The horse must not be required to enter the corners exactly; the men must be informed that passing a corner to the right is making a turn to the right; and that passing one to the left, is making a turn to the left.

409. The men must act as if no wall surrounded the ridinghouse: their hands and legs only ought to govern their horses in turning the right or left.

410. Care must be taken to repeat to the men that, when turning a corner, they are to throw the outward shoulder and hip forward and not to incline the body inward.

411. The greatest attention must also be paid to keep horses straight, a horse is straight when his shoulders and hindquarters are on the same line.

412. If, when marching to the right, the horse leans his shoulders to the right, the left rein must be opened, and the right leg closed.

413. When marching to the left, contrary means will be used.

414. Should the horse throw his haunches to the right or left, he must be corrected by the means prescribed in the first lesson.

415. Should he throw himself towards the interior of the ridinghouse, the outward rein and inward leg will be used to keep him in the track.

Change of Direction on the Long Side of the Riding House.—(PLATE 16.)

416. After the men have taken a few turns, they will be made to change direction on the long side of the ridinghouse; as soon as the sergeants who conduct the ranks have arrived at the first angle of the ridinghouse, the instructor will command, *Files—Turn!* when they have passed the corner and are about the middle of the short sides, he will command, *Right—Turn!* The sergeants at the head of the ranks, will turn their horses to the right, and advance according to the prescribed principles; they will march directly to the front at the command, *forward!* and pass near each other to the right, without touching: when they have reached the end of the ridinghouse,

430. When they have passed between each other's intervals, he will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *By file, right-about turn.* 3. *March!*

431. (PLATE 19.) At the word *march*, the men will turn to the right-about, each man making his horse describe a semicircle of at least five paces: they will all move straight to the front at the command *forward!* given by the instructor, and will place themselves in file by a turn to the right, when they reach the side of the ridinghouse.

Remarks.

432. In the turns to the right and right-about, the guide will be to the left, which will be indicated by the instructor.

433. The sergeant who marches at the head of the rank will make his turn to the right slowly, in order to give time to the men to perform their movement; but at the moment that the rank makes its second turn to the right, the man who was in rear of the rank, and who, consequently, is now at the head of it, will execute his movement by quickening a little his pace, in order not to retard the others.

434. When the ranks commence the movement by the left, turns will be made to the left instead of the right. When the men have gone through all that has just been prescribed, at a walk, they will be carried through the same movements at a trot, and quick trot, by conforming to the same principles.



To Passage to the Right.

The instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *Right Pass.* 3. *March!*

438. (PLATE 20.) At the second command, the men will propel their horses' shoulders to the right, by opening the right rein, and slightly closing the right leg. This movement is only preparatory: it indicates to the man that the shoulders of the horse must always commence the march, and precede the movement of his haunches.

439. At the word *march*, the men will open the right rein, close the left leg, in order to make the haunches follow; and hold the leg ready in order to sustain the horse.

440. The men will passage in this way as far as the side of the ridinghouse; then the instructor will command *halt!* at which the men will dress their horses.

To Passage to the Left.

The instructor will command,

1. *Left Pass.* 2. *March!*

441. At this command the men will resume their former ground by contrary movements.

Remarks.

442. Should the horse, in passaging, fall back, the legs must be closed, and the hand eased in propelling the horses' shoulders always to the side towards which the passage is made: it is usually the constraint felt by the horse when his shoulders do not move forward first, that causes him to fall back. Should he advance too much, the effect of the legs should be diminished, and that of the hand increased, in restraining and giving way, alternately.

To Close the Files of the Ranks to the Right or Left.

443. After a turn to the right or left has been made by the men individually, each rank will be ordered to close to the right or left, in such a manner that the men of the two ranks be not in the rear of

each other, but at opposite extremities. To perform this movement, the instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *Close to the Right, (or Left.)* 3. *March.*

444. (PLATE 21.) The men will follow the principles previously given, but they will observe, at the moment they are to join the men on whom they are passing, to close the leg which is towards him in time to prevent his horse from being pressed by the others.

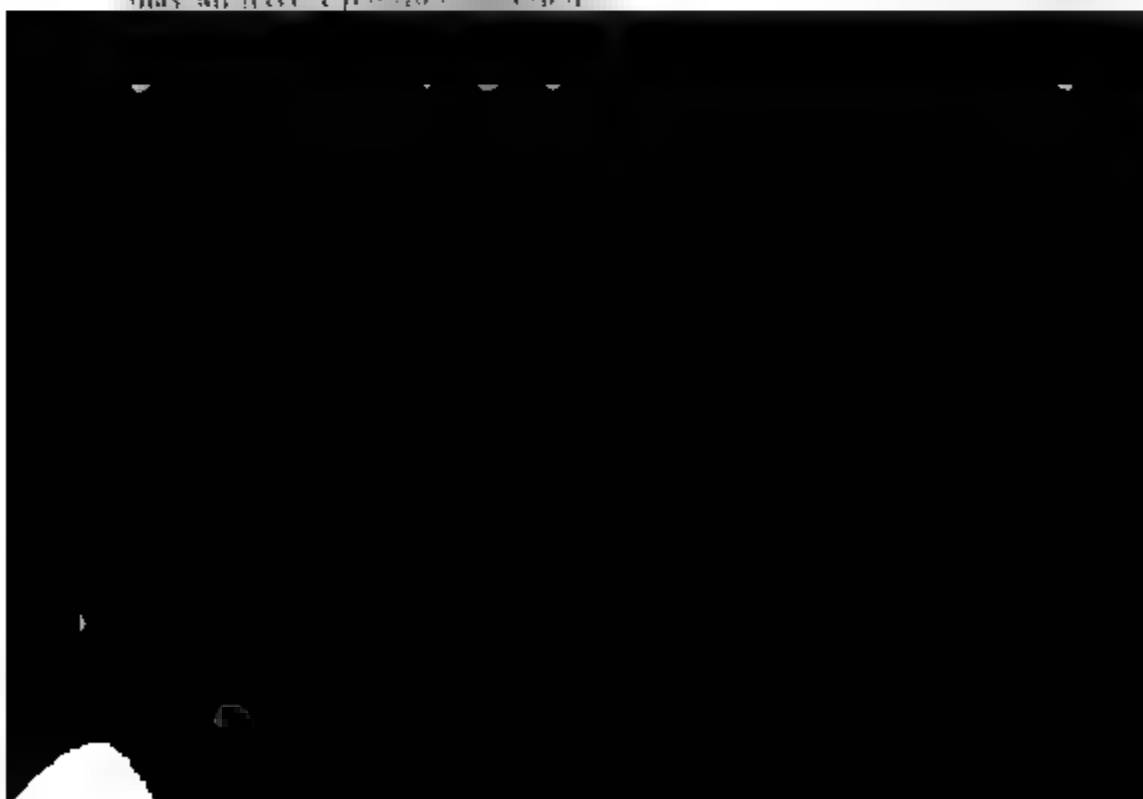
Remarks.

445. The men will be directed to look towards the flank on which they are closing.

446. After performing what has just been prescribed, the squads will be ordered to *halt*, and then to *rest*: at this command the men will let the snaffle rein fall on their horses' necks, and will sit at ease. The instructor will next teach the

Principles of the Alignment.

447. To be correctly dressed, the men are to range their shoulders square with the men next to them on the side to which they are to dress, and fix their eyes on the line of eyes so as to see the breast of the second man of their rank on that side, consequently turning their heads in that direction, but remaining square upon their horses. They will feel lightly with their boot top that of the man on the dressing side, keeping their horses straight in the rank, in order that they may all have a parallel motion.



have occasion to rein back, keeping his head to the right till the word *front*.

450. Men will, in like manner, be advanced from the left, and dressed upon.

451. The same movements will be practised, giving to the men who serve as the base of the alignment, oblique directions.

452. The alignment being finished, the word *front* will be given, when the men will replace their heads direct to the front, and will remain motionless.

453. When a rank is not dressed, the fault almost always arises from the circumstance of the horses not being squarely placed. Such faults will be prevented or corrected by the vigilance of the instructor, and the constant attention of the men.

The men will next be taught the

Principles of the Wheel.

454. The conductor of the marching flank will describe his arc of a circle in such a manner as neither to cause the opening or closing of the files; each man of the rank will measure the extent of his particular arc of the circle according to his distance from the pivot.

455. As all these different arcs are to be passed over in the same time, it is necessary that each man march at a pace accelerated in proportion to his distance from the pivot.

To carry these principles into practice, the instructor will command,

1. *Squad.* 2. *Right (or Left) wheel.* 3. *March!*

456. (PLATE 23.) At the word *march*, the men turn their heads to the wheeling flank, and keep them there during the whole wheel, in order to regulate their degree of speed upon that flank, taking care to feel the knee towards the pivot.

457. The first wheelings will be with the rank at open files, with intervals of one pace: the files will be closed insensibly, and not until the men comprehend what they are to do.

458. These wheelings are to be made to the left as well as right; and before the hand is changed, the men will be halted to prevent disorder.

459. (PLATE 24.) In the last exercises of this lesson, the platoon

will be formed in two ranks, and will be dismounted as is prescribed in the second lesson, (No. 382,) except that at the command, *prepare to dismount!* numbers one and three of the front rank will move forward four paces, while numbers two and four of the rear rank rein back the same distance.

460. The same rules will always be observed when in two ranks.

LESSON IV.

Instruction of the Men without the Longe, and with the full Bridle, (Snaffle and Curb.)

The men will be formed in the riding school, as directed in the third lesson.

The reins will be held as directed in the first lesson, (position on horseback.)

461. The men will again be practised in the movements of

Gathering their horses,

Marching,

Halting,

Reining back, and halting,

Turning to the right and left,

Pasaging to the right and left,

as explained in the former lessons; the instructor taking care that the movements are uniform, and made with animation; that the men preserve their positions; that the bridle hand is correctly placed; and that the reins are held in the proper position, and that the position of the feet is correct.

them, in order to designate those who are to compose the front rank, and those who are to compose the rear rank. He will then command,

1. *Attention.* 2. *Right into two ranks.* 3. *MARCH!*

464. (PLATE 25.) At the second command, all the men composing the front rank will advance four paces, dressing by the right.

465. The man on the right of the rear rank will turn his horse to the right, so far as that his croup will be on a line with the middle of the neck of the horse that was on his left. At the word *march*, he will put himself in motion, followed by all the men who compose the rear rank, who will carry the hand to the right, and turn their horses while advancing.

466. The first man will direct himself four paces in rear of the croup of the horse of the man on the right of the front rank, and when arriving there he will *front*, by a turn to the left, and place himself gently in rear of his file leader, at two feet distance. All the other men of the rear rank will make, in succession, the same movement as the rank opens.

To Form again in One Rank.

The instructor will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *Left into single rank.* 3. *MARCH!*

467. (PLATE 25.) At the second command, the man on the left of the rear rank will turn his horse to the left, so far as that his croup will be on a line with the middle of the neck of the horse that was on his right. At the word *march*, he will move steadily on in the prolongation of the line on which his rank had been formed: all the rest turn to the left and follow him, as the rank opens. When about one-third in file, the instructor will command, *front!* and, afterwards, *halt!* At *front*, the first man turns to the right, and at *halt*, he stops.

468. All the rest make, successively, the same movement, to place themselves on the right of each other.

Of the Alignment in Two Ranks.

469. Three files from the right, (or left,) will be advanced ten

paces, and after being correctly dressed, the instructor will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By file, right—Dress!* 3. *Forward!*

470. The movement will be made according to the directions in the third lesson, adding, that the rear rank, besides attending to their alignment, are to cover exactly their file leaders, and to observe their distance of two feet.

Of Wheeling in Two Ranks.

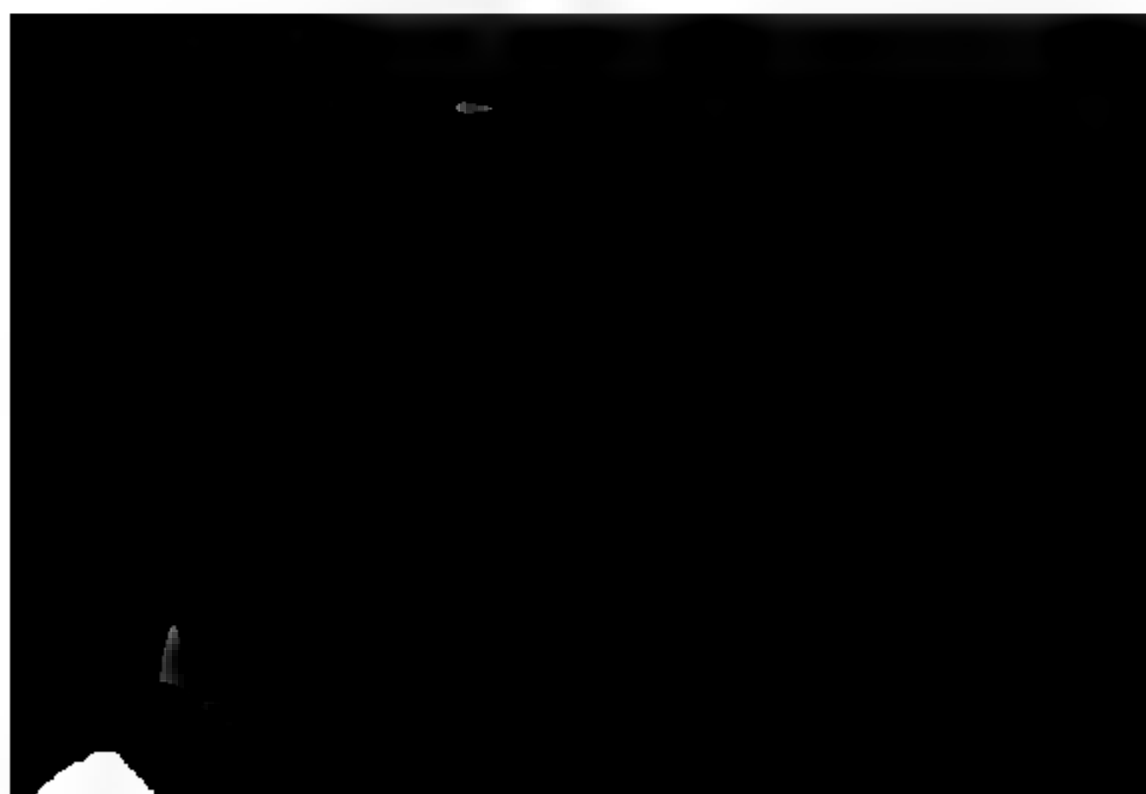
471. (PLATE 26.) To give the principles of wheelings in two ranks, it will be explained to the rear rank men, that, at the word *march*, they will not only turn the head, but also the bridle hand, towards the marching flank, in order that the man on that flank may be out of the direction of his file leader by two men; consequently, at the moment of commencing the wheel, each man will make, singly, a half turn to the right or left.

472. These wheels will at first be made at open files; then at close files, and, finally, changes of hand will be made by platoon, without halting.

473. Before dismounting, to accustom the horses to leave the ranks readily, they will be ordered out of the rank one after another.

LESSON V.

Movements by Fours.



476. The three other men, of each rank of fours, will always have their eyes towards the guide, in order to regulate their pace upon him: they will feel lightly the boot to his side, yielding to pressure from that side, and resisting from the other.

Principles of the Wheel, (by Fours.)

477. In the corner, or in changes of direction, the pivots will turn at the same place, describing an arc of a circle of five paces; they will turn the head towards the marching flank, in order to regulate themselves by it. The man on that flank will keep his head direct, and will turn, increasing his pace, without, however, doubling it, taking care to feel the boot, and carry the hand to the side of the pivot, and to take the necessary ground, so as neither to open nor close the files.

478. The two other men will turn, keeping their heads towards the marching flank, in order to regulate their pace upon it; carrying, also, the hand, and feeling the boot towards the pivot during the whole of the wheel.

479. At the end of the wheel, all will resume the rate of pace at which they marched before.

Principles of the Oblique March.

480. The platoon having broken by the right, marching consequently to the left hand, when on one of the long sides of the ridinghouse, the instructor will command,

1. *Column.* 2 *Left oblique.* 3. *MARCH!*

(PLATE 27.) At the first command, the men will gather their horses.

481. At the second, each man will make a quarter turn of his horse to the left; the movement being ended, the man on the left of the first rank of fours, who is the guide of the column, will move straight forward, without losing his distance from the leader of the platoon.

482. The man on the left of each rank of fours, who will be the guide of his rank, will also move straight forward, turning his head to the right, in order to march in a parallel direction to the guide of the column.

483. The three men of the right of each rank of fours, will likewise make their movement, casting their eyes to the left, to dress upon their guide; each of them will place his left knee behind the right knee of the man on his left, and the head of his horse opposite to the extremity of the shoulders of the horse on that side.

484. The men will march thus united during the whole of the oblique movement.

485. When the guide of the column arrives very near the track, the instructor will command, *forward!* whereupon, all the men, without halting, will dress their horses by a quarter turn to the right, afterwards moving straight forward.

486. The instructor must be careful to give the word *march*, so that the conductor may, after having made his quarter turn to the left, reach the wall a little before coming to the corner, without being obliged to change his direction.

487. To oblique to the right, the same principles and contrary movements will be employed.

Wheeling, and Wheeling About, to the Left and Right, by Fours, in Marching in Column.

488. In these wheelings, to the left, and left about, the guide will be to the right; in the wheelings to the other side he will be to the left.

489. The movements will be made at the middle of one of the long sides, by the command of the instructor,



rest of the rank, conforming to the principles of the direct march, (No. 474.)

492. When the rank is three paces from the track, the instructor will command,

1. *By fours, left wheel.* 2. *MARCH!* 3. *FORWARD!* 4. *Guide—RIGHT!*

493. This will be executed like the preceding movement, and the column will be in inverted order.

494. By repeating, once, the same movement, it will be restored to its natural order, when the instructor will give the command, *guide left!*

Wheeling about to the Left by Fours.

495. When the platoon, having wheeled to the left by fours, is within three paces of the track, the instructor will command,

1. *By fours, left about wheel.* 2. *MARCH!* 3. *FORWARD!*
4. *Guide—RIGHT!*

496. This wheel about will be made on the same principles as the left wheel by fours.

497. After being again brought into column, in its natural order, the instructor will command,

1. *By fours, left wheel.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *FORWARD!* 4. *Guide—LEFT!*

Remarks.

498. In the first wheel to the left by fours, the first rank of fours will make its movement slowly, in order to give the others time to make theirs; but at the *second wheel*, the last rank of fours, then at the head of the column, will make its movement a little more briskly, so as not to retard the rear.

499. In the wheel about to the left by fours, the last rank of fours will make its movement slowly, to give time to all the others to make theirs.

500. When the left is in front of the column, these movements will be made on the same principles, and by contrary means.

Movements by Fours, the Platoon being in Line.

501. (PLATE 28. Fig. 2.) When the platoon is marching to the front, in line, and it is intended to gain ground towards its right flank, the instructor will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By fours, right wheel.* 3. *MARCH!* 4. *FORWARD!*
5. *Guide—LEFT!*

502. This movement will be made on the principles already detailed. (A front of eight is thus formed, the rear rank fours being each abreast of their front rank men.)

503. (PLATE 29. Fig. 1.) When it is intended to re-form the platoon in line, the instructor will command,

1. *Column.* 2. *By fours, left wheel.* 3. *MARCH!* 4. *FORWARD!*
5. *Guide—RIGHT!*

504. When intended to gain ground towards its left flank, the same principles will be pursued, making use of contrary movements.

(PLATE 29. Fig. 2.) When the platoon is to retreat, the instructor will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By fours, left about wheel.* 3. *MARCH!*
4. *FORWARD!* 5. *Guide—RIGHT!*

505. After this movement the rear rank will be in front, and the left of each rank will be to the right.

506. To restore the platoon to its natural order, the same commands will be repeated.

507. When, after these movements, the platoon is to be halted, the instructor will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *HALT!* 3. *Right (or Left) Dress!* 4. *FRONT!*



510. (PLATE 30. Fig. 1 and 2.) At the second command, the men on the flanks of the rear rank will rein back six paces.

511. At the word *maré*, the front rank will stand fast; the rear rank will rein back six paces, the men preserving the direction of their file leaders. At the fourth command, the rear rank men dress to the right; and at *front!* they replace their heads in a direct position.

Inspection of Arms.

512. The platoon being at open order, the instructor will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *Inspection of—ARMS!*

513. At this command, the men, with their right hands, unbutton the holster cover, bringing back the hand to its position.

Draw, left—PISTOL!

514. Seize the left pistol by the grasp over the reins; draw it from the holster; place it in the left hand, bringing the muzzle upwards perpendicularly, and the lock outwards; with the right hand draw the ramrod, let it fall in the barrel, and replace the right hand by the side.

515. The instructor will then pass, *as inspector*, from right to left of the front rank: each man, as the instructor comes opposite to him, seizes the small end of the ramrod, with the thumb and fore finger of the right hand, raises, and lets it fall again into the barrel, bringing back for a moment his right hand to his side; after which he draws the ramrod from the barrel and returns it; and then returns the pistol into the holster, over the reins.

To Draw Swords.

The instructor will command,

Draw—SWORDS!

516. *First motion.* Carry the right hand over the reins, to run the wrist through the sword knot, grasp the sword, and disengage it six inches from the scabbard.

517. *Second motion.* Draw the sword briskly, carrying it to the

*Sword Exercise.**Raise—SWORDS.*

530. The first rank will bring the sword in a position of readiness to give point; the wrist at the height of the eyes; the arm half extended; the edge turned towards the right, and the point a little lower than the wrist.

531. The second rank will raise their swords; the arm half extended; the wrist a little above the head; the edge upwards; the point backwards, and about one foot above the wrist.

Carry—SWORDS.

As before directed.

Return—SWORDS.

As before directed.

532. The movements, in the early part of this lesson, will be practised with swords drawn, and at a trot, and gallop; the men being made to fire, with blank cartridge, occasionally, during the movements.

LESSON VI.

Exercising at the Gallop.

533. These lessons can only be given in an open riding ground or



536. In galloping round the circle or ridinghouse, to the right, the horse ought to lead with the off, or right, fore leg, followed by the hind leg on the same side; and vice versa as to the left. This action is termed *true* or *united*.

537. If the horse leads with the right fore leg and left hind leg, or vice versa, he is said to be *disunited*.

538. In galloping to the right, if he leads with both left legs, or vice versa, he is said to gallop *false*.

539. To make a horse lead with the right foot, he must be held perfectly straight, the left rein must be felt a little, in order to prevent the horse's shoulders from falling to the right, and the two legs must be closed equally behind the girths to force him forward.

540. To make him lead with the left foot, contrary means will be employed.

541. In changing direction, it is necessary to pull into a trot for an instant, to enable the horse to change his foot more easily.

542. At the moment of changing foot, it is necessary to restrain the horse, by feeling the rein which, after the change of hand, is to be the outward one, and to close the leg, on the same side, to oppose the shoulder to the haunches, which obliges the horse to gallop *true*.

Running at the Ring and Giving Edge.

543. For this exercise there ought to be an extent of ground of at least two hundred yards. The squad is drawn up at one end of it, in single rank, with sloped swords, its right flank man with his horse on the track; to the right or left of it, and at half the length of the ground, a *ring post* is fixed, and one or more posts five feet high beyond it, on the right and left, with a ball of coarse canvass, stuffed with hay, on the top of each of them. The files go off singly from the right at a trot; coming from the *slope* to a *carry*; after a few paces they strike into a gallop; and when within fifteen paces, they come to the position of preparing to *give point*, described in No. 530; they make a lounge at the ring in passing, and afterwards lounge or cut at the heads; pulling up on passing the last post, trotting round and falling in on the left of the squad.

544. The rest do the same, moving off as soon as the ring and heads, that may be carried off, are refixed.

545. The ring is to be of metal, and of five inches diameter, sus-

pended on a pin at about the elevation of the head of a mounted man. The heads on the posts represent the height of infantry, against whom the edge and point is supposed to be given. The rapidity of the gallop is increased on nearing the post; and the horse should be turned about to the side towards which the last cut or thrust was given.

546. The attention ought to be fixed entirely on the object aimed at, and not to the blade, which will always follow the direction of the sight.

Leaping the Bar or Hedge.

547. At first, the bar should not be higher than one foot, increasing its elevation, until the men and horses are accustomed to the exercise.

548. The squad will be formed at twelve or fifteen paces from the bar, and each man will leap singly, leading off from the right or left flank, as may be ordered; he will use the snaffle rein, holding it full six inches longer than common, the bridoon being held loosely; when he reaches the leaping point, he will raise his horse, at the same time closing his legs; if the horse refuse to obey, he will apply both spurs vigorously, behind the girths. The rider must keep his hand rather low, easing it a little at the moment the horse rises; feeling his mouth gently, with the hand steady and near the pommel, ready to support him again as his fore feet strike the ground; he must also, at the instant of rising to the leap, grasp firmly* his horse with the



into the stable without having made his leap. The practice of leaping should not be often repeated in the same day, or it will become repulsive to the horse.

549. The rules for leaping the hedge, are precisely the same as those for the bar.

Leaping the Ditch.

550. When the horse reaches the proper point, from which to take the leap, the rider eases the hand, and closes the legs, to press forward; if he refuses, pinching him a little with the spurs on the grounds, his mouth will be felt, and the same rules observed leaping the bar.

551. In lessons of leaping, it is recommended to begin with the ditch, as the most easy, next to practise at the hedge, and lastly the bar, which is the most difficult.

552. These leaps will then be taken by twos and fours; and also by platoons: in these cases there should be as much uniformity as possible in taking the leap, in order to prevent *foaling*. When a squad or platoon, in two ranks, is to take the leap, the rear rank is to pull up ten or twelve paces from the bar or ditch, till the front rank clears it.

553. The bar should often be placed in irregular ground, so as to accustom the men and horses to obstacles and difficult leaps.

The Principles and Practice of the Charge

Will first be explained, and then practised by the men singly.

554. (PLATE 31.) The platoon will be formed at the extremity of a field, affording sufficient length for the purpose; the men with drawn swords. All the officers and instructors ought to be present at this part of the lesson.

555. An instructor is placed fifty paces in advance of the right of the platoon.

556. A second, fifty paces further in the same direction, and a third, eighty paces beyond the second. The commandant of the platoon will place himself sixty paces beyond the latter, facing his platoon; he will place a trumpet opposite to the corporal of the right of the platoon; the trumpet presenting his left side.

557. He will then order the files of the right and left of the

platoon to advance, for the purpose of marking the points of the new formation: the file of the right, who is opposite to the trumpet, will be instructed to take some intermediate point, which his eye will readily find on the ground, in the line with the trumpet, on whom he is to march in a straight direction, while the file of the left is to be careful in preserving the interval of the front of the platoon, and the same pace as the file on the right.

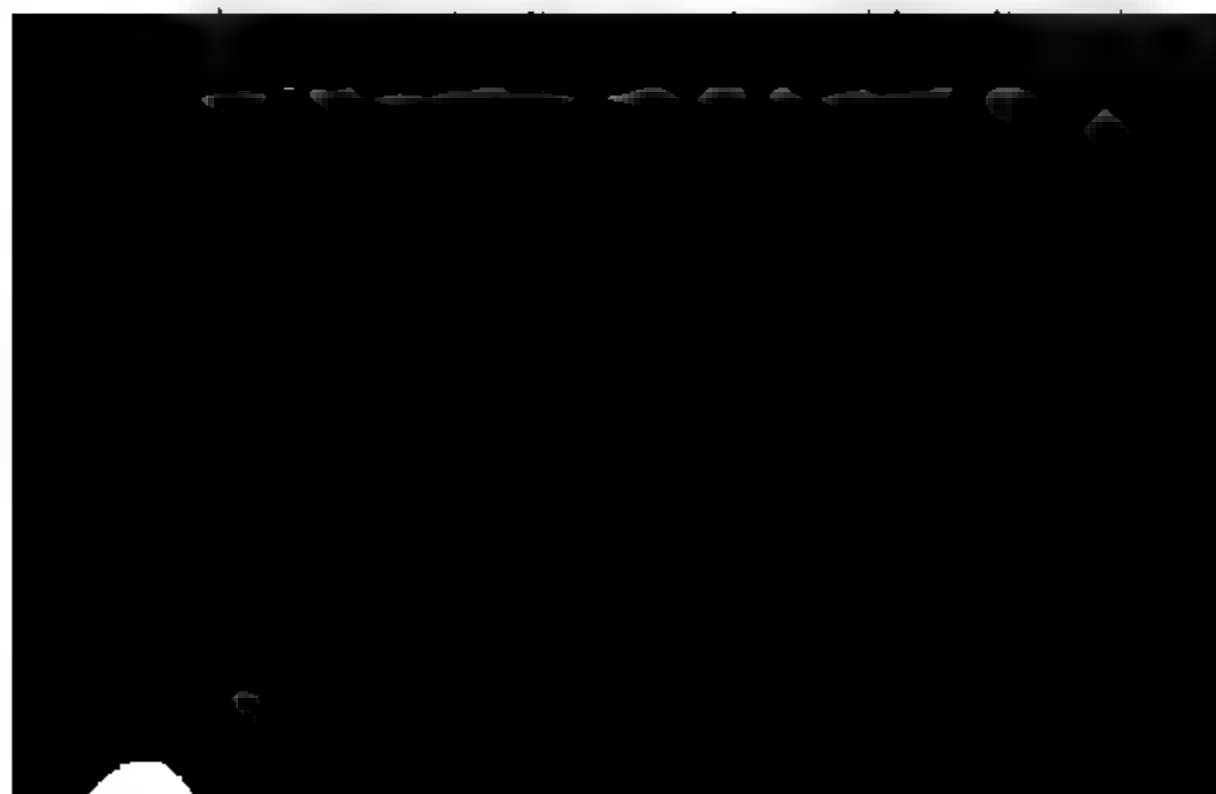
558. These two files will move off at a walk; when they are nearly abreast of the first instructor, he will command, *Trot—March!* and the second instructor, when the two files are coming abreast of him, will command, *Gallop—March!* the third will order *Charge!* when the two files put their horses to full speed, taking the position of the sword, directed, for the front and rear ranks, in Nos. 530, 531.

559. When the two files are within twelve or fifteen paces of the trumpet, the commander of the platoon will order,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *HALT!* 3. *Right—Dress!*

560. At the first word, the files pull into a trot, bringing their swords to a *slope*, and then come to a walk; they then align themselves so that the head of the horse of the corporal of the right of the front rank, touches the boot of the trumpet. The left files, besides the alignment, will be careful to preserve the interval, necessary to receive the rest of the platoon.

561. They will then charge, successively, beginning from the right, by the same commands as the two first, wheeling about, or counter-



ARTICLE FIRST.

To Open Ranks.

The instructor will command,

1. *Attention.* 2. *Rear rank, open order.* 3. *MARCH!*

563. At the second command, the men on the right and left of the rear rank, step back six paces from the front rank. At the word *march*, the rear rank, and file closers step back six paces. When the rear rank is on the alignment, marked by the flank men, the senior officer in the rank of file closers, commands, *right dress!* and then *front!*

Note. (The posts of officers, in line, at close or open order, or in column, are the same as when the squadron is mounted.)

To Close Ranks,

The instructor will command,

1. *Rear rank, open order.* 2. *MARCH!*

564. At the word *march*, the rear rank closes briskly on the front rank; when the command *right dress!* is given; and, when dressed, *front!*

565. All alignments of the squadron, are made upon the principles established in the School of the Trooper. (Nos. 250 to 266.)

To March in Column.

566. The commander will now cause the squadron to break into platoons to the right; for this purpose he will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *Platoons, right wheel.* 3. *MARCH!*

567. At *march!* the platoons wheel to the right, as directed in the School of the Trooper (dismounted,) Lesson III.

1. *Column, forward.* 2. *Guide, left.* 3. *MARCH!*

568. At the word *march*, repeated by all the chiefs of platoons, the whole will step off smartly together.

569. The men will touch lightly the elbow towards the guide.

570. The man of each platoon next the guide, shall always keep six inches from him, in order to avoid pushing him out of the direction; and will also be careful never to be more advanced than the guide.

571. The leading guide will observe, with the greatest precision, the length and cadence of the step, and maintain the direction of the march by means of two points on the ground, that he will take on the line upon which he is to advance; (these points to be selected always, as soon as the platoons have wheeled into column;) and as he advances, and before he arrives at the nearest point, new points, which must be exactly in the prolongation of the two first, and fifteen or twenty paces from each other, must always be taken.

572. The following guide will march accurately in the trace of the leading guide, observing to keep a distance equal to the front of his own platoon, from him, maintaining the same step as that of the guide who precedes him.

573. If the guide of the second platoon lose his distance, which can only arise from his own carelessness, he will regain it, gradually, either by insensibly lengthening or shortening the step.

574. If the guide of the second platoon, neglecting to follow exactly the trace of the first, should have thrown himself without the line of direction, he will remedy this fault by advancing more or less the left shoulder, so as to regain the direction gradually by the direct step, in order to avoid the inconvenience of the oblique step, which would occasion a loss of distance; if, on the contrary, the guide have thrown himself within the direction, he must remedy



576. The leading guide will direct his march on the person placed at the turning point, so that his left arm shall slightly graze his breast, and, when arrived nearly abreast of him, the chief of platoon will command,

1. *Left turn.* 2. *MARCH!*

577. The first command will be given when the guide is within two paces of the turning point.

578. At the word *march*, to be given at the moment the guide arrives at the turning point, the guide, as well as the platoon, will turn to the left, conforming to what is prescribed, (No. 298.)

579. The guide of the first platoon having turned, will take points on the ground in the new direction.

580. The second platoon will continue to march forward; its guide will execute what has been prescribed for the leading guide; and, when arrived at the turning point, the second platoon will turn by the same commands, and on the same principles as the first.

581. In order to change direction on the reverse flank, opposite the guide, the chief of squadron, after giving a caution to that effect to the chief of the first platoon, will immediately proceed to the point where the change of direction is to commence, or will detach a marker thither, placing himself, or this marker, as prescribed for changing direction on the pivot flank.

582. The guide of the leading platoon will direct his march, as prescribed, (No. 576,) and when arrived within two paces of the wheeling point, the chief of platoon will command,

1. *Right wheel.* 2. *MARCH!*

583. At the word *march*, given at the instant the guide arrives at the wheeling point, the platoon will wheel to the right, conforming to what is prescribed, (No. 292.)

584. The wheel being effected, the chief of platoon will command,

3. *Forward.* 4. *MARCH!*

These commands will be given and executed as prescribed, (Nos. 294, 295.)

585. The second platoon will continue to march straight forward,

the guide observing to direct himself on the person placed at the wheeling point: this platoon will wheel at the same point, and by the same commands and means as the first.

586. Changes of direction of a column left in front, will be executed on the same principles, and by inverse means.

Remarks on the Changes of Direction in Column.

587. It is very important, for the preservation of the distance and direction, that all the platoons effect their change of direction precisely on the same ground; for this reason, the instructor ought previously to place himself, or a marker, at the wheeling point; that the guides are ordered to march on the person so posted; and that the chiefs of platoons ought not to commence the execution of the movement till the guide shall graze the breast of the person placed at the wheeling flank.

588. The chiefs of platoons ought to see that their platoons arrive square on the ground where the change of direction is to take place; and, for this purpose, they ought to face to their platoon, when that which precedes is beginning to turn or wheel.

589. If, in the changes of direction on the reverse flank, the pivot of the wheeling platoon did not clear the wheeling point, the following platoon would be impeded, and the distance would be lost; for the guide who conducts the marching flank, having to go over about a half part more than the front of the platoon, that which immediately follows would arrive at the wheeling point, while the platoon in front would not have cleared over a space equal to

execution of this principle, turning to their men, and cautioning the pivot man to lengthen or shorten his step, as they may deem it necessary. From the nature of this movement, the centre of the platoon ought to curve a little towards the rear.

590. The guides ought never to change the cadence or length of the step, whether the change of direction be made on the pivot, or the reverse flank.

591. The squadron chief, or marker, at the wheeling point, will always present the right shoulder towards the column, if the right be in front, or the left shoulder, if the left be in front, and will place himself on the prolongation of the guide. The chief of the squadron will see that all the principles prescribed above are observed; that each platoon does not commence the wheel till the instant the guide grazes the breast of the marker, and is ready to pass him; and that, in changes of direction on the reverse flank, the marching flank does not describe too large a circle, which would tend to throw it out of the new direction.

ARTICLE THIRD.

To Halt the Column.

To halt the column, the chief of the squadron will command,

1. *Column.* 2. **HALT.**

592. At the word *halt*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of platoons, they will all halt at the same time; and the guides will not move, even though they have not their distance, or their direction, unless the commander, wishing to form the line, thinks proper to rectify their direction, which will be effected as will be prescribed in the following article:

Remarks on Halting the Column.

593. If the word *halt* were not repeated with the greatest vivacity, and instantly executed, the distances would be lost.

594. If one guide, having lost his distance, endeavored to resume it after the word *halt*, he would communicate his own error to the following guide, who, if he marched correctly, would then find that his distance was rendered inaccurate; and if the latter, in his turn,

endeavored to resume his distance, the same movement would extend, successively, to the rear of the column.

595. When the commander, having halted the column, does not wish to form it in line, he might dispense with rectifying the direction of the guides which would be sufficiently exact, as well as the distances, if the leading guide, and the one following, have observed what is prescribed, (Nos. 571, 572.)

ARTICLE FOURTH.

To Form Line to the Left from Column, at Full Distance.

596. The commander having halted the column, supposed right in front, and wishing to wheel it into line, will immediately proceed to the distance of a platoon in front of the leading guide, face to him, and rectify, if requisite, the position of the following guide; which being executed, he will command,

Left—Dress!

597. At this command, which will not be repeated by the chiefs of platoons, each chief will quickly proceed about two paces outside of his guide, and will direct the alignment of his platoon perpendicularly to the direction of the column.

598. The chiefs having aligned their respective platoons, will command, *front!* and move in front of the centre of their platoons.

This disposition made, the chief the squadron will command,

School of the Squadron, (Mounted.)

ARTICLE FIFTH.

600. When the men and horses are sufficiently trained to be united in squadrons, they are first practised in *changes of pace*, to regulate and ensure uniformity in their movements. For this purpose, they will be practised in the military marches, until the horses are accustomed to move coolly in the ranks and to change their pace readily.

The First Military March.

601. Will be by *fours*; the men will ride with an easy seat and hand, and will not be required to preserve an exact alignment, or the touch of the boot; the object of the lesson being merely to *steady* the horses.

602. The leading guide will be instructed to commence his movements, and to make his changes of pace moderately.

603. Having then marched by fours for a quarter of an hour, at a walk, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Trot.* 3. *MARCH!*

After trotting a few hundred yards,

1. *Column.* 2. *Walk.* 3. *MARCH!*

(After again trotting, and then walking, the instructor will command,)

ARTICLE SIXTH.

1. *Column.* 2. *Form platoons.* 3. *MARCH!*

604. After the chief of the first platoon shall have repeated the second command, the chiefs of the three last platoons will command, *trot!* At *march!* the first platoon will be formed on the principles given in the School of the Trooper, (Nos. 394, 395.) The other platoons will continue to trot forward in column of fours, and will not form till their respective chiefs give the command, *form platoons!* which will be given when their first files have reached so near to their proper distance, as that *march* may be given at their exact distance, when those files *pull up* immediately into a walk.

605. If, afterwards, it is desired to form divisions, the first and third platoons will perform what has been prescribed for the first, in the formation of the squadron; and the second and fourth, what has been prescribed for the second.

606. The column, marching by fours, right in front, if intended to turn line to the front, (left, or right,) the instructor will command,

1. *Column.* 2. *Front (left, or right,) into line.* 3. *MARCH!*

607. If to the *front into line*, at the word *march*, the four first files will move forward twenty paces, when they will halt; all the other files will come up to their formation on the alignment of the first, by obliquing to the left.

608. If the command be, *left into line!* at the word *march*, the four first files will turn to the left, march forward twenty paces, and halt; all the other files will make the same movement, in order to bring themselves successively on the left of the first, taking care to follow the same direction.

609. If the command be, *right into line*, at the third command, the four first files will make a turn to the right, march forward twenty paces, and halt; all the other files doing the same in succession, to place themselves on the left of those who preceded them, taking care to follow the same direction in order to clear those who are turned.

610. The first files of each platoon will perform what has been prescribed at the commands of their chiefs of platoons.

maintenance of order in the column, to cause a greater number of officers to march on the flank, he will give orders accordingly.

615. The men not being yet confirmed in the principles of the wheel, care must be taken to execute the necessary changes of direction without commands, and to increase the sweep of the angles, in order to avoid hurrying the wheeling flank.

ARTICLE SEVENTH.

The Second Military March.

616. Is to be made in the same order and progression, and on same principles, as the first; but the men will be required to execute the movements with more exactness and uniformity, to attend to the rules as to seat and hand, and for the management of their horses, except during the last quarter of an hour, when march will always finish *en route*, and at *easy files*.

617. The column marchings will be, successively, by four platoons.

ARTICLE EIGHTH.

The Third Military March.

618. In this lesson, when the ground will permit, platoons will be formed without halting the column; changes will be frequently made from the walk to the trot, and from the trot to the walk, taking care that they are executed always with precision, and by the whole together.

619. In these marches the men will be accustomed, at the word of caution, to dress up correctly into their formations, and to ride again at ease at the word *rest*.

620. After the troops have been practised in the foregoing marchings, sufficiently to ensure a degree of uniformity and precision, it will be proper to regulate the rate of the paces: this is to be done by measuring off two ranges of 1200 yards each, on which they are marched, successively, at a walk and trot; the speed will be so regulated, as, at the walk, to move over one hundred (or one hundred and ten,) yards per minute; and about two hundred to two

hundred and twenty yards, at a trot; the gallop will be about three hundred yards per minute; but the squadron will not be put to this pace until further instructed.

Remarks.

621. On regular ground, the distances above mentioned may be passed over in less time; but their rate of pace ought not to be increased, except in extraordinary circumstances.

622. These movements ought to be practised till the horses are quiet in the ranks; till the changes of pace are made without irregularity, and the equality of movement is acquired.

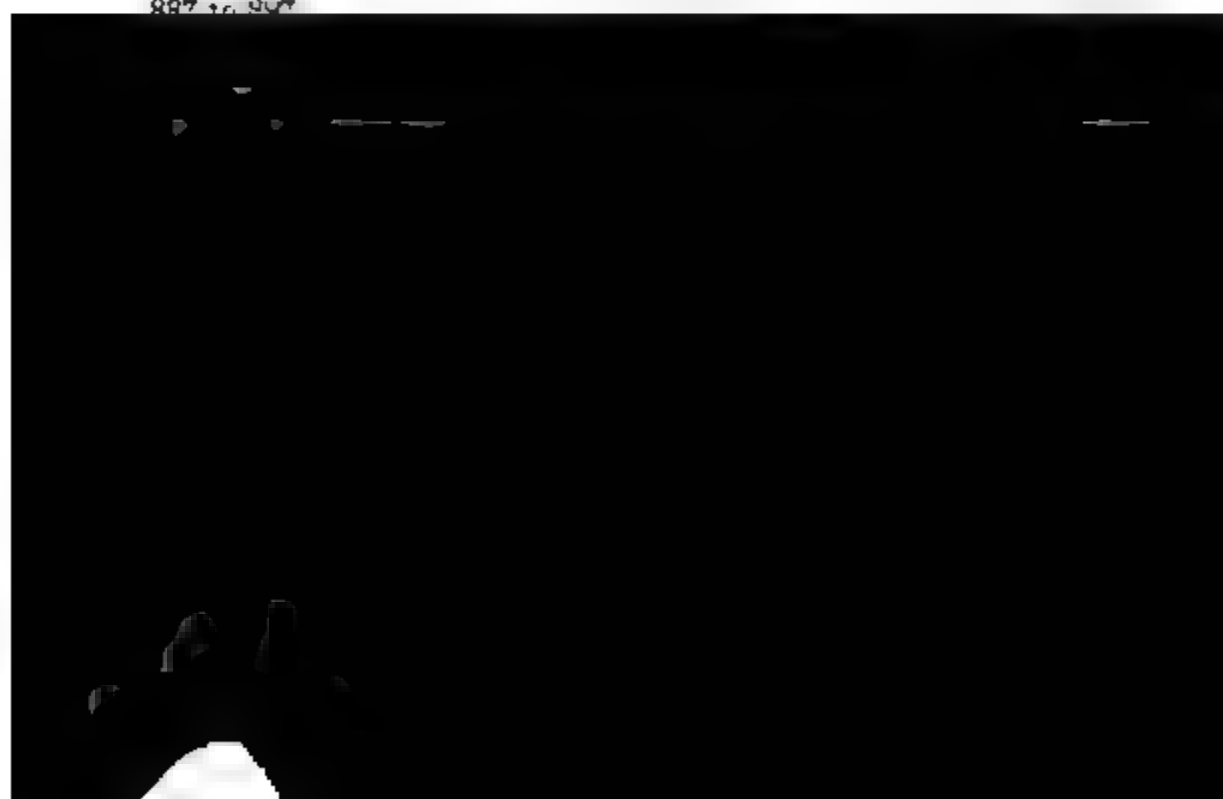
623. The commandant, in the military marches, will cause the squadron to break alternately to either flank, to accustom officers and men to act as readily and correctly with the left flank leading as the right.

624. This rule will be always observed in the exercises of troops.

625. Adjutants and sergeants will be frequently exercised in judging of distances, and measuring them by the walk, trot, and gallop of their horses; and for this purpose they will be directed often to pass them, at their several paces, over measured ground, counting their steps. Those officers will also accustom themselves to judge of the number of yards occupied by squadrons and regiments in line, in proportion to the number of their files.

626. They will also be practised in placing themselves at intermediate positions between given points, as will be explained in No.

887 &c. 887



628. Whereupon the men come up successively on the new line, on the principles established in the School of the Trooper, No. 449.

629. Three men of each rank will be in like manner advanced from the left, and dressed upon; and afterwards the same movements will be practised, giving the bases of alignments oblique directions. Having thus practised the alignments with open ranks, the same will be practised with closed ranks.

630. Three files from either flank will also be made to rein back four paces to the rear, and the command given,

By file, right (or left,) backward—DRESS!

(Only to be practised with closed ranks and files.)

631. In all cases, as soon as the men are correctly aligned, the word *front* is given.

ARTICLE TENTH.

Alignment of Platoons, in the Squadron.

632. When the men are thus taught to align themselves in platoon, promptly and correctly, the platoons will be exercised in like manner in aligning themselves in the squadron. The platoons which are to form the squadron being placed side by side, the right platoon will be advanced twenty paces, and when correctly aligned in a given direction, the chief of squadron will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *By platoons, right—DRESS!*

633. Each chief of platoon will successively command, *Platoon, forward—Guide right—MARCH!* When arrived abreast of the file closers of the platoon which serves as the base of alignment, he will command, *Platoon—HALT!* and, the horses being steady, *right dress!* when the whole platoon will move forward together, without hurry into the alignment.

634. When the alignment is correct, the chief of squadron will command,

FRONT!

(Similar alignments will be practised from the left.)

ARTICLE ELEVENTH.

Alignment of the Squadron.

635. When the chief of the squadron wishes to align the whole squadron at once, he places two non-commissioned officers twenty-five or thirty paces in advance of the squadron, facing each other, as if they were fixed on intermediate points: he then marches his squadron forward; and, when ten paces from them, he will command,

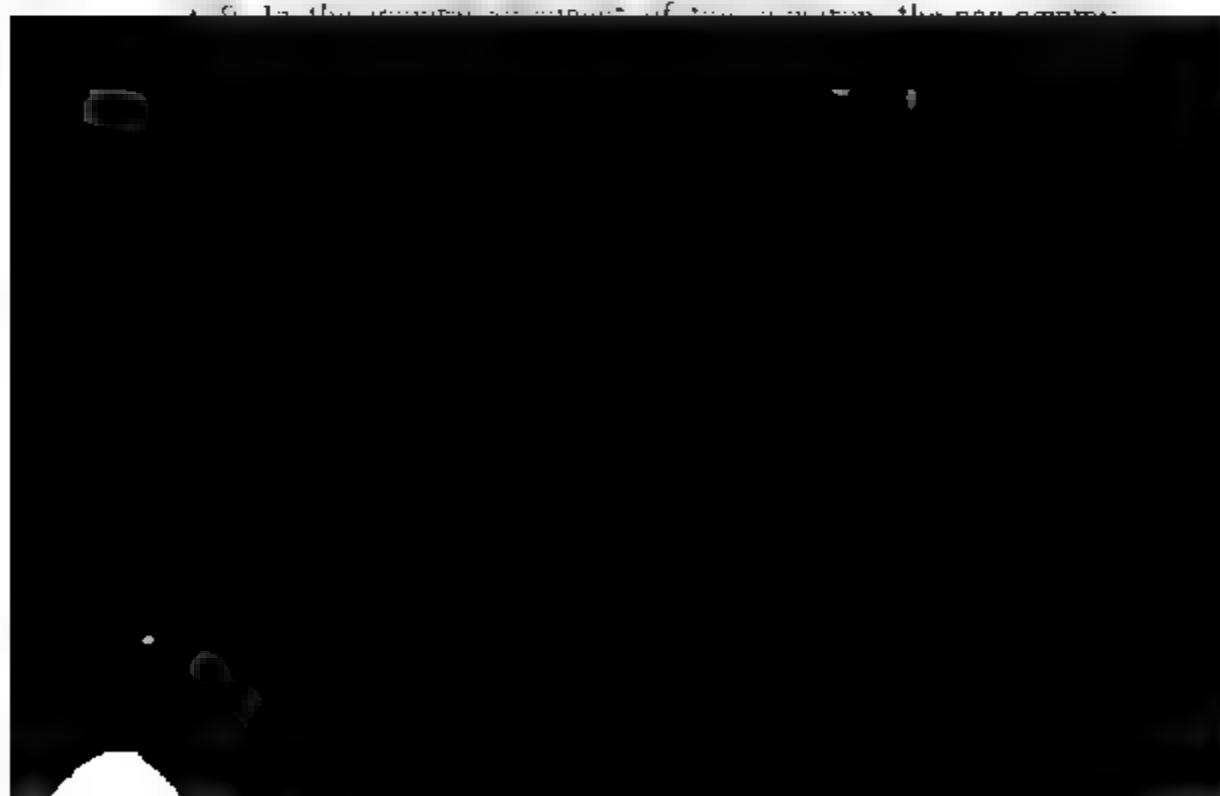
1. *Squadron.* 2. *HALT!* 3. *Right—Dress!*

636. At the word *halt*, the sergeants on the flanks of the squadron move forward and place themselves so that the heads of their horses touch the boots of the two non-commissioned officers who mark the general alignment. At *right dress*, the men of the squadron all move up together into the new alignment.

637. This mode of alignment indicates to officers, non-commissioned officers, and men, what they are to do when they are to serve as the base of an alignment for other troops, or when they have before them intermediate points placed on the general alignment.

Remarks.

638. In alignments by platoons, chiefs of platoons are required to make but a small pause between the commands *halt*, and *right dress*, in order not to retard the successive alignments.



ARTICLE TWELFTH.

Of the Direct March.

641. The principles of the direct march ought to enable the men,

642. 1st. To preserve their alignment on the march, and to maintain the same.

643. 2d. To avoid too much pressure, and to ease the files when pressed.

644. 3d. To avoid extension, and to close when extended.

645. 4th. To prevent the guide from being thrown out of his direction, and to allow him to resume it if thrown out.

646. The most important point of the direct march being to keep the horses perfectly straight, it is necessary that the men keep their heads so they ought, however, to know the side by which they are to regulate themselves, as they are to follow all its movements. In this march the guide will be habitually on the right; when on the left, it will be indicated by the direction *guide left*, pronounced before the word *march*.

647. It will be enjoined on the men always to feel lightly with their boot, that of the next file towards the guide. They will also, from time to time, cast their eyes along the line to that side, but without turning the head. By this means each man will preserve his dressing throughout the march.

648. The non-commissioned officers on the flanks, will endeavor to keep on a line with each other, and with the main body of the men; they will not therefore be subjected as strictly as the men to the rules for individual alignment.

649. It has been already enjoined upon the directing guide, that he is to put himself into motion not too suddenly: the same principle also extends to all the other men in the ranks: if, therefore, they are in advance, or in rear of their alignment, they will regain their places moderately, still continuing to move forward; if the files are crowded, or too loose—in the first case, they carry their bridle hand gradually to the side opposite to the guide, and in the second they incline towards him; in both cases it is indispensable to gain ground to the front during the lateral movement. When the guide, in a direct march, feels himself thrown out of his direction, he will extend

his right arm to the front as a signal, whereupon the men will carry their hands the opposite side, without turning the head.

ARTICLE THIRTEENTH.

Of the Direct March, by Single Ranks of Platoons.

650. The first instruction and exercise in the direct march will be by single ranks of platoons.

651. Each rank is placed so as to be enabled to march some distance without changing direction; the men will be dressed to the right, and at open files, with intervals of one pace.

652. The officers of the platoon will give to the man on the right of the rank, a point of direction perpendicular to its front, instructing him, before he moves off, to take an intermediate point, never to lose sight of the two points, and to march directly upon the line of both; as he approaches the intermediate point, he will take another in the same direction, continuing to do so till halted.

653. After these explanations to the men, the officer of the platoon will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *Forward.* 3. *Guide right.* 4. *March!*

654. At the word *march*, each man will move off straight forward, regulating the rate of his march by his next file towards the guide, and turning his eyes from time to time to that side, without inclining the head.



close files without opening them, and at open files before they are again closed. For opening and closing the files, the commands will be,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *To the left (or right) open (or close) your files.*
3. *MARCH.*

658. Care must be taken always to open the files to the side opposite the guide, and to close them towards him, and, during either movement, to continue to gain ground to the front, touching very lightly to the side of the guide.

659. These movements having been practised to the right and left, at a walk, the men will sometimes be put into a trot, and at that pace be made to open and close their files. Each platoon will then be formed into *two closed ranks*, and will be practised in the same movements, the men of the rear rank being enjoined, besides preserving their alignment, to cover with exactness their file leaders, always at the distance of two feet.

660. When the direction is to be changed on the march, it will be executed by wheels.

661. Faults will often be intentionally committed, to practise the men in repairing them, and thus to improve their intelligence, and to fortify them in the principles which have been taught to them.

662. Thus, on the march of the platoon, the guide will be cautioned to increase or slacken his pace from time to time, without word of command, or to take a direction too much to the left or right; when the men are expert in rectifying such irregularities, they are practised in the same manner at a trot.

663. To prepare the men for the direct march of the squadron, they will practise by divisions the same movements.

Of the Direct March in Squadron.

664. When the men have been well instructed in all that relates to the direct march by platoons and divisions, the squadron will be united.

665. (PLATE 32.) Before commencing the march of the squadron, the files of the right and left of the four platoons, will be ordered forward out of the rank and opposite their respective places, and will march in this order, preserving between them the necessary

distance to admit the men of their platoons; the chiefs of platoons, and sergeants on the flanks of the squadron, will march with these flank files of platoons; these non-commissioned officers will, in this way, accustom themselves not to regulate their movements on the men of their rank, but on the line of formation of that rank; they will be marched in this manner at a walk and trot.

666. When the non-commissioned officers on the flanks of the platoons have learned to perform correctly in this way, what relates to the direct march, the men of the platoons will be ordered into their places; then the squadron being formed, the preceding gradations, and the same progression in the paces, will be followed, except that the files will not be closed or opened, nor intentional faults committed when marching in squadron.

667. When the squadron is to march forward with the guide to the right, the flank sergeant of the right will move out and march on the alignment of the officers in front; the sergeant from the file closers of the first platoon will replace him.

The command will then be given,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *Forward.* 3. *Guide right.* 4. *MARCH!*

668. (PLATE 33.) Before the word *march*, the commander of the squadron will designate to the sergeant placed forward, a fixed point of direction, perpendicular to the front of the squadron; the sergeant will take intermediate and successive points, as explained, No. 652.



chief of the squadron. The men of the front rank will feel the boot towards the sergeant on the right, but so as never to press upon him.

672. The captain of the rank of file closers will keep himself behind the right flank until assured that the direction given is a proper one; of which he will judge in the following manner: if he sees that the men are pressed to the left side, he will cause a point to be taken a little more to the right, and an intermediate point corresponding: if on the contrary the men are too much opened to the right, he will cause a point to be taken a little more to the left, and also an intermediate point corresponding.

673. The commander of the squadron will not quicken his pace until he has ascertained that the squadron marches correctly upon the point of direction.

674. When the squadron advances with the guide on the left, the same principles will be followed as when the guide is on the right, but by contrary movements.

To halt the squadron the commander will order,

1. *Squadron.* 2. HALT! 3. *Left (or right.)—Dress!* 4. FRONT!

675. These commands will be executed as prescribed, (Nos. 592 to 595.)

The Direct March at a Gallop,

676. Will next be practised; and to this effect the men will be carried through the previous movements in ranks of platoons, at a walk and trot, except that the files will not be opened or closed, nor intentional errors committed, for the purpose of rectifying them.

677. Attention must be paid that the rear rank preserves its distance correctly.

678. In the march at a gallop, the men will always be put at a trot and walk before halting.

ARTICLE FOURTEENTH.

*Wheelings.**Wheeling on a Halted Pivot.*

679. This movement will be practised according to the principles given in Lesson III, (in the School of the Trooper, mounted.)

Wheeling on a Moveable Pivot.

680. The object of the *moveable pivot* is to clear the wheeling point, and to gain ground gradually in advancing in the new direction.

681. The conductor of the marching flank will, in this movement, increase his pace, and be careful in describing his arc, not to cause the files to open or close; the men of each rank, from the pivot to the marching flank, will increase progressively their pace so that those of the centre will move at the same pace at which they marched before the wheel; the men from the centre to the pivot will diminish their pace in the same progression.

682. At the end of a *wheel on a moveable pivot*, the men who increased their pace must diminish it, and those who diminished it must increase it; they will then correct their dressing; and the marching flank and pivot will resume the pace at which they were previously marching.



Wheeling by Platoons.

687. The two ranks of each platoon will then be united and practised at wheeling in circle, and in open files; the command will be given,

1. *Right wheel.* 2. MARCH!

688. When the men have acquired coolness and steadiness in wheeling in open files at a walk and trot, the files will be closed, boot top to boot top, and wheeled; following the principles prescribed in Lesson IV, (No. 471.)

689. Committing intentional faults is a necessary mode of instructing the men how to correct those of inadvertency; therefore, when the files have learned in their wheeling movements to open or close without irregularity, the pivot man will be made to press a little on his rank; the men then feeling the pressure, will be warned by it to carry the hand towards the marching flank, in order to make it give way to the impulse.

690. The pivot will also be made to open a little on the opposite side of the marching flank, which will oblige the men to incline towards him.

691. The centre of the platoon will also be ordered to drop to the rear, or to advance, so as to accustom the conductor of the marching flank to give the men of the centre facility in recovering the alignment.

692. The men, being well confirmed in the principles of wheeling, will be made, when on the march, to wheel on a fixed, and on a moveable pivot, at a walk, and trot.

693. Wheeling is always on a fixed pivot, except in the case where the command is given, *right or left turn.*

Wheeling on a Fixed Pivot, the Platoon being on the March.

The command will be given,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *Left (or right) or left about, (or right about,) wheel.*
3. MARCH! 4. FORWARD!

694. At *march*, the flank, which is to be the pivot, will halt;

the others will wheel at the same pace at which the troop was marching.

695. At the word *forward*, the pivot flank will resume its former pace; the two flanks will then move forward together, and at the same pace.

Wheeling on a Moveable Pivot on the March.

696. The platoon being in column and on the march, the command will be given,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *Right—TURN!* 3. *FORWARD!*

697. At the second command the pivot will slacken its pace; and the marching flank will increase its pace; the pivot describing an arc of five paces, during the time that the marching flank is performing its wheel.

698. At the word *forward*, the men will resume their ordinary pace, and move forward.

699. The same movement will be performed to the left, by the command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *Left—TURN!* 3. *FORWARD!*

700. Performed by the same principles as for the *turn to the right*.

Remarks.

701. The men will pay attention to dressing their horses at the



followed, except that the files will not be opened or closed, nor intentional errors committed when wheeling in squadron.

Remarks.

705. When the men are practising the wheelings on a moveable pivot by squadron, the pivot will be directed to describe an arc of eighteen paces, and the marching flank to govern itself accordingly.

Wheeling at a Gallop.

706. The squadron, being well versed in the wheelings at a walk and trot, will be carried through the same at a gallop; to this effect they will first be practised by wheeling in a circle in platoons: the pace will often be changed, to avoid galloping for any length of time to the same hand.

To Change the Wheeling Side without Halting.

707. The platoon, while wheeling to the right in a circle, will be ordered to wheel to the left; the right flank, at the command, will carry itself forward, and the left flank will become the pivot: the men will dress their horses, and direct them so as to go over new circles in a contrary direction. When the platoon has been well practised in this movement at a walk, they will perform it at a trot, but never at a gallop.

708. The platoons, being well versed in all sorts of wheelings at a gallop, will be united in squadron, and carried through all the movements that have already been detailed.

Remarks.

709. Wheeling at a gallop by squadron, and the changes of wheels without halting, require, on the part of the non-commissioned officers of the flanks, much care and intelligence: it is in the correct measurement of their arc, and in the degree of quickness of their pace, that they will succeed in performing correctly these movements.

710. The sergeant of the marching flank will keep his eye constantly on the alignment of the squadron: if he perceive that the men are crowded, he will gradually ease them; if they are too open, he will insensibly diminish the part of the circle he is going

over: in making these corrections he is always to gain ground forward.

711. The pivot of the wheel must never fall back, even to repair a fault committed by the men of the centre. In a single platoon this fault would have no bad consequences, but in a column it would throw the following platoon out of its distance, and interfere with its formation in line.

ARTICLE FIFTEENTH.

Of the Oblique March, by File.

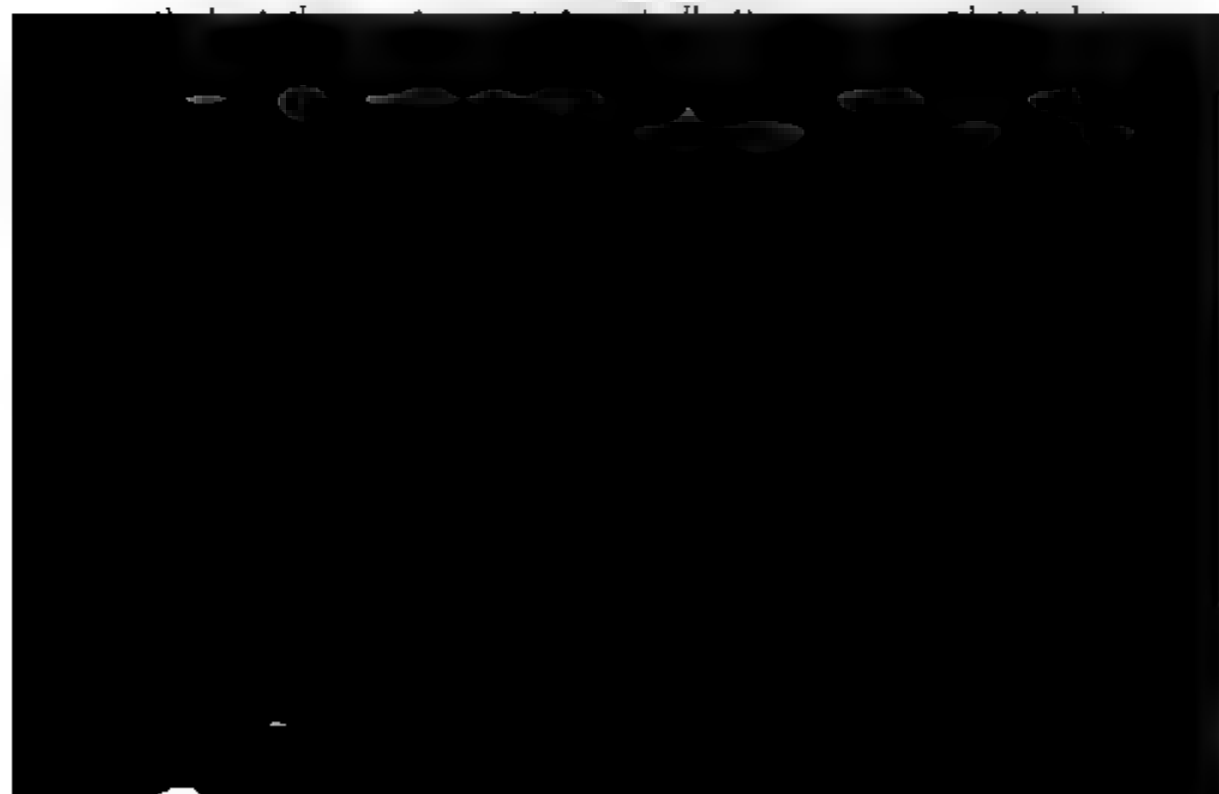
712. This march is executed by the movement of each man without changing the front of the line. The men will first be practised in platoons, and the command will be given,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *Right oblique.* 3. *March!*

713. (PLATE 34.) At the word *march*, the men will turn their horses all together towards the right, in such a degree as that the right knee of each man will be placed behind the left knee of the man towards whose side the oblique movement is made. Having made this turn individually, the men will move straight forward in the new direction which they have taken.

Remarks.

714. In the oblique march, whenever the men lose the touch of



the left to their former direction, afterwards moving straight to the front.

718. The men on the flank to which the oblique movement is made, will keep for a time a moderate pace, in order that the platoon may be the sooner in its direction.

719. These movements will be made to the left on the same principles.

ARTICLE SIXTEENTH.

Of the "march by a Flank."

720. The men will be exercised in this march, at first by platoons, and afterwards by squadrons; each platoon being separately formed in line, the command will be given,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By fours, right wheel.* 3. *MARCH!*

721. (PLATE 33.) At the word *march*, the men of each rank will make a wheel to the right by fours; the chief of each platoon will march one pace on the flank towards the guide, and abreast of the four leading files of his platoon.

722. The sergeant of the right of the squadron will march one pace in advance of the four first files of the front rank; and the sergeant of the rank of file closers, in rear of the first platoon, in advance of the four first files of the rear rank.

723. In this movement the file closers of the second and third platoons will march one pace from the flank opposite the guides. The sergeant of the left flank will march one pace in rear of the four last files of the front rank; the sergeant in the file closers' rank of the fourth platoon, will march in like manner in rear of the four last files of the rear rank.

724. When this movement by fours is nearly completed, the chief of the platoon will command,

1. *FORWARD!* 2. *Guide—LEFT!*

725. At the first word, all the men will move straight to the front, taking care to close to their distance, in order to prevent the opening of the platoon when to be formed.

726 After marching for some time by the flank, the command will be given,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By fours, left wheel.* 3. *MARCH!* 4. *FORWARD!*
5. *Guide—RIGHT!*

727. At the word *march*, all the men of the platoon will wheel at the same time to the left by fours.

728. At the word *forward*, all move together to the front, feeling the boot to the right.

729. After marching some paces to the front, the platoon will be halted, and dressed to the left.

730. The same movement will be made to the left, and will be executed on the same principles.

731. The walk and trot will be successively used in these movements.

732. When in column of fours, marching to the front, (right or left in front,) a change of direction is to be made, the command will be given, *right (or left) turn!*

733. The first rank of platoons, thus formed, will make their wheel on a moveable pivot, upon the principles established in Nos. 680 to 685, and 697, 698; and the others will do the same when they reach the point where the head of the platoon made its turn.

734. The platoons having been exercised separately in marching by a flank, will be united in squadron to recommence the same movements; when the same progression will be observed.

ARTICLE SEVENTEENTH.

Of the March in Column.

738. There are three kinds of columns.

1st. The open column.

2d. The close column.

3d. The column of route.

Of 1. Open Column.

739. This column has the advantage of immediate formation in line, in all directions.

740. Its depth ought to be equal to the front it occupied when in line, deducting six paces for the depth of the two ranks.

741. The habitual march will be by platoons, because this proportion of front is the most convenient for all movements: when the commander finds it more suitable to his views to march by divisions, he will give orders accordingly.

742. If unforeseen obstacles oblige an open column, marching by platoons, to diminish its front, it will do so by breaking into fours, twos, and files; but as soon as the ground will permit, its platoons will be formed again.

743. Chiefs of platoons will repeat all commands of *march*, and *halt*, which may be given to their squadron.

744. In marching by divisions, each division will be commanded by the lieutenant attached to it, who alone will repeat those commands.

745. In all columns by platoons, the guides will be careful to preserve distance from the preceding platoon equal to the front of their platoon, and to regulate their pace by that of the preceding guide, following also his direction.

746. The preservation of distances being the most essential object in every kind of column, all other objects will be subordinate thereto. The guides must however take care to avoid, as much as possible, changes of pace without orders; and if it happen that their distance should be incorrect, the fault will be repaired by a moderate and regular movement.

747. Chiefs of platoons will continually have an eye to the observance of proper distances, which may be said to be six paces.

748. In open columns the difficulty of the ground may sometimes make it impossible to preserve the direction of the guides; in which case it is sufficient to constrain the guide of each platoon to follow the track of his leading guide.

749. The first division of a column commencing its march, at whatever pace, will always move off moderately, to give time to the column to assume a regular and uniform rate of march from front to rear.

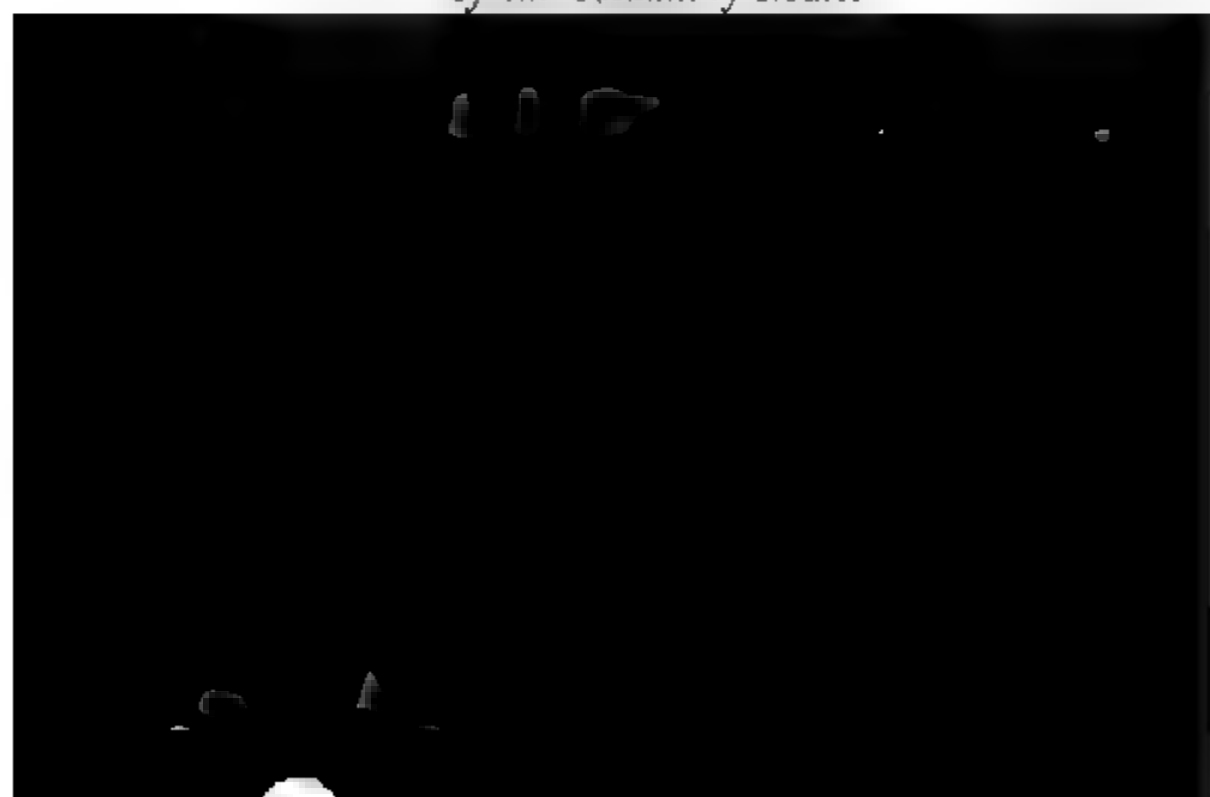
750. In marching by fours or twos, the guides of each rank will conform to all that has been prescribed, except that they will preserve only the distance from each other of one pace.

751. In open column, when changes of direction require successive wheels, those wheels will be made on moveable pivots, so as not to retard the march. The arc described by the pivots will be five paces; when broken into fours or twos, the pivots will wheel without slackening the pace.

Of the Close Column.

752. The object of this column being to diminish its depth, and to conceal its strength, it will be always formed by squadrons. In the manoeuvres will be detailed the manner of formation, and its movements.

Of the Column of Route.



wheel will be made, and at the moment when nearly finished, the chiefs of platoons will command, *halt! left dress!* the men being dressed, those officers will order *front!* and will then replace themselves before the centre of their platoons.

756. The platoons having finished their wheel, the guides will not attempt to place themselves in the direction of the guides who precede them, until the column is in march.

757. In breaking into divisions the same rules will be observed.

To March with the Right in Front.

The command will be *Column,*

1. *Column.* 2. *March.* 3. *Guide left.* 4. *March!*

758. At the fourth command, repeated by all the chiefs of platoons, the movement will be made.

759. Care must be taken, previously, to give a point of direction to the guide of the first platoon, who will choose intermediate points to ensure the regularity of his march: the guide of the second platoon will also be informed of the fixed point given to the first guide, who will serve him as an intermediate point: these two sergeants will preserve, during the whole march, the direction given to them.

760. The two other guides will follow exactly their leaders.

The Squadron Marching in Column of Platoons, with the Right in Front, to Break it by Fours, Twos, and Files; to March by Twos, Fours, and to Form Platoons in the Passage of Defiles.

761. To execute these movements, six officers, or non-commissioned officers, will be placed at points sufficiently distant from each other to designate the place where the obstacle will make it necessary to break by fours, that where it narrows so as to require the marching by twos, and that where it becomes so narrow as to require the marching by files; marking, also, the points where the defile increases, so as to permit the formation by twos, where it enlarges so as to permit the formation by fours, and, finally, the point where it terminates.

762. On reaching the defile, the chief of the leading platoon will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By fours, trot.* 3. *March!*

763. At the word *march*, the four files of the right move forward; the four who were on their left will enter into the column by obliquing to the right; all the other fours of the platoon doing the same in succession.

764. The chiefs of the other platoons will order them to break by fours, as they each arrive at the place where the first platoon broke.

765. When the column comes abreast of the second officer, the chief of the first platoon will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By fours.* 3. *MARCH!*

766. At the word *march*, the two files on the right of the leading fours will continue their march, followed by those who were on their left, and who will enter the column by obliquing to the right: the rest will do the same as they reach the same point: and so with all the other platoons.

767. When the column comes abreast of the third officer, the chief of the first platoon will command,

1. *Platoon.* 2. *By files.* 3. *MARCH!*

768. At the third command, the file on the right of the column will continue his march, followed by the file of the left, who enters the column by obliquing to the right: the rest of the platoon, and the other platoons, and enter the column in the same manner as the first file: the

772. As soon as the first platoon has cleared the defile and formed, its pace will be slackened, and, in case of need, it will be halted, to give the following platoons time to take their distance.

ARTICLE EIGHTEENTH.

The Squadron Marching in Column of Platoons, with the Right in Front, to Face it to the Opposite Direction.

The command will be given,

1. Column. 2 *Platoons, right about wheel.* 3. MARCH!

773. At the second command, the flank of each platoon which is to be the pivot of the wheel, will prepare to halt, without however slackening pace. At the word *march*, repeated by the chiefs of platoons, the pivots will halt; the marching flanks will turn at the pace at which the column had been marching previously; all observing to regulate themselves by the flank of the platoon at the head of the column, until they have made the half circle, when they will regulate themselves by the marching flank of the platoon, which is to be at the head of the column when the wheel-about is completed.

774. When the wheel is nearly completed, the chief of the squadron will command, *forward! guide right!* which will be repeated by all the chiefs of platoons, and the movement will be executed as prescribed in Nos. 694, 695.

775. The squadron, now marching by platoons, left in front, will be broken by fours, twos, and files, and formed again by twos, fours, and platoons, on the same principles as prescribed for those movements with the right in front. It will again be fronted to its former direction by wheeling about the platoons to the left.

To Halt the Column.

After having thus marched for some time, the command will be given,

1. Column. 2. HALT!

776. At the word *halt*, repeated by each chief of platoon, as promptly as possible, the platoons will halt, and their chiefs will order, *left dress!* and *front!*

777. After the word *front*, there will be no movement in the platoons, even to rectify distances or directions.

778. The chief of squadron, after commanding *halt*, will move in rear of the guide of the second platoon, to judge whether the two sergeants have marched correctly on the point of direction which he had indicated.

*The Squadron being in Column, Right in Front, to
Wheel it to the Left into Line.*

The column being halted, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Left into line wheel.* 3. *MARCH!*

779. At the second command, the sergeant of the right flank will move on the direction of the guides of the column, at the distance of the front of a platoon, facing to the side towards which the line is to be formed. At the word *march*, repeated by all the chiefs of platoons, the squadron will wheel into line, the sergeant on the left of each platoon serving as a pivot, and turning his horse on his own ground. Each chief of platoon will command *halt!* at the instant when the marching flank of his platoon is about to finish its movement, and, afterwards, *right dress!* during the wheel, the sergeant of the left flank will resume his place in line; and when the movement is completed, the chief of squadron will command *FRONT!*

780. The chief of squadron will, after commanding *left into line wheel*, ascertain that the sergeant of the right flank is correctly on

at the distance of the front of a platoon, facing to the side towards which the line is to be formed. The chief of squadron will, after commanding *guides right!* rectify the position of the guides, and examine whether the sergeant of the right flank is exactly in their direction before he commands *march!* At that word, repeated by all the chiefs of platoons, the squadron will wheel into line, the sergeant on the right of each platoon serving as a pivot, and turning his horse on his own ground. Each chief of platoon will command *halt!* at the instant when the marching flank of his platoon is about to finish its movement, and, afterwards, *left dress!* The movement being completed, the chief of the squadron will command *Front!* and the sergeant of the right, on whom the formation was made, will remain on the left of the line; the sergeant of the left flank remaining in the file closers' rank, behind the second file from the left of the fourth platoon.

Remarks.

783. Errors are to be rectified, as far as possible, without speaking, and by signs; but, if necessary to designate a man, it is enough to indicate, in a low voice, the place he occupies in the rank.

784. The different points recommended to the attention of the chief of squadron ought not to cause delay in giving the commands, *halt!* by inversion, *left (or right) into line wheel—march!* which ought to succeed each other as rapidly as possible.

785. The sergeant whose duty it is to place himself on the alignment of the guides, will observe to take rather too much ground than too little.

786. The conductor of the marching flank of the first platoon ought to take care to regulate himself by this sergeant, only for the alignment, without endeavoring to approach him.

The Squadron being in Line, to Break to the Left by Platoons,

The chief will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *Platoons, left wheel.* 3. *March!*

787. At the end of the wheel, the chiefs of platoons will command, *halt! right dress!* and *front!*

788. To march in column of platoons, *left in front*, the same principles will be observed as have just been detailed for the march with the right in front, 758 to 760. It will also be halted and wheeled into line to the right, on similar principles.

789. The squadron will, also, with the left in front, be wheeled to the *left into line, by inversion*, conforming to the principles detailed in No. 782.

790. All these movements will be repeated at a trot.

791. If the squadron had broken by divisions, its formations would be upon the same principles.

Remarks.

792. Whenever it is desired, marching in column of platoons, without halting, and by a general movement, to front to a flank, for the purpose of continuing the march, the command will be given, *platoons, right (or left) wheel, march!* and then *forward! guide right (or left!)* these two last commands will not be repeated.

To Break by the Right to March to the Left,

The chief of squadron will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *By platoons, break by the right to march to the left.*
3. *March!*

793. (PLATE 36.) At the second command, the chief of the first platoon will command, *platoon, forward! guide left!* and at the word *forward!* the first platoon will advance ten paces, turn to

halt, march, and change pace, at the same moment; and whenever faults are committed in these particulars, he will halt the squadron, explain what may not have been understood, and practice again whatever movement may have been incorrectly performed.

797. When the platoons have learned to march with uniformity, the last platoon may be ordered to slacken pace for some steps, to accustom the men to remedy the sudden irregularities which sometimes occur in considerable columns: the same will successively be done with the other platoons; and when the inconveniences resulting to the whole, from such irregularities, have been shown, the platoons which have slackened pace will recover their distances.

798. The head of the column, also, may be made insensibly to increase or slacken pace, without a word of command, to judge of the attention of the guides, and accustom them to follow the changes of pace of those before them: these changes ought not to be repeated many times in succession, but the squadron should be accustomed to them by degrees.

Change of Direction by Successive Wheels.

The command will be given,

Head of Column to the right.

799. The chief of the first platoon will command, *right turn!* and *forward!* each chief of platoon giving successively the same commands; so that his platoon may turn at the point where the first turned, (as directed in No. 697.)

800. In this change of direction, the adjutant at the head of the column will post a marker on the pivot side at the point where the movement is to commence, and in the direction to which the platoon is to turn: all the other platoons will turn two paces before they come abreast of the marker, their chiefs giving the command in proper time to prevent the column from being thrown out of its direction.

Remarks.

801. At the moment of changing direction, the chief of squadron will give a new point of direction to the guide of the first platoon, indicating it also to the guide of the second.

802. The exact preservation of distances after the changes of direction, mainly depends on the uniformity of pace observed by the marching flanks: the leading platoon should turn neither too slowly nor too quickly, and each platoon will wheel exactly at the same rate with the one preceding.

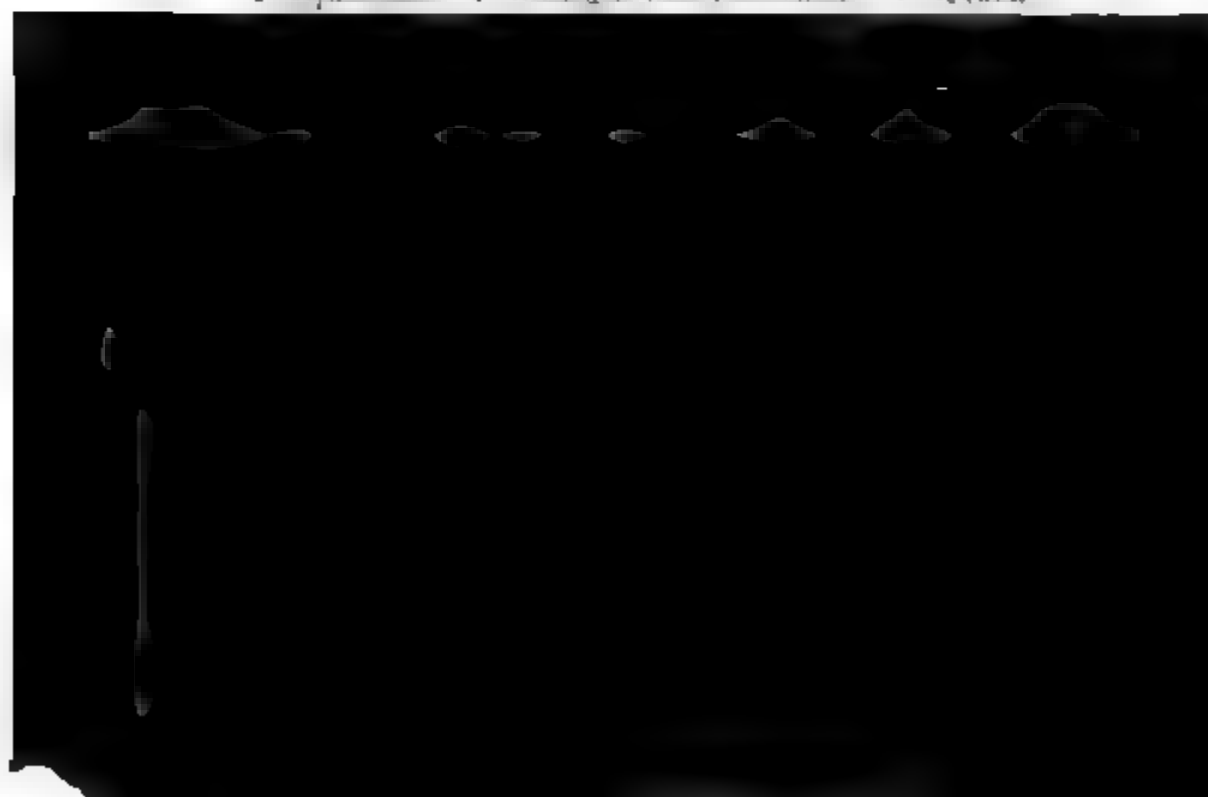
803. The chief of squadron will afterwards command, *head of column—left!* the chief of the first platoon will command, *left turn!* and *forward!* which will be performed as before.

804. If, after breaking to the right or left *from a halt*, it is intended to direct the column towards any point to its right or left, the change of direction will be made by the same commands and principles: in that case, the first platoon will make its wheel on a moveable pivot, the others marching forward, and turning on the same point.

The Squadron Marching in Column of Platoons Right in Front, to Form Line on its Right Flank.

805. The chief of squadron will mark the alignment on which he intends to form, at twenty paces from the right of the column, by two sergeants fronting each other, and with the distance of the front of the squadron between them; a third sergeant will be placed, facing to the sergeant of the right, and in the intermediate line, at the point where the left of the first platoon is to rest in the new formation. He will then command,

1 *Squadron* 2 *Overight into line wheel* 3 *March!*



808. Each other platoon will make similar turns to the right, when the sergeant on its right is within two paces from the sergeant of the left of the preceding platoon which has formed: when the turn is finished, the platoon moves forward, is halted abreast of the file closer, and is dressed up: these movements are all made by the orders of the chiefs of platoons respectively.

809. When this movement is made at a trot, the pivot of each platoon, in wheeling, will sufficiently extend the arc of his circle, and the marching flank will double its pace to prevent interference with the march of the rest of the column.

810. If the column be at a gallop, the marching flank must be put to its speed.

811. *Breaking by the left to march to the right, marching in column, changes of direction, and the formations, with the left in front, will all be practised on similar principles by the contrary commands and movements.*

To Break to the Rear by the Right to March to the Left,

The chief of the squadron will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *By platoons, by the right break to the rear to march to the left.* 3. *March!*

812. At the second command, the chief of the first platoon will command, *platoon, right about wheel!* he will repeat the command *march!* and, at the end of the wheel, will order, *forward! guide left!* and after marching ten paces, will order, *right turn* and *forward!*

813. After the word *march* by the chief of the first platoon, the chief of the second will order, *platoon, right about wheel!* giving the word *march!* when the chief of the first platoon, after making his wheel about, gives the word *forward!*

814. The remaining platoons will conform to the same movements.

The Squadron being in Column of Platoons to Form Line to the Front.

815. The chief of squadron having placed two sergeants facing each other, at the distance of the front of the squadron, one of them placed at the point where the right of the squadron is to rest, and a third at an intermediate point, where the left of the first platoon is to rest, he will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *Front into line.* 3. *MARCH!*

816. (PLATE 38.) At the second command, the chief of the first platoon will command, *platoon, forward!* the chiefs of the three other platoons giving, *platoon, left half wheel!* At the word *march*, repeated by all the chiefs of platoons, the first platoon will march twenty paces forward, will halt, and dress by the right, at the command of its chief: each other chief of platoon, after making his half wheel, will command, *forward! guide right!* and, when the right file of his platoon arrives opposite to the left file of the platoon to his right, he will command, *right half wheel! forward!* and *halt!* abreast of the file closers, afterwards giving, *right dress!* The squadron being formed and aligned, the chief will command, *Front!*

817. The squadron will *break to the rear by the left, to march to the right*, and in column of platoons, with the left leading, will *form line to the front*, on the same principles, but by contrary movements.

The Squadron being in Line, will Break to the Right by Platoons, to Move Forward, after the Wheel, and without a Halt.

The chief of squadron will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *By platoons, right wheel.* 3. *MARCH!* 4. *FORWARD!*
5. *Guide—Left!*

818. At the second command, the sergeants of the left flank of



820. This movement will be performed on the principles explained in Nos. 815 and 816, by contrary movements.

821. If the squadron, being in column of platoons, right in front, is to form line to the rear, on the head of the column, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Into line, faced to the rear.* 3. *MARCH!*

822. (PLATE 39.) This movement will be made by forming to the front, in inverse order, as has just been explained; after which the chief of squadron will command, *platoons, left about wheel!* afterwards dressing his squadron by the right!

823. The squadron will then break by platoons, left in front, to move forward without a halt; and, when so marching in platoons, (left in front,) will form line to the front in inverse order; and, in column of platoons, left in front, will form line to the rear; all on the same principles, and by contrary means, with those before explained for the execution of the same movements, with the right in front.

The Squadron, Marching in Line, to Wheel it About, to the Right or Left, by Fours,

The command will be given,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *By fours, right about, (or left about,) wheel.* 3. *MARCH!* 4. *FORWARD!* 5. *Guide—LEFT!* (if wheeled about to the right,) or, *Guide—RIGHT!* (if to the left.)

825. At the third command, the whole wheel about by fours, the pivots taking care to halt, to turn their horses on their own ground and, with the leg, to bring round their haunches to the left, if wheeling on the right, and *vice versa*; the marching flank of each rank of fours will move at the pace at which the squadron had been marching.

826. At the fourth command, the squadron will move directly forward; and, at the fifth, the men will feel the boot towards the guide.

827. The chief of the squadron will take care, before the end of the wheel, to give the word, *forward!* and *guide right (or left!)* at the moment of its termination.

828. After thus marching some time to the rear, the squadron will be wheeled about again, by fours, to its former front.

829. The wheelings about, by fours, will be often repeated; and the movements will be executed at the pace at which the squadron had before been marching, excepting when at the gallop; and, from a halt, the movement will be made at a walk.

830. If the squadron is to be halted immediately after the wheel, the chief will command, *halt! left (or right) dress! and front!*

The Squadron, Marching in Line, to March it to the Rear,

The chief will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *Platoons, right about, (or left about,) wheel.* 3. *MARCH!* 4. *FORWARD!* 5. *Guide—LEFT! (or Guide—RIGHT!)*

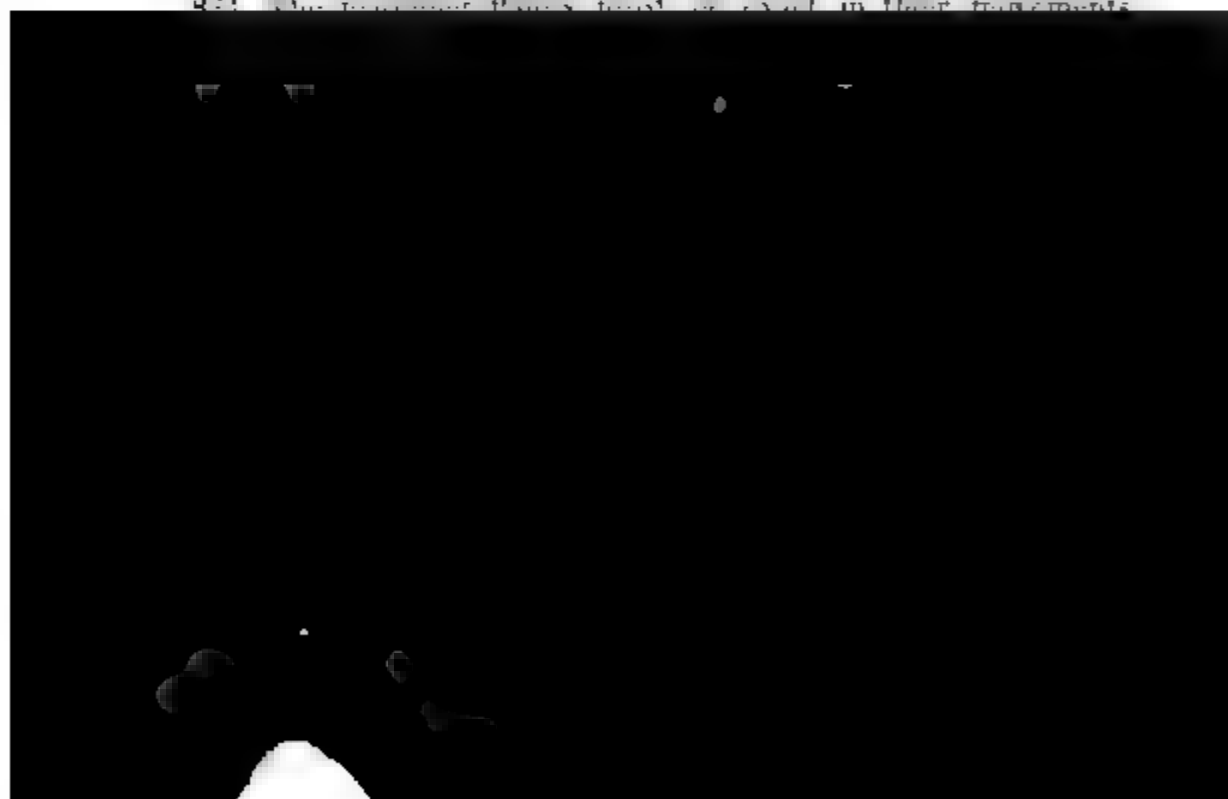
831. At the third command, the platoons will wheel about; and, at *forward!* the squadron will resume its direct march; and, after marching sometime to the rear, it will be wheeled about again to its former front. These movements will be made, first, from a halt, and afterwards, from a walk and trot.

832. The whole will be practised from the left, on the same principles, by contrary movements.

Remarks.

833. In these movements the pivots will halt at the word *march*; the men of the rear rank will arrange the haunches of their horses, and the sergeants on the flanks of the squadron will make their wheelings about without quitting the flanks.

834. The movements being taught, as usual, in their respective



platoon will order, *platoon, forward—guide left!* the other chiefs of platoons giving the word, *platoon, right half wheel!* At the word *march*, the first platoon will continue its forward movement; all the rest making a half wheel to the right, marching forward, and entering, successively, by a diagonal movement, and then by a half wheel to the left, into the direction of the first platoon; each chief of platoon, when in his proper position, will give the word *forward*, and the column will then be halted.

Change of Direction of a Column, from a Halt.

837. The first platoon will be wheeled to the left into the direction proposed to be given, when the chief of the squadron commands,

1. *Column.* 2. *Change direction by the right flank.* 3. *MARCH!*

838. (PLATE 41.) At the second command, the three other chiefs of platoons will command, *four, right wheel!* and at *march*, repeated by them, each platoon will make its movement, advancing at the word *forward*. During the movement, the chief of each platoon will place himself on the left of the man of the first rank of his platoon, making him turn more or less, so as to direct him five or six paces in rear of the point where the guide ought to be placed in the same direction; he will halt when abreast of the guide, his platoon marching past him, and at the moment when its left is near him, he will command, *four, left wheel—march! forward!* afterwards, when the movement is completed, *halt! left dress!* and then *front!* Each platoon, during the movement, ought to preserve its distance to the

839. Similar movements will be made from the left, on the same principles, by contrary commands.

840. *The column, halted, will be made to take ground to one of its flanks, without changing the direction of its head; and for this purpose, all the platoons of the column, at once, will make the movements explained in Nos. 721 to 729.* In this case, the chiefs of platoons will move to the right or left file, according to the side to which the movement is to be made, to ascertain the distance and direction.

Of the Formation of the Squadron.

841. The column, marching by platoons, right in front, to form the squadron, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Form squadron.* 3. *MARCH!*

842. (PLATE 42.) At the second command, the chief of the first platoon will order, *platoon, forward!* (without changing pace;) the other chiefs of platoons will command, *platoons, left half wheel! trot!* At the word *march*, repeated by all the chiefs of platoons, the first platoon continues to march straight forward, the three others making their half wheel to the left, at a trot, after which their chiefs will order, *forward—guide right!* and as soon as the right of each platoon arrives opposite the man on the left of the preceding one, its chief will command, *right, half wheel! forward—guide right!* When, on the alignment of the first platoon, the chief of the second will command, *walk—march!* when the platoon will resume the walk, dressing by the right. The others will do the same.

Passage of Obstacles, the Squadron Marching in Line.

The chief will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *First platoon, pass obstacle.* 3. *HALT.*

843. The chief of the first platoon will repeat, *halt*, and immediately after will command, *left oblique, trot—march!* when exactly in



of the first: and then the third, which will oblique to the left in rear of the fourth.

848. In general, platoons of the same division, in passing obstacles, will double behind each other, to prevent being separated; and for this purpose they will oblique to the right or left, according to the point where the obstacle is presented, and will take platoon distance. If the squadron is at a trot, these movements will be made at a gallop.

Remarks.

849. Chiefs of platoons will take the greatest care to give their commands rapidly, and to strain a little the degree of obliquity, for the sake of greater promptness in the execution of these movements.

Of the Oblique March by Platoons.

The squadron, marching in line, after passing the obstacles, the command will be given,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *Platoons right half wheel.* 3. *MARCH!*

850. (PLATE 43.) At the word *march*, the platoons will make their half wheels on a fixed pivot, according to the principles before established: the wheel being nearly ended, the chief of the squadron will command,

4. *FORWARD!* 5. *Guide—RIGHT!*

851. At the fourth command, the march of each platoon will become direct: during the whole of this march the sergeant on the right of the first platoon will be very careful to march in a straight direction to his front; all the other guides will observe their distance, taking for their file leaders the fourth man from the flank opposite to the guide of the platoon which precedes them.

852. All officers and non-commissioned officers, remain as in line. After marching in this direction for some time, the chief of the squadron will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *Platoons, left half wheel.* 3. *MARCH!*

4. *FORWARD!* 5. *Guide—RIGHT!*

853. At the word *march*, each platoon will make its half wheel to the left, on a fixed pivot, at the same pace at which the squadron was before marching.

Remarks.

854. The pivots of each platoon will take care in this movement to halt their horses all at the same time, in order that the wheels of all the platoons may end together.

The same movements will be made to the left.

855. These movements will be practised at the walk and trot, from a halt, and on the march.

Of the Countermarch.

The Squadron being in Line, to Front it in an Opposite Direction by a Countermarch,

The chief will command,

1. *Squadron.* 2. *Countermarch.*

And immediately after,

3. *File to the right.* 4. *March!*

856. At the second command, all the file closers turn to the left, and pass to the left of the squadron; those of the second division, abreast of the front rank, the captain of the file closers' rank on the left of them; those of the first division, abreast of the rear rank

moving briskly to gain their rank. The officers at the head of the squadron, as well as the officers and non-commissioned officers of the file closers, will follow the movement of the men, taking their places successively as they reach them.

Remarks.

858. The chief of the squadron will take care to make the men take a direction exactly parallel to that occupied by the squadron previously, and to place them in the rear exactly at the prescribed distance: he ought to move to the flank by which the countermarch is made, to superintend these two important objects.

ARTICLE NINETEENTH.

The Squadron being in Line, to Exercise it in the Charge.

859. The men having been instructed singly in the charge, in the School of the Trooper, No. 554, will now be exercised in the following manner.

860. The squadron will be placed at the extremity of a field which affords sufficient length, and is clear of obstacles; and the men will be ordered to draw swords.

861. The chief of squadron will order the platoons to charge one after the other, from the right. Each platoon will be led by its chief; the chief of the squadron will then take a position three hundred and sixty paces in advance of his squadron, having a trumpet with him.

862. After each platoon has advanced fifty paces, its chief will command, *trot, march!* one hundred and fifty paces further, he will command, *gallop, march!* eighty paces farther the chief of the squadron will cause *the charge* to be sounded; when the chief of platoon will command, *charge!* At this command, all the men will take the positions with their swords directed in the School of the Trooper, Nos. 530, 531; the chief of platoon will command, when twelve or fifteen paces from the chief of the squadron,

1. *Platoon.* 2. HALT! 3. *Right—DRESS!*

863. At the first word, the men pull into a trot, bringing their swords to a *slope*, and then come to a walk.

864. The squadron again formed at the extremity of the ground, charges will be made by divisions and by the whole squadron; the words *division* and *squadron* being substituted for *platoon*. These charges will be made two or three times in succession, allowing only time between them to dress the squadron.

Remarks.

865. The charge being, in war, the most decisive, and consequently the most important movement, the men cannot be practised in it too frequently.

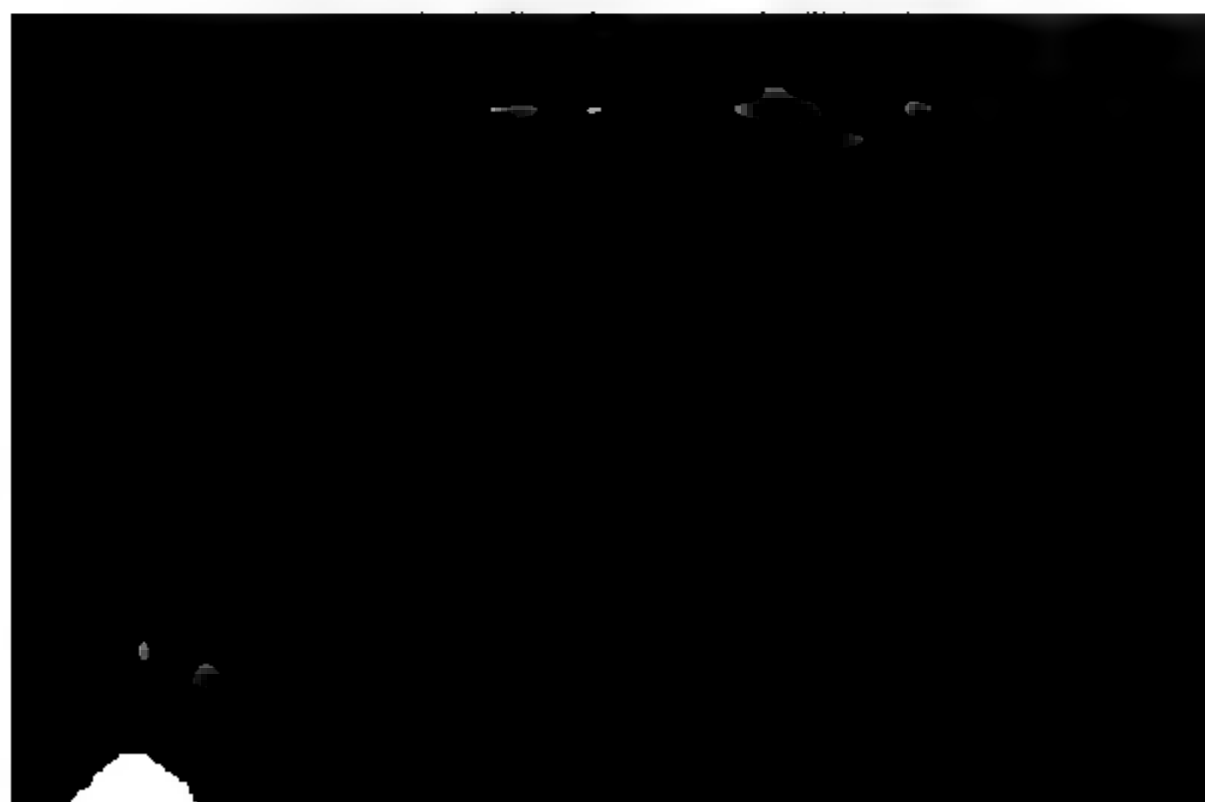
866. In giving the principles of the charge, care must be taken that the files march in a direct line; if the horses are observed to jostle each other, or the rear rank men do not cover exactly their file leaders, the movement must be recommenced until the fault is corrected.

867. The men are apt to change the pace before the command is given; a fault to be corrected with care; but they must be especially prevented from putting their horses *to speed* before the command charge, and even then they must be kept in command.

ARTICLE TWENTIETH.

Skirmishing.

868. To exercise the men in skirmishing, a platoon of the squadron will be made to disperse and cover its front and flank.



When a call is sounded they will halt, and observe the movements of the squadron, to which they will conform. If it turn to the right or left, they will do the same, singly, to cover the front: if the squadron retire, *the retreat* will be sounded, when they will retire by a chequered movement as follows:

871. All the skirmishers who belong to the front rank will wheel about singly to the left, and march fifty paces to the rear, and then resume their front by wheeling about singly to the right. The same movements will be made by the rear rank men who place themselves fifty paces in rear of the others, and so on as long as the squadron continues its retreat.

872. When the squadron resumes its front, a call will be sounded, when the skirmishers halt, and form again on the same line: *cease firing* will then be sounded, and afterwards *the rally*; when they return by the shortest way to their place in the squadron.

Remarks.

873. In all circumstances, skirmishers move out and return at a gallop: they never draw their pistol till they are dispersed: they never fire till within reach of the enemy, unless by order.

874. They retire only by wheeling about to the left, and resume their front by wheeling about to the right. When they form again in platoon, they *return* the pistol, and *carry* the sword.

Rallying.

875. To exercise the men in rallying with facility, in case they have been repulsed, the squadron will be placed in line at the extremity of the ground, and the signal will be sounded *to disperse*; when the men will spread themselves as skirmishers: the chief of the squadron, flank files of platoons, files closers, and trumpets, will remain in their positions to mark the formation. When the chief of the squadron causes *the rally* to be sounded, the men will promptly rejoin their platoons and resume their places. The rally is to be made as silently as possible, the men falling in by the rear.

876. As soon as the chief has united two-thirds of his men, he will march his squadron forward: this movement will be made first at a walk, then at a trot; and finally, when the men learn to rally without disorder, the squadron, after rallying, will advance at the trot and gallop, and will be made to charge.

SECTION VI.

MANŒUVRES OF THE LINE.

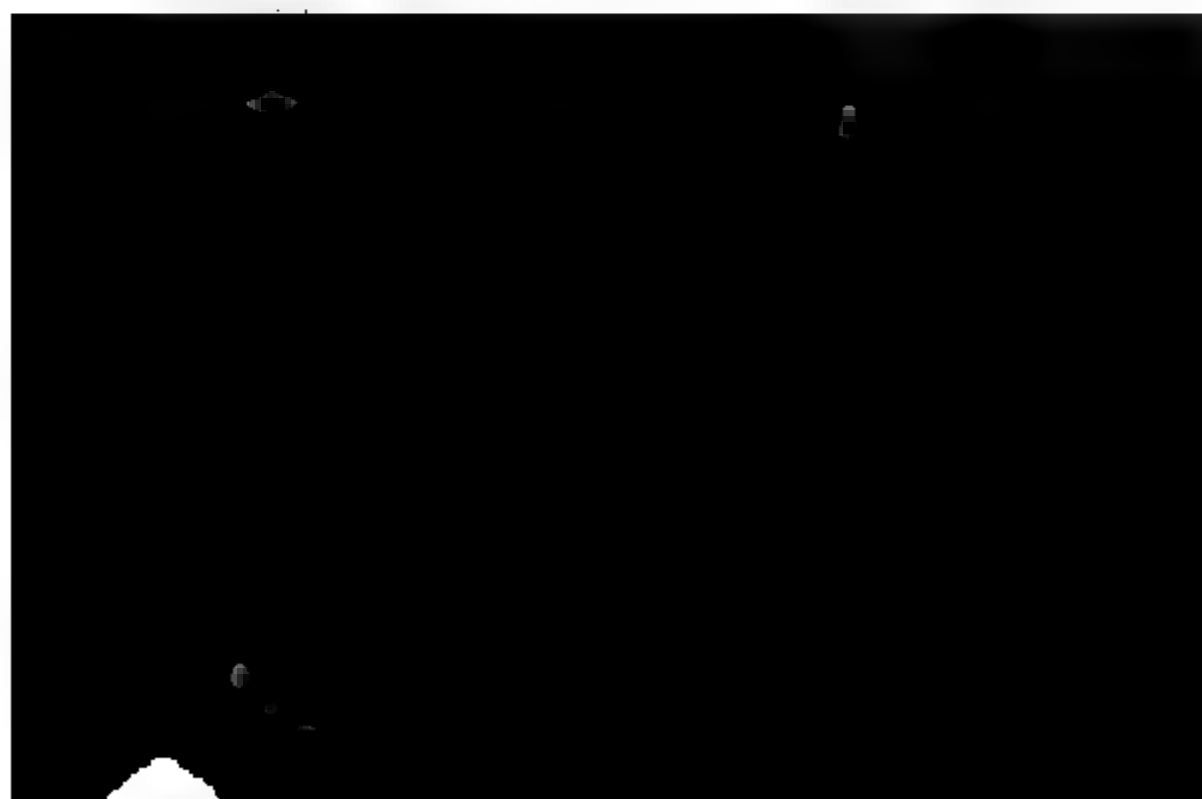
Preliminary Remarks.

877. The tone of command will always be animated, brief, distinct, and with a strength of voice proportioned to the extent of the corps under exercise.

878. All commands of caution or execution, which by their length are difficult to be pronounced in a breath, will be cut into two or three parts; but the last syllable of all commands will be pronounced with a firm and more elevated tone.

879. Commands of caution and preparation will be repeated by all the field officers, but where the manœuvre requires of a particular regiment a particular movement, instead of repeating the general command, each of the field officers would order the particular movement: chiefs of squadrons do the same when a particular movement is required of their squadrons; and they repeat preparatory commands, when the whole line or column is to move simultaneously.

880. In the case of successive movements, chiefs of squadrons will give the commands necessary as to the part they have to perform, and so also chiefs of platoons as to the movements re-



squadron on his right; unless he had been specially ordered to regulate himself by the movements on the left.

885. When the commander of a column wishes to form it in line, or to make any deployment, he will begin by determining and indicating the points of direction which he intends to give to the line; for this purpose an officer will be charged with the duty of placing the general guides upon the points which have been determined; the officer will be an adjutant, for a single regiment, or one of the general staff for a brigade or division: if no points have been determined, those officers will establish the line of formation, placing the guides upon it in the manner herein after prescribed.

886. When a line or column is to be put in motion, the commandant will indicate to the adjutant on the right flank, or sergeant major on the left, the points on which the march is to be directed, in order that they may, in the case of a march in line, point them out to the sergeant of the right or left of the regulating squadron: and in case of a march in column that they may also be pointed out to the guide of the right or left of the first or fourth platoons, and to cause them to take intermediate points, so as always to enable them to preserve the direction of the march.

Of the Choice of Points of Direction.

887. These points ought always to be stationary, distinct, and distant: for this purpose, where practicable, isolated and prominent objects will be selected; as, a tree, a house, a steeple, &c.

888. The choice of the points ought to be determined in regard to one of the following objects:

1st. That of regulating the march of a column, or line; when they are called *points of direction of the march*.

2d. That of marking the front on which the column is to form, or the line to rest; when they are called *points of direction of the line*.

In the first case, a point will be chosen at a distance, which will determine the direction of the column, or line.

In the second case, when it is intended to establish the line in a position distant from that of the column, two projecting points will be chosen, between which the line is to be formed.

In both cases, the intermediate points will be taken by one of the following methods:

Manner of Fixing the Intermediate Points when a Single Point of Direction only is Established.

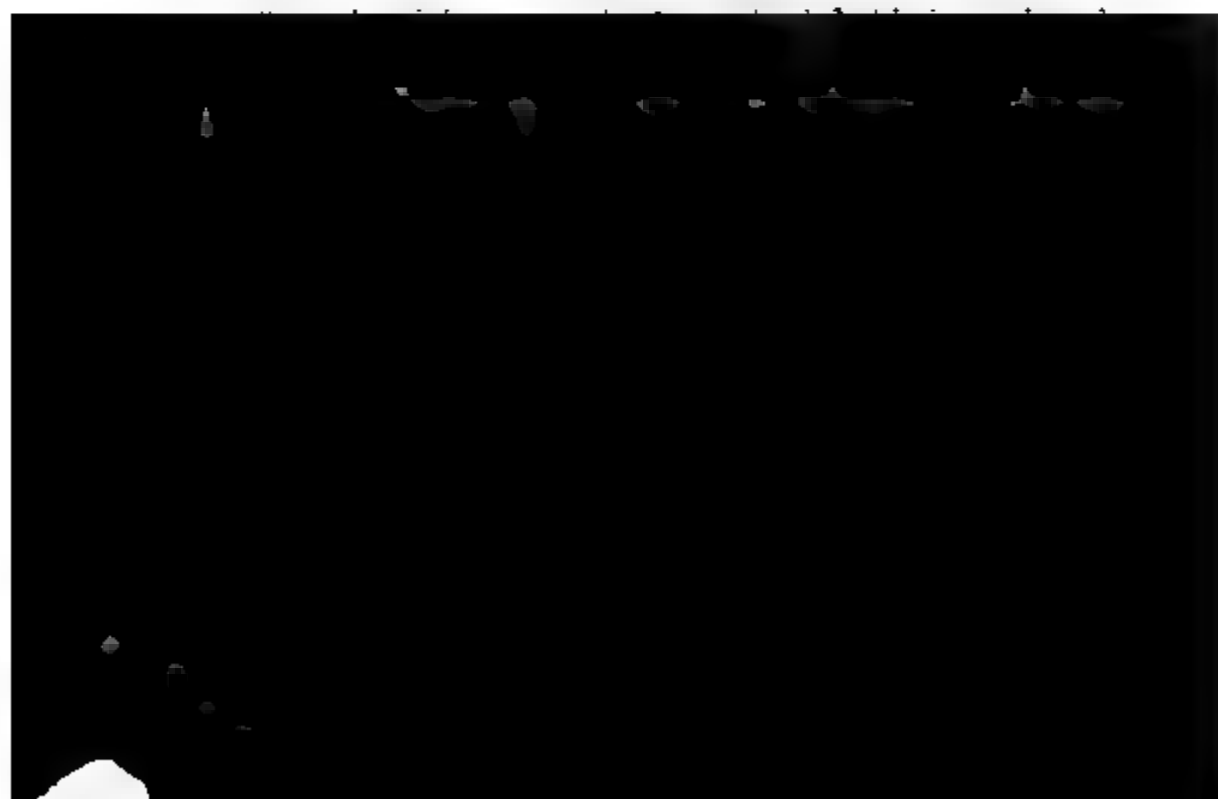
889. (PLATE 45, Fig. 1.) Let the tree, A, be chosen as the point of direction; an officer of the general staff, or an adjutant, B, will, at a gallop, place himself on the new direction, establishing, at some distance from him, a sergeant, C, who will face towards him. If the latter is not on the point of direction, the former, B, will make the necessary signs, to incline him to the right or left, until he is in the exact direction.

890. When the direction is thus determined, if the column is to be formed in line, a sergeant, D, will be sent to mark on the line the point where the first subdivision of the column is to rest. He will post himself on the line, facing to the officer B.

Manner of Fixing the Intermediate Points between two given Points.

891. As soon as the commandant has designated the two fixed points in the direction of which he intends to form his line, an officer of the general staff, for a line, or an adjutant, for a regiment, with two sergeants, will seek the intermediate points.

892. (PLATE 45, Fig. 2.) The sergeant of the right will be represented by the letter A, the sergeant of the left by B. Let there be



894. When the two sergeants have arrived upon the line, they will face each other, so that if there had been any irregularity it could be rectified by them promptly, without making any sign, or speaking to each other.

895. The sergeant A, if he perceive the point D beyond his left, will incline a little to the left, which will oblige the sergeant B to move towards the right, since he had been instructed constantly to keep his alignment on A and the point C.

896. The contrary movements would, of course, be made if the point D had appeared beyond his right.

897. A sergeant will at the same time place himself upon the line, at the point where the right of the regiment is to rest.

ARTICLE FIRST.

Of the Different Modes of Forming Column from Line, viz. Breaking to the Right or Left by Platoons; and Breaking by either Flank by Platoons, to the Front or Rear, to March to the other Flank.

For the detail of these movements, it is only necessary to refer to the School of the Squadron.

FIRST MANŒUVRE.

To Form into Close Column from a Halt.

898. When the ground will not permit a regiment to march in line, to the front or rear, in consequence of obstacles before the first, second, and fourth squadrons; or, when it may be advisable to diminish the extent of the front to conceal a part of its strength from the enemy, the colonel would command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Close column, on the third squadron, right in front.*
3. *MARCH!*

899. (PLATE 46.) After the field officers have repeated the second command, the chiefs of the first and second squadrons will command, *four, left wheel!* posting themselves on the right flank, and abreast of the heads of their squadrons; and the chief of the fourth squadron

will command, *four, right wheel!* posting himself on the left flank, and abreast of the head of his squadron.

900. At the command *march*, the two first squadrons will wheel to the left by four; and, this movement being nearly finished, their chief will command, *FORWARD! Guide right!*

901. The lieutenant at the head of the second squadron will command, *Right—TURN! FORWARD!* and then, *Left—TURN! FORWARD!* so as to march on a line parallel to the front of the third squadron, passing near the heads of the horses of its officers. The chief of the second squadron, when its head has arrived abreast of the fourth file from the left of the third squadron, will command, *four, right wheel!* in time to order *MARCH!* when the head of his squadron is abreast of the fourth file from the left of the third squadron. The men having thus wheeled to the right, by four, he will command: *HALT! Left—DRESS!* and *FRONT!* All these movements will be executed promptly.

902. Immediately after the chief of the first squadron has given the command, *guide right!* he will command, *head of column, right half—wheel!* Then the lieutenant at the head of the column of this squadron will command, *Right—TURN!* and *FORWARD!* directing himself diagonally, so as to turn to the left at the command of his chief of squadron, abreast of the right of the second squadron, upon a line parallel to the front of that squadron, and passing near the heads of the horses of its officers. The chief of the first squadron will regulate himself on the second, and the second, on the third squadron; the rest of the movements of the first squadron being entirely the same as prescribed for the second squadron, so that these two squad-

903. If circumstances should require the formation of the close column on the first squadron, then the second squadron would perform its movements according to those just explained for the fourth squadron; and the third and fourth squadrons would perform to the rear, by contrary movements, what has been prescribed for the first.

904. If the close column is to be formed on the fourth squadron, the third, second, and first, will make the movements prescribed for the second and first; and if the close column is to be formed on the second squadron, the first will make the movements prescribed for the second, and the third and fourth squadrons will make the movements prescribed for the second and third.

905. If the close column is to be formed with the left in front, the command will be given,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Close column on the—squadron, left in front.*
March!

ARTICLE SECOND.

Of the March in Column.

906. The principles of the march in column have been explained in the School of the Squadron, (Nos 739 to 751.)

Change of Direction in Column,

907. Will be made by the movements detailed in the School of the Squadron, (Nos. 799 to 802.)

908. In the case of successive wheels, the sergeant in the rank of file closer, in rear of the platoon at the head of the column, will leave his position, and place himself at the point where the pivot of the first division of the column began to turn; and will remain there until the last platoon of his squadron has made its wheel; he will be successively replaced by the sergeant file closer in rear of the first platoon of each squadron.

909. If it be intended to change the direction of the column, so as to front it in an opposite direction to its march, the colonel will command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *By platoons, right (or left) about wheel.*
3. MARCH!

910. (The wheel should be made upon the guide, if the ground will admit of it.)

911. The movements will be executed on the principles explained in the School of the Squadron, (Nos. 773, 774.)

912. If it be intended, from a halt, to change the direction of all the platoons of the column at once, the leading platoon will be placed in the direction to be taken, and the colonel will command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Change direction by the right (or left) flank.*
3. *MARCH!*

913. These movements will be executed on the principles explained in the School of the Squadron, (No. 838.)

SECOND MANŒUVRE.

To Pass from Open to Close Column by the Successive Formation of Squadrons.

914. When it is intended to increase the front of a column marching by platoons, right in front, or to diminish its depth, without a halt, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Form squadrons.* 3. *MARCH!*

915. After the field officers, and chief of the first squadron only, have repeated the second command, the other chiefs of squadrons will order *TROT!*

(Illustration 17.) At the word *march*, the chief of the first squadron



917. The third and fourth squadrons will form on the same principles in succession.

918. As each of the squadrons come into their formation, their chiefs will give the command, *guide left!* placing themselves on the flank of their squadrons, towards the guides.

919. If the colonel intends to form the close column, and to halt it, he will send the order to the chief of the first squadron, who, after forming his squadron, and leading it twenty paces forward, would command, *HALT! Left—Dress!* and *Forward!* The other squadrons would conform to the movements of the first.

920. If the left were leading, the movements would be made on similar principles.

To Change Direction of a Close Column from a Halt.

921. The leading squadron is to be placed in the new direction, when the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Change direction by the right flank.* 3. *MARCH!*

922. After the field officers have repeated the two first commands, the chiefs of squadrons will command, *fourth, right (or left) wheel!* At the word *march*, the squadrons will execute their movements, conforming to the instructions given for platoons in the changes of direction of the open column, (No. 838,) each chief of squadron conforming to what was prescribed for the chiefs of platoons.

To Change the Direction of the Close Column, on the March.

923. If the change of direction is to be to the left, on the march, the command will be,

Head of column, to the—LEFT!

924. When the chief of the leading squadron will command, *Left, TURN! FORWARD!* each other chief of squadron giving, successively the same command, as his squadron reaches the point where the first turned.

925. The movement will be made on the principles laid down in the School of the Squadron, (Nos. 799 to 802,) with this difference, that the pivot will describe an arc of eighteen paces.

926. The chiefs of squadrons will take care to give their commands promptly, so that the squadrons, in changing direction, may not be *thrown out*.

927. When a close column is to change direction to the right, the command will be given, *head of column, to the right!* the movements will be made on the principles explained for the change of direction to the left.

When the Close Column, on the March, is to Change Direction, so as to Front to the Rear,

The command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *By fours, left (or right) about wheel.* 3. *MARCH!*

928. This movement will be made on the principles laid down in the School of the Squadron, (No. 822.) When a similar movement is to be made *from a halt*, the command will be,

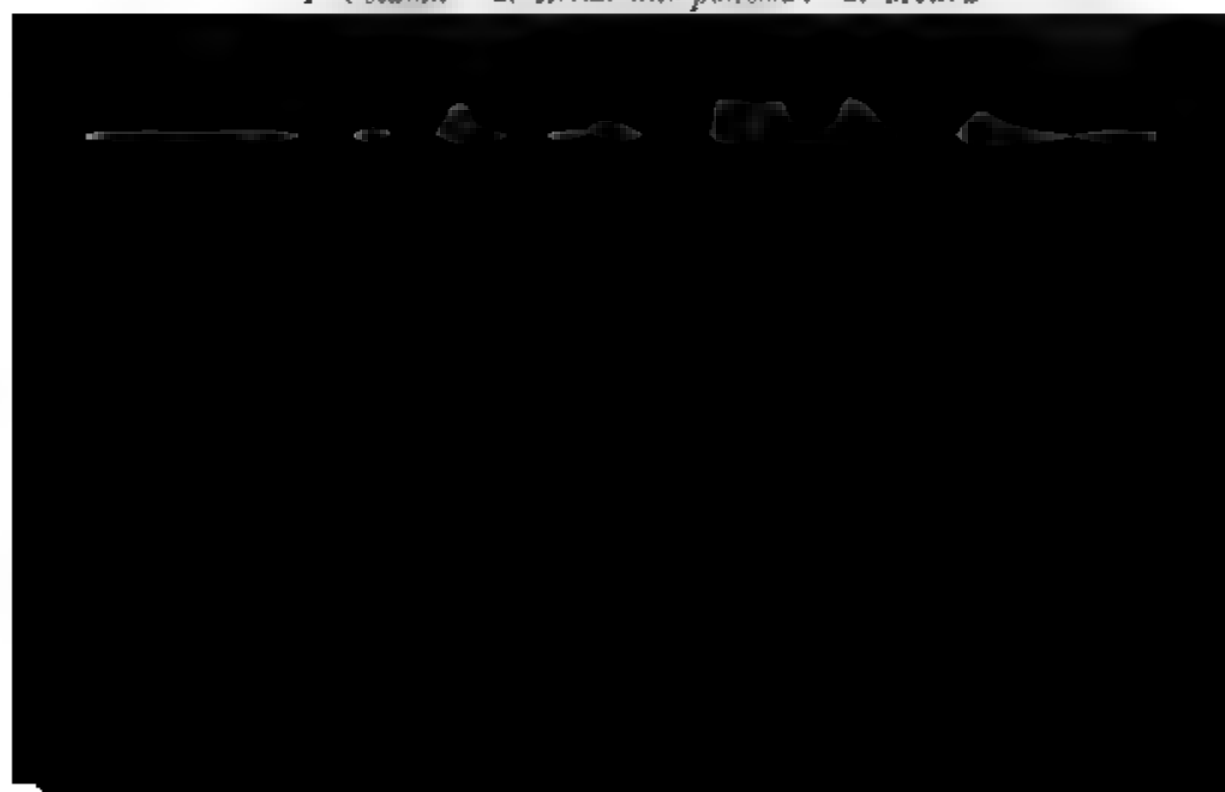
1. *Column.* 2. *Countermarch.* 3. *MARCH!*

929. This movement is executed as explained in the School of the Squadron, (Nos. 856 to 858.)

To Diminish the Front of a Close Column, or to Change it to an Open Column,

The command will be given,

1. *Column* 2. *Break into platoons.* 3. *MARCH!*



ARTICLE THIRD.

Of the Different Modes of Passing from Column into Line.

THIRD MANŒUVRE.

932. These movements will be made as have been explained in the School of the Squadron.

FOURTH MANŒUVRE.

To Form into Line on the Right or Left.

933. When a column of platoons, marching with the right (or left) in front, is to be formed into line, to the side opposite to the guides, in natural order, by a successive movement, and to gain ground towards the direction of its march, or when the head of column coming out of a defile, perceives an enemy upon its right, or left, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *On the right (or left) into line.* 3. *MARCH!*

934. (PLATE 48.) After the field officers have repeated these commands, the movement will be performed as directed in the School of the Squadron, (Nos. 805 to 810,) with this difference, that at the word *march*, the chiefs of squadrons will command, together, *guide right! (or left,)* which will be repeated by all the chiefs of platoons. The chiefs of squadrons will afterwards, and successively, give the command, *on the right (or left) into line!* and will command *MARCH!* when the head of their squadron comes abreast of the point upon which the turn is to be made to arrive upon the line.

Remarks.

935. The adjutant, who is to mark the line, will place the general guides as follows: one of them at the point where the right of the regiment is to rest, facing to the left, in the direction of the prolongation of the line; the other general guide at the point where the left of the first platoon is to rest, facing the first guide. The guides of the left flanks of squadrons will, in like manner, be placed on the point where the left of their squadrons will rest, facing the general guide of the right.

936. When no fixed points have been given, the line will be marked at the preparatory command, in the same manner, at twenty paces on the right flank of the column, prolonging it in the direction to which the column marches.

937. While the general guides are placing themselves on the line, the adjutant will take a position in rear of the first general guide, to correct any irregularities in the direction. This will be his duty whenever lines are to be marked.

938. To form the column into line *on the left*, the same principles will be pursued.

FIFTH MANŒUVRE.

To Form Line to the Front.

939. When, from a halt, it is intended to form line to the front, the column being in platoons, right in front, or when the enemy appears in front of the column, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Front into line.* 3. *MARCH!*

940. (PLATE 49.) After the field officers, and chief of the first squadron have repeated the second command, the chiefs of the other squadrons will command *Column, FORWARD! guide—right! head of column, left half—wheel!* The chief of the first platoon of the first squadron will command, *platoon, forward! guide—right!* the chiefs of the three others, *platoon, left half—wheel!*



has arrived forty paces in rear of the point where its right is to rest; and he will afterwards command, *front into line!* in time to command, *March!* when the third platoon has turned to the right. The squadron will form as directed for the first. The other two squadrons will do the same.

944. If the column be in *march*, the chiefs of the three last squadrons, at the second command, instead of *column forward!* would command, *head of column, left half—wheel, guide right!* the rest would be performed as has been explained, observing only that the first platoon of the column would halt, after marching twenty paces.

945. The general guides will be placed as in the preceding manœuvre, except that the line will be marked in front of the column, instead of on its right flank.

946. If the left were leading, the same principles would be pursued.

947. When a column of platoons, marching with its right in front, is to be formed in line to the front, to face and attack an enemy, and obstacles are presented on the left flank of the column, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *By inversion, front into line.* 3. *March!*

948. This manœuvre will be performed in the manner directed for the formation, *in natural order*, to the front, substituting *right* for *left*.

949. The same movements would be made if the column had the left in front, and the obstacles were presented upon the right flank.

Remarks.

950. When the column has the right in front, and the points to mark the line have been given, a marker will be placed upon the point where the left of the platoon is to rest. The general guide, attached to no squadron, will be placed, facing the first marker, on the point where the right of the first platoon is to rest.

951. The general guides of squadrons will also be placed fronting the first marker, on the point where the right of the fourth platoon of each squadron is to rest.

952. If no points have been given, the line will be marked as

above, at the command of preparation, and twenty paces in advance of the head of the column.

953. If the left were leading, the movements would be made on the same principles.

954. This movement being finished, the platoons will be restored to their natural order before any other movement is made.

SIXTH MANŒUVRE.

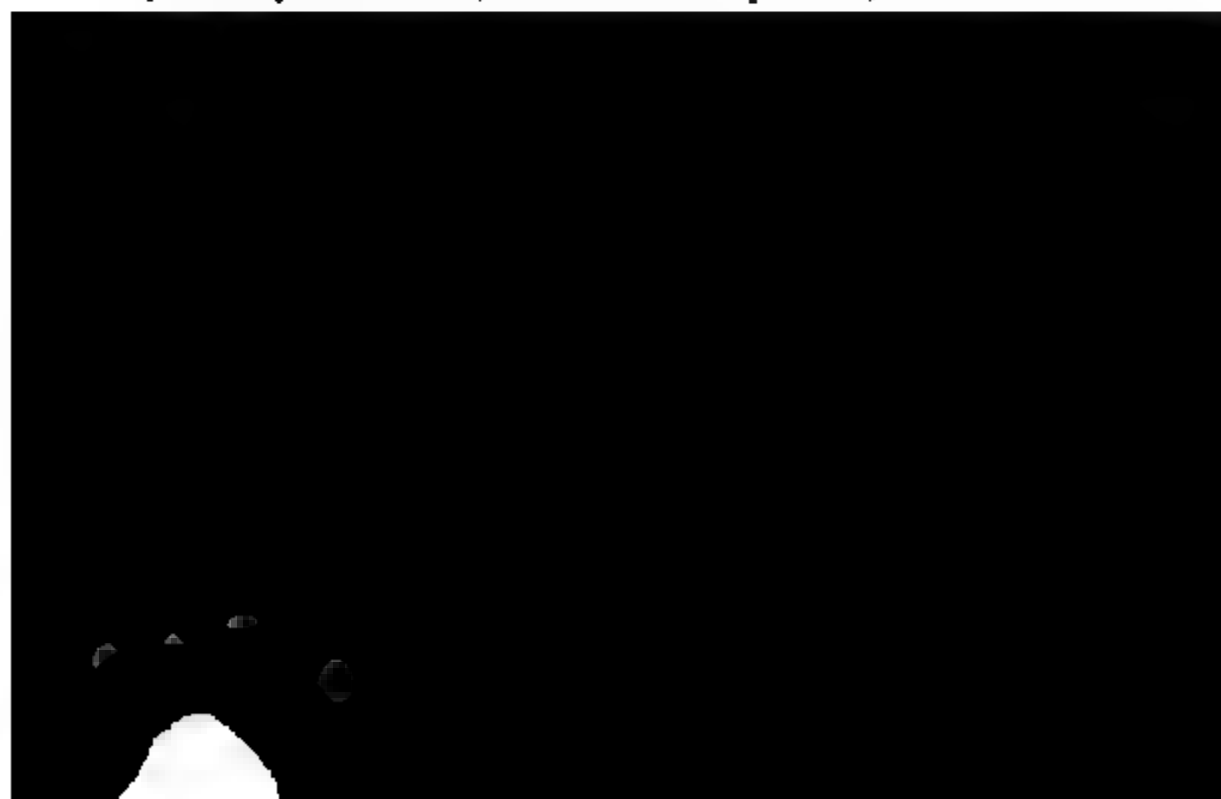
To Form Line Faced to the Rear.

955. In case the enemy should appear in rear of the column, the command would be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Into line, faced to the rear.* 3. *MARCH!*

956. (PLATE 50.) These movements will be performed as directed for the *formation to the front*, (*by inversion*,) in the School of the Squadron, Nos. 819, 820; and, immediately after the formation of each squadron, and when the first platoon of the next squadron has reached the line, each chief of squadron will command, *Platoon, left about—WHEEL!* if the right be leading, (or *Right about—WHEEL!* if the left be leading,) to avoid interfering with the flank of the preceding squadron. The movement being completed, he will command, *HALT! Right—DRESS! FRONT!*

957. In these movements, attention must be paid to passing ten paces beyond the line, to enable the squadrons, after the wheel



SEVENTH MANŒUVRE.

To Form Line upon a Central Platoon.

959. When a column of platoons, marching with the right in front, is found to be too much in advance of the line on which it is to be formed in line, and is consequently forced to take one of the platoons as the base of formation, or when it becomes necessary to establish the right or left of the line upon fixed points, to cover its flanks, preserving the front in the direction of the march, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *On the first platoon, of the first squadron, into line.* 3.

960. (PLATE 51.) After the first command, the chiefs of the squadrons to be formed upon, will command, *Wheel!* the chief of the second squadron will then conform as to what remains to be done, *march*, to the rules for forming to the front in line, n. 936,

At the word *march*, the squadrons will execute their several movements; the chiefs of the squadrons, the platoons of which were wheeled about to the right, will command, *Forward!* and immediately after will give the commands necessary for forming line to the rear, as explained in the sixth manœuvre.

961. The chief of the squadron to be formed on the right of that designated for the base, will take care to direct the head of his squadron sufficiently to the left, so as to recover his interval when he comes again into line.

Remarks.

962. When the column has the right in front, and the points have been designated for marking the line, the general guide of the right places himself facing to the left, upon the point where the right of the platoon which serves as the base of formation is to rest; the other general guide places himself at the point where the left of that platoon is to rest facing the first general guide.

963. The left flank guides of squadrons forming to the front will place themselves at the point where the left of their squadron is to rest, fronting the general guide of the right of the line. The right flank guide of the first squadron, (or any others,) to form line to the rear, will place themselves at the point where the right of their squadron is to rest, (after the platoons have wheeled about to the right,) and will face to the left.

964. When no points have been designated, the line will be marked at the preparatory command, in the same manner, twenty paces in front of the platoon of formation.

965. The adjutant and sergeant major, during the operation of marking the line, will place themselves, the first behind the general guide who marks the point for the left of the regiment, and the second behind him who marks the point of the right, in order to ensure the correctness of the line. Those officers will perform the same duties in all central movements.

966. If the left of the column were in front, the same principles would be observed.

967. If this manœuvre were to be performed to front, in a direction opposite to the march, in case of an attack upon the rear, the command would be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *On the fourth platoon of the third, (or any other) squadron, into line faced to the rear.* 3. *MARCH!*

968. (PLATE 52.) After the second command has been repeated by the field officers, the chiefs of the squadrons in front of the



EIGHTH MANŒUVRE.

Formation in Line by Two Movements.

970. When a column of platoons, marching right in front, has commenced a change of direction to the left, and the enemy appears in rear of the column, it will be halted, and the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Left into line wheel.* 3. *Two (or three) rear squadrons into line faced to the rear.* 4. *MARCH!*

971. (PLATE 53.) After the field officers have repeated the second and third commands, the chiefs of squadrons which have changed direction will command, *left into line, wheel!* and the others *into line faced to the rear!* At the word *march*, the movements will be made as directed in the School of the Squadron for the *left into line*, Nos. 779, 780, and in the sixth manœuvre, No. 936, for *facing to the rear in line*.

972. The chief of the squadron first to make the movement of facing to the rear, will take care to cause his first platoon to oblique to the right so as to give his squadron, after wheeling about to the left by platoons, its prescribed interval of ten paces.

973. (PLATE 54.) If a part of the column had changed direction to the right, in the direction to which the column had been marching before the change, the column would be halted, and the command given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Left into line, wheel.* 3. *Rear squadrons front into line.* 4. *MARCH!*

974. These movements will be made as directed in the School of the Squadron, Nos. 779, 780, for the movement of *left into line*, and for that of *front into line*, as directed in the fifth manœuvre, No. 940, &c.

975. In both cases the same principles will be observed when the left is in front.

NINTH MANŒUVRE.

Deployment of a Close Column, to the Front or Rear.

976. When a close column, right in front, is to deploy to present a front to the enemy, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *Deploy on—squadron.* 3. *MARCH!*

977. (PLATE 55.) After the field officers have repeated the second command, the chiefs of the squadrons in front of the named squadron will command, *four, right wheel!* the chiefs of those in rear of that squadron, *four, left wheel!* The chief of the named squadron will command, *squadron, forward! guide right!*

978. At the word *march*, repeated by all the field officers and chiefs of squadrons, the movements will be executed; and, when nearly finished, the chiefs of squadrons, which had wheeled to the right by fours, will command *FORWARD! guide left!* and those who had wheeled to the left by fours, *FORWARD! guide right!*

979. Each chief will place himself at the head of his squadron; and, when opposite the ground on which the left of the front squadrons, and the right of the rear ones, are to rest, they will halt, their squadrons marching past them; the former giving the command, *four, left wheel!* and the latter, *four, right wheel!* in time to give *MARCH!* when the last rank of their squadron comes abreast of them. They will afterwards give the command, *FOR-*



self at the point where the right of the base squadron is to rest, and will face to the left; the left flank guide of that squadron, placing himself at the point where its left is to rest, and facing to the right. The flank guides of squadrons, in rear of the base squadron, will place themselves at the point where the left of their squadrons is to rest, and will face to the right; the flank guides of the front squadrons will place themselves at the point where the right of their squadrons is to rest, and will face to the left.

983. If no points have been given, the line will be marked in the same manner, at the preparatory command, twenty paces in advance of the leading squadron.

984. If the deployment is to be made upon one of the flank squadrons of the regiment, the line will be marked in such a manner as that the squadron guides will all face towards the general guide, posted to mark the point where the right or left of the regiment is to rest: in this case the other general guide, attached to no squadron, will not be employed.

985. If the column had its left in front, the same rules would be observed.

986. Under certain circumstances the close column may be deployed, without a halt, on the leading squadron; which will be performed by the movements prescribed for the squadrons in rear of that serving as the base, but taking care to double their pace, and forming each a partial column to direct themselves diagonally on the point where they are to come into line; when arrived there, they will take the pace of the first squadron, and dress to that side!

TENTH MANŒUVRE.

To Deploy a Close Column upon one of its Flanks.

987. When a close column, marching with the right in front, is to form line to face an enemy appearing upon its left flank, the command will be given,

1. *Column.* 2. *On rear squadron left into line.* 3. *MARCH!*

988. (PLATE 56.) After the field officers have repeated the second command, the chief of the last squadron will command, *squadron* and

HALT! at the word *march*: he will then command, *squadron, left wheel*, and **MARCH!** as soon as the squadron before him has cleared the ground for his wheel: the wheel being nearly finished, he will command, **FORWARD!** and **HALT!** when within six paces of the line, and afterwards **LEFT DRESS!**

989. The next squadron from the rear one will give in time, *squadron* and **HALT!** when he finds the squadron in his rear has sufficient ground for its wheel to the left, and at the prescribed interval: he will afterwards bring his squadron upon the line by the movements prescribed for the last squadron, commanding, **HALT!** when abreast of the file closers, and afterwards *Left—Dress!* The other squadrons will act in like manner.

989. If the close column, marching with the left in front, is to be formed in line on its right flank, the command would be,

1. *Column.* 2. *On rear squadron, right into line.* 3. **MARCH!**

990. This manœuvre will be executed on the principles laid down for forming to the left from the rear of the column, but by contrary movements.

991. If, on the contrary, it should be required to form to the left the movements would be the same as in forming from the rear of the column to the left in line, adding, only, to the command, *by inversion.*

ARTICLE FOURTH.



Movement of the First Line.

994. The commandant, to make his retrograde movement, will command,

1. *First line.* 2. *To the rear, pass the line.* 3. *March!*

995. (PLATE 57.) After the field officers have repeated the second command, the two chiefs of squadrons will command, *platoons, left wheel!* and afterwards, *head of column, to the left!*

996. At the word *march*, the squadrons will make their movement, their chiefs taking care to command, *Forward! guide right!* as soon as the platoons have nearly finished their wheels. Immediately after the word *forward*, the chief of the fourth platoon of each squadron will take care to turn his platoon to the left. Each squadron forming thus a partial column, will be directed towards the intervals between the squadrons of the second line, the head of the first squadron marching directly towards the interval between the first and second squadrons of the second line, and the other in like manner. When the commander of the line observes the heads of squadrons to be within forty paces of the ground on which it is to form again in line, he will command, *into line, faced to the rear*, and *March!* when within fifteen paces of it. Each squadron will make this movement, and the commander of the line will take care to resume his front, by *wheeling the platoons to the left about*, contrary to what is prescribed in the School of the Squadron, for the purpose of placing the squadrons correctly behind those of the line in front.

997. During this movement, the sergeants on flanks of squadrons will be in the rank of file closers, and will not take their places in line till each squadron has made its wheel about by platoons to the left.

998. The movement of this line may be made by wheeling the platoons *to the right*: in this case the head of column of the first squadron would pass to the right of the second line, and that of the second in the interval between the first and second squadrons of the second line: the others, in like manner, through the next intervals: then the squadrons, after forming to the rear, would resume their natural order, by wheeling about their platoons *to the right*, for the reason given above.

Movement of the Second Line.

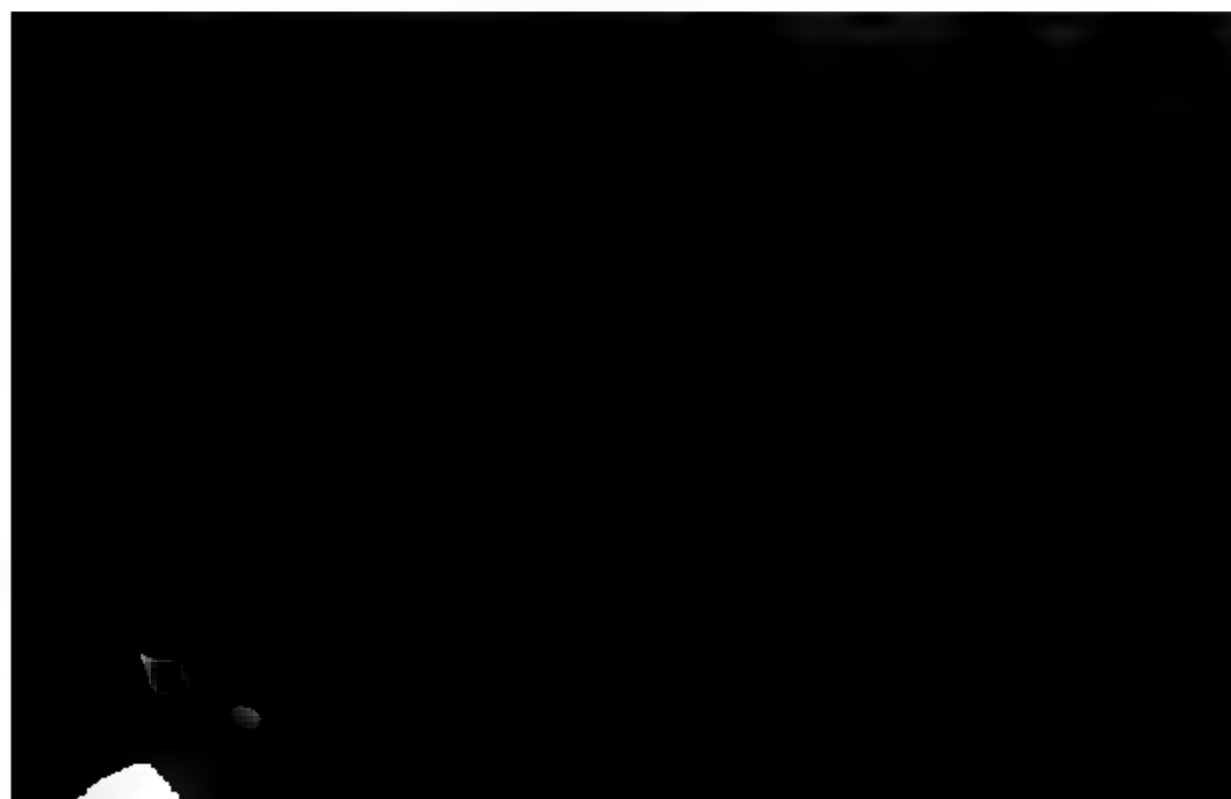
Its chief will command,

1. *Second line.* 2. *To the front, pass the line.* 3. *Regulate by the right squadron.* 4. *Squadrons, forward.* 5. *MARCH!*

999. After the field officers have repeated the second, third, and fourth commands, the chiefs of squadrons will command, *squadron, forward, guide right!* when the sergeant on the right of the line will advance as directed for the march in line: the sergeants on the flanks of squadrons will move in rear of the first and fourth platoons, to give more space to the retreating column. At the word *march*, the line will be put in motion: as soon as it has passed the first, the flank sergeants will resume their places in line, and when near the halting point, it will perform what is directed for the march in line, No. 1062, &c. The commander of the second line will take care to regulate the commencement of his march, and his pace, so that his line may be ready to take the place of the first at the moment when the last platoons of the squadron columns of the first line make their wheels to the left.

Remarks.

1000. If it were only intended to withdraw the first line, that line would retire as above directed, and the second would be ordered by the commander-in-chief to stand fast.



command, the chiefs of squadrons will command, *platoons, right wheel!* and afterwards, *head of column to the left!* At the word *march*, the squadrons will execute their movements; their chiefs taking care to command, *FORWARD! guide left!* when the platoons have nearly completed their wheels. After the word *forward*, the chief of the first platoon of each squadron will be likewise attentive to turning his platoon to the left. Each squadron forming thus a partial column will be directed towards the intervals between the squadrons of the first line; the head of the first squadron, moving directly forward, will pass to the right of the first squadron of the first line; the head of the second squadron passing through the interval between the first and second squadrons; and so as to the rest.

1004. The chiefs of the leading platoons of each squadron, after the heads of their columns have passed the first line, will oblique to the left, to the extent of the front of their platoon, to avoid masking the intervals of the first line.

1005. When the second line is to be formed again, its commander will order, *front into line!* at this command the chiefs of squadrons will order, *form squadron, trot, MARCH!* The sergeants of the flanks of squadrons will place themselves during the passage, as in the last manœuvre.

1006. The line will not halt, after its formation, till ordered by the commander.

Remarks.

1007. The above movements are calculated for platoons of twelve files; if the platoons were of sixteen files, sections of eight would be formed.

TWELFTH MANŒUVRE.

Chequered Retreat from a Halt.

1008. When a regiment on a plain is to retire, and the enemy is disposed to disturb it along its whole front, it becomes necessary to employ a part of the regiment to cover the retreat of the other part. The colonel will then command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Retreat by alternate divisions.*

1009. (PLATE 58.) After these commands, the lieutenant colonel (designated by the colonel to command the first line,) will command, *first divisions, forward, guide right, MARCH!* after moving some paces forward, they will be halted by the lieutenant colonel.

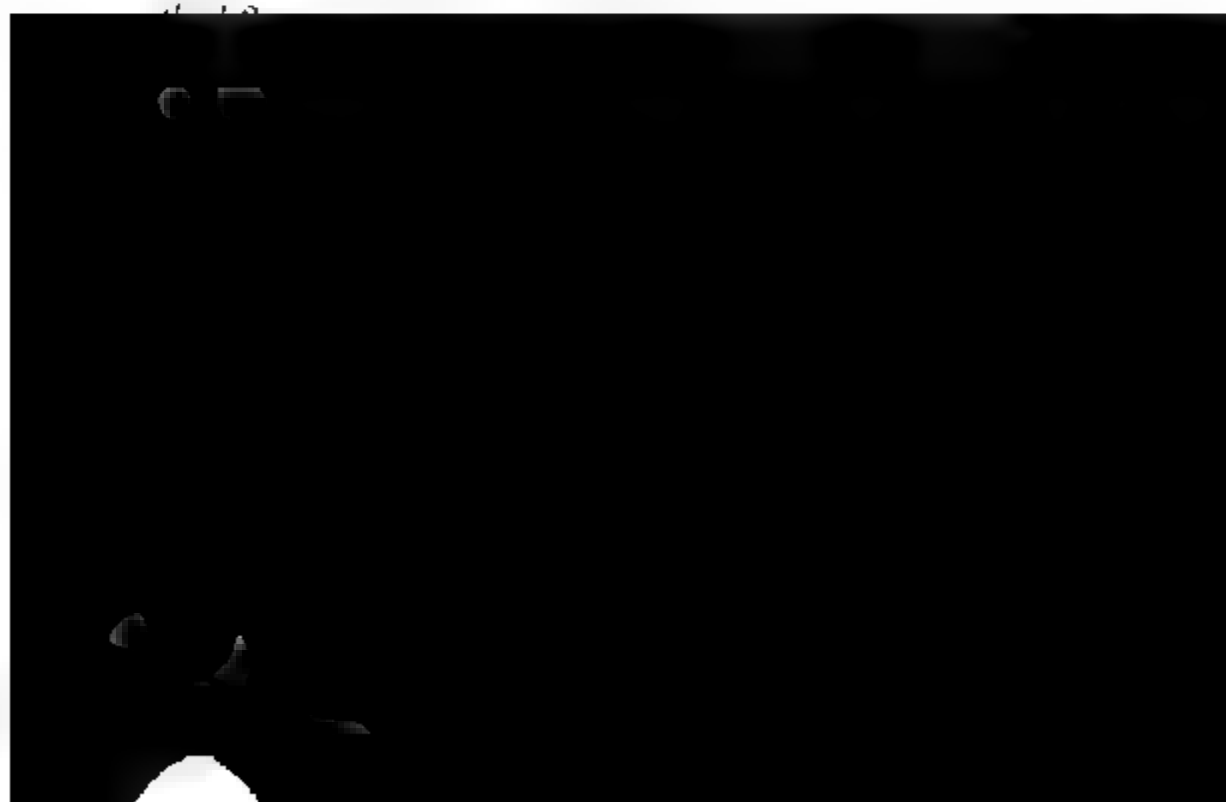
1010. As soon as the first line is in motion, the major commanding the second line will command, *second divisions, by platoons, left about wheel, MARCH!* the right division of the squadron will be commanded by the chief of squadron, and left by the second captain from the rank of file closers.

1011. The commander of the line, when the platoons have nearly completed their wheel about to the left, will command, *FORWARD! guide right!* and will lead it two hundred paces to the rear, making it afterwards resume its front by *Platoons, left about—wheel, MARCH! HALT! Right—DRESS!*

1012. The commander of the first line, when he sees the second commencing its movement, of wheeling to its proper front, will order, *First line, by platoons, right about wheel, MARCH! FORWARD! guide left!* which commands will be repeated by each commandant of the divisions of that line; who will also lead them two hundred paces to the rear of the second line, bringing them again about by, *Platoons right about wheel, MARCH!* and then *HALT! Right—DRESS!*

1013. A line, through the intervals of which another has passed, will advance a few paces.

1014. During the whole time of the retreat, the platoons of the first line, will wheel about *to the right*, and those of the second to



ARTICLE FIFTH.

Changes of Front.

THIRTEENTH MANŒUVRE.

Change of Front upon the Wings, and upon the Centre.

1018. If the movements of the enemy should make it necessary to advance the left wing of the line, more or less obliquely, after the regulating squadron, and general guides have been placed upon the new line, the colonel will command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Change front, forward on first squadron.*
3. *Squadrons, forward—guide right.* 4. *March!*

1019. (PLATE 59.) The field officers and chiefs of squadrons, will repeat the third command; and at the word *march*, given by the colonel, the squadrons will move on, directly to their front: each chief, when he finds the right of his squadron opposite to, and in the direction on which it is to rest, allowing for the prescribed interval, will command, *squadron right half wheel!* and when the half wheel is completed, *FORWARD!* and *HALT! Right—Dress!* when six paces from the line.

Remarks.

1020. If, in the change of front, the left is to be thrown forward, after the points have been given, a general guide will be placed at the point where the right of the first squadron is to rest, and will face to the left. The flank guides of squadrons will place themselves at the points where the left of their squadrons will rest, and will face the general guide: the other general guide will not be placed.

1021. If the points have not been designated for the new formation, the line will be marked, at the preparatory command, in such a manner as that after the change, the regiment will have made quarter wheel to the right, or more, if the colonel should order it.

1022. If, in the change of front, the right is to be thrown forward, similar means, reversed, will be used in marking the line.

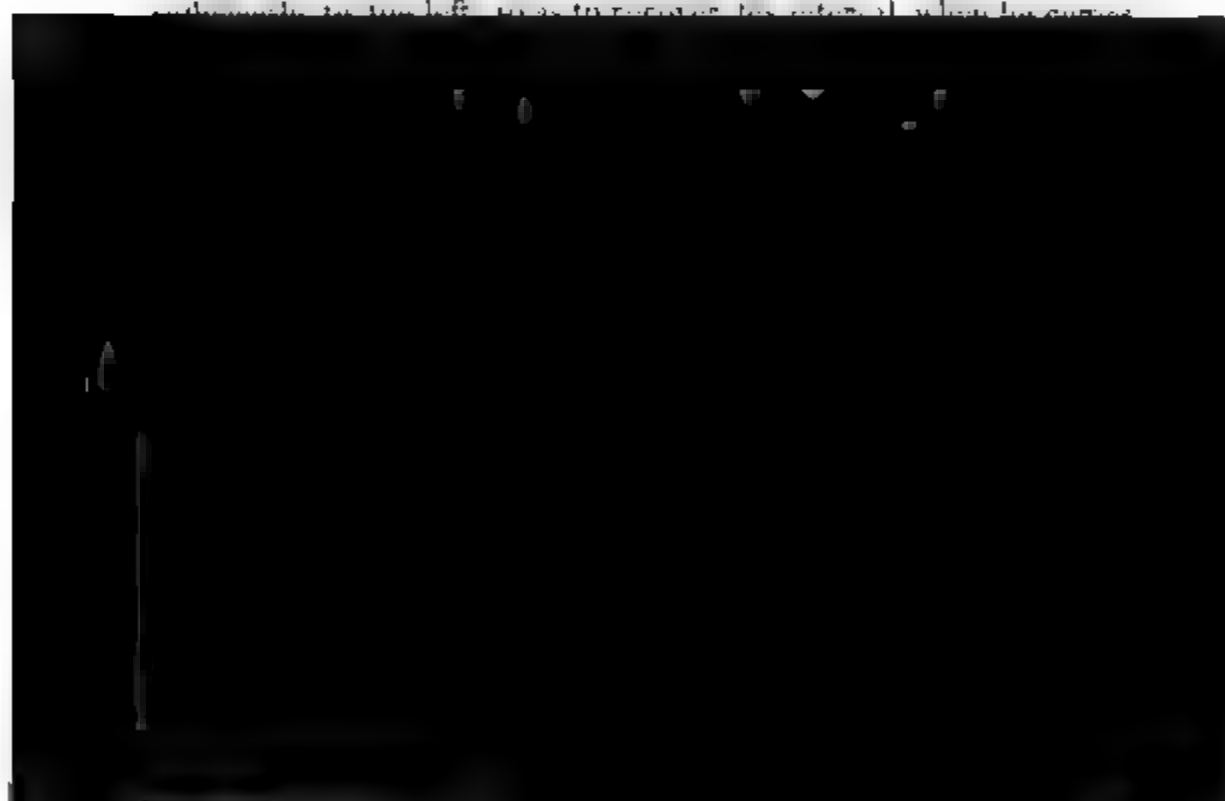
1023. If the change is to be made on a central platoon, to face an enemy appearing on one of the flanks of the regiment, or to throw the wings upon fixed points, for the purpose of covering them, the command would be given,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Change front on the first platoon of the second (third, or fourth) squadron, left wing forward.* 3 *MARCH!*

1024. (PLATE 60.) At the second command, the chiefs of squadrons will command, *platoons, right—wheel!* At the word *march*, the squadrons will make their movements. The chiefs of squadrons on the left of the named platoon, will take care to command, *FORWARD!* as soon as the platoons have nearly completed their wheels to the right, and will then form to the front in line, as has been prescribed; it being understood that all the squadrons will form their partial columns, except the squadron to which the named platoon belongs, which will make its formation afterwards.

1025. The chiefs of squadrons on the right of the named platoon, will take care to command, *platoons, right about wheel!* in time to give the word *MARCH!* at the moment the first wheel to the right is about being completed, and without halting, at the completion of the wheel about to the right, they will command *forward!* and will afterwards form line to the rear as prescribed; it being also understood that the squadrons will each form their partial column.

1026. The chief of the squadron to form on the right of the named platoon, will take care to direct the head of his squadron



ARTICLE SIXTH.

Passage of Defiles.

FOURTEENTH MANŒUVRE.

Passage of a Defile to the Front from Line.

1029. If a regiment is marching in line, in pursuit of a retreating enemy, or it is intended to gain a position in his presence, and, in either case, a defile should be presented in front of the centre, the colonel would command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *On fourth platoon of second squadron, and first of third, to the front, pass the defile.* 3. *March!* 4. *Forward!*

1030. (PLATE 61.) After the field officers have repeated the second command, the chiefs of the squadrons of the right will command, *platoons, left wheel!* the chief of the second taking care to direct his fourth platoon to move forward: the chiefs of the squadrons of the left will command, *platoons, right wheel!* the chief of the third squadron also directing his first platoon to move forward.

1031. At the word *march*, the several movements will be executed; when the wheels are nearly finished the colonel will command, *forward!* which command will also be repeated by all the field officers, chiefs of squadrons and of platoons.

1032. The column will pass the defile on the front of a division, (at platoon distance.)

1033. The chief of the fourth platoon of the second squadron, and the chief of the first platoon of the third squadron, will, in moving forward, oblique, the first to the left, the second to the right, in order to unite: the other chiefs of platoons of the squadrons of the right, when on the ground where the third platoon of the second squadron is to turn to the right, immediately after the command *forward!* will command, *Right—Turn! Forward!* and will oblique a little to the left to join the platoons of the squadrons of the left who are approaching them, and who will *turn* to the *left* on the same ground with the second platoon of the third squadron; the chiefs of

platoons of the left will also take care to oblique a little to the right, to join those of the right who are approaching them.

1034. All the chiefs of platoons will take care so to regulate their march, as to arrive together on the ground where they are to turn, those of the right to the right, and those of the left to the left. At the end of the defile the colonel will form the squadrons at the head of the column, to the front into line, as soon as the ground will permit: the commands, as well as the movements to be performed, will be the same for the second squadron as in forming to the front in line, left in front; and for the third, the same as in forming to the front in line, right in front; observing however that the chief of the fourth platoon of the second squadron, and of the first platoon of the third squadron, will oblique to the right and left, so as to regain the intervals between their squadrons.

1035. The chiefs of the first and fourth squadrons will take care to command, the former, *head of column right wheel!* and the latter, *head of column left wheel!* and to move upon the line of squadrons already formed, where they will be established by the commands, *on the left into line!* for the squadron of the right, and, *on the right into line!* for that of the left.

1036. If the defile should be opposite to any other part of the regiment, the command would indicate the platoons which would head the column, and the movement would be made upon the same principles: in this case one of the wings being the most considerable in strength, its last platoons would pass the defile singly.



left will place themselves on the point where the left of their squadron is to rest, and will face to the right.

1039. If no points have been given, the line will be marked in the same manner, forty paces in advance of the defile.

1040. If the defile had been passed by the platoons of the centre of a squadron, the two general guides will be so placed as to mark the formation of the two platoons forming the head of the column.

FIFTEENTH MANŒUVRE.

Passage of a Defile to the Rear, from Line.

1041. When a regiment, pursued by an enemy, meets in its retreat a defile in rear of its centre, it will be passed by successive movements, commencing by its flank platoons, in order to mark its movement, and to leave a part of its force presenting a front to the enemy.

To pass a defile, under these circumstances, the colonel would command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *By the flank platoons, in rear of the centre, pass the defile.* 3. *MARCH!*

1042. (PLATE 62.) After the field officers have repeated the second command, the chiefs of the squadrons of the right will command, *platoons, break to the rear by the right, to march to the left!* and the chiefs of the squadrons of the left, *platoons, break to the rear by the left, to march to the right!*

1043. At the word *march*, repeated only by the chiefs of the first and fourth squadrons, the two platoons of the flanks will begin their movements by wheeling about, the first to the right, the second to the left: they will move ten paces to the rear, and turn to the right and left inwards, marching towards each other in a direction parallel to the line of the regiment until opposite to the defile, when the right platoon will turn to the left, and the left platoon to the right, and unite to enter the defile, and pass it on the front of a division: the other platoons will do the same. The chiefs of the other two squadrons will give the word *march*, conforming to what has been prescribed, No. 812, &c. The fourth platoon of the second squadron, and the first of the third, will observe at the word *march*, to

oblique to each other to unite and conceal the movement, and the defile, until the line is formed beyond it; when those platoons will wheel to the *left about by fours*, and clear the defile at a gallop; passing fifteen paces beyond the ground on which they are to form in line, the more easily to take their intervals by obliquing to the right and left, after wheeling about a second time to the left.

1044. When the platoons have passed the defile one or two hundred yards, the chiefs of the platoons of squadrons of the right will give the command *Left—TURN!* and those of the left, *Right—TURN!* The colonel will remain at the rear of the column to command at the proper time, *column* and *HALT!* when the last platoons, after passing the defile, have made their *right* and *left turns*, and have left the ground necessary for the formation of the two platoons that covered the defile, he will command, *Left and right into line—MARCH!* which movement will be executed as prescribed in Nos. 779 to 786. During these movements the platoons that cover the defile may, if necessary, detach a few skirmishers to the front.

1045. If the defile would not admit of more than the front of a platoon, the squadrons would pass successively, the first squadron commencing the movement.

1046. After the preparatory command, the chief of the fourth squadron would be careful not to give the word *march*, until the last platoon of the first squadron had executed its first movement of wheeling to the right about by platoons: and equal care would be taken by the chief of the second squadron not to command

ARTICLE XXV. —

Of the March by Echelons.

SIXTEENTH MANŒUVRE.

To March by Echelons, Advancing and Retiring.

1049. When a regiment is advancing in line, and it becomes expedient to refuse one of its wings, or, if it should be desirable, charging from the entire formation, to attack by squadrons, successively, the colonel would command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Echelons, by squadrons, at division distance, forward by the right.* 3. *March!*

1050. (PLATE 63.) After the field officers have repeated the second command, the chiefs of squadrons will command, *Squadron, forward! guide right!* at the word *march*, the first squadron will be put in motion; the chief of the second squadron will take care not to give the word *march*, till the first has advanced to the extent of the front of a division; and the other squadrons will do the same.

1051. During this march, the guide will be to the right; and the sergeants on the right of each squadron will be attentive not to lessen the intervals which ought to exist between the squadrons.

1052. If the movement were to be by echelons by the left, the same principles would be observed.

1053. If the colonel should desire to give the squadrons greater distance, he would indicate it in his command.

1054. If a retrograde movement is to be made by echelons, he would command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Echelons, by squadron, at division distance.* 3. *Retire by the right, (or left.)* 4. *MARCH!*

1055. (PLATE 64.) At the word *march*, the squadron at the head will wheel to the right about by platoons, to march to the rear: the second squadron will do the same, when the first has gained the distance prescribed; and the others successively doing the same except the last on the left, which will stand fast: when the third squadron has reached its proper distance from the fourth, all the

squadrons will be halted, and fronted by wheeling the platoons about again to the left.

1056. To continue the retreat, the same manœuvre will be repeated by the left, the squadrons wheeling to the *left about by platoons*; and alternately by the right and left as often as may be necessary to re-sume afterwards the formation of the line, according to circumstances, and on either squadron that may be designated.

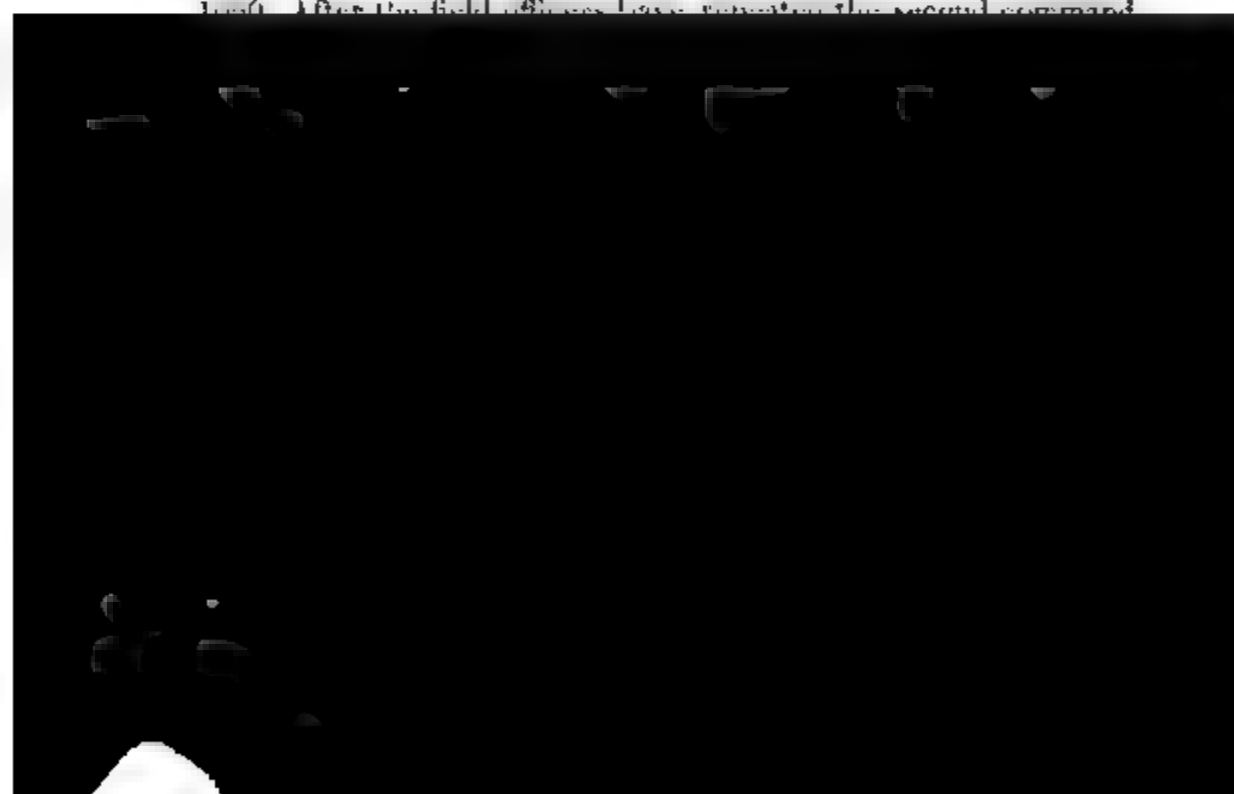
1057. When a regiment has retreated sufficiently, and the colonel wishes to form it again in line, he will command, *Squadrons into line!* and the signal will be sounded, when the chiefs of squadrons, except the chief of the squadron the most advanced on the side from which the movement was commenced, will command, *Squadron, forward! trot—MARCH!* and when abreast of the named squadron on which line is to be formed, they will command, *Squadron, HALT! Right (or left)—DRESS!*

1058. One or more platoons may be detached, in this manœuvre, as skirmishers to cover the retreat.

1059. If the regiment when in echelons, the right in front, should be attacked upon one of its flanks, the colonel, without weakening too much his front, would direct one or more squadrons, according to the force of the enemy, to relieve the flank attacked. If, therefore, being in echelons by the right, he was to form line obliquely to the left, he would command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *By Squadrons, left half wheel into line.* 3. *MARCH!*

1060. After the field officer has repeated the second command



ARTICLE EIGHTH.

Of the March in Line.

SEVENTEENTH MANŒUVRE.

To March in Line.

1062. When a regiment is to advance in line, after the colonel has indicated the point upon which the squadron designated as the regulating squadron, is to direct its march, he will command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Regulate by—squadron.* 3. *Squadrons, forward.*
4. *MARCH!*

1063. After the second and third commands have been repeated by the field officers, the adjutant, proceeding to the named squadron, will direct the sergeant on the right of that squadron to move forward directly on the alignment of the officers, or if the fourth squadron be the named squadron, the sergeant on the left of that squadron: he will designate to him the point on which he is to march, and will make him take intermediate points, for want of which he will maintain the line of direction by the general guides; who, fronting the line, will be posted at fifty paces distance from each other, retiring as the line advances towards them, and taking up new positions in the same direction.

1064. The flank sergeant will be replaced by the sergeant file closers of the first or fourth platoon, and the adjutant will also make known to the latter, the point on which the line is to march: this sergeant will be particularly charged with the direction of the march, and will have the sergeant whom he replaced in front of him as an intermediate point; he will correct any deviations of the sergeants from the given point.

1065. When the adjutant who is charged with the duty of maintaining the guide in the direction of the march, shall, from the rear, have ascertained the proper direction, when the correctness of the points have been ascertained by the colonel, or a field officer, and the chiefs of squadrons have ordered the dressing towards the named squadron, the word *march* will be given.

1066. It will be the duty of the sergeant on the line of officers, and who is to serve as the base of the march, to move off moderately, until the whole line is in movement; he will then march at an uniform pace, taking new intermediate points as the line advances.

1067. The alignment in a great degree depending on that of the officers in front of squadrons, they are not to occupy themselves with the dressing of the men who are following them, but are to maintain themselves constantly on the base of the alignment, without regarding other officers who may depart from it.

1068. The squadrons will move for the first sixty or eighty paces at a moderate pace, in order that the colonel may judge whether the point of direction is perpendicular to the front of the line, and that he may rectify it, if necessary, by the following means:

1069. If the colonel perceive that the intervals are diminishing, he will be certain that the point is too much to the left, and will order the adjutant to give another point further to the right to the sergeant on the line of officers; which the adjutant will also indicate to the sergeant who replaced him on the right of the squadron.

1070. If, on the contrary, the intervals increase, he will change the point towards the left, upon the same principles.

1071. When the direction is thus rectified, the regulating guide will be required quickly to take new intermediate points.

1072. If the interval towards the dressing side is diminished sensibly, and that of the opposite side is increased in proportion, the chief of the squadron will examine attentively whether the front of his own squadron, and of the squadrons on either side, is not too much to the left or right of the point of direction.

in No. 843, &c.) and will bring it again into line, when space should be made for it.

1076. In the trot, or gallop, if one or more squadrons should be in advance of the general alignment, their chief would order their pace to be slackened; if, on the contrary, they should be too much in rear, they would regain their ground together. These movements ought to be made gradually, and without hurry; as such partial irregularities ought not to affect the good order of the line.

1077. If an obstacle should be presented in front of a platoon or division, the movements would be made which are explained in the School of the Squadron for the passage of obstacles, No. 843, &c.

1078. If the obstacle were presented before the whole front of a squadron, its chief would place it behind the squadron to his right or left, according to circumstances, by wheeling by platoons to the right or left, at a trot, and, when the obstacle is passed, bringing it into line by the contrary movement.

1079. The accuracy of the march in line depends on the attention of the field officers, officers in front, and adjutants.

1080. In all other particulars respecting the march in line, the instructions in the School of the Squadron, No. 668, &c. will be observed.

When a regiment marching in line is to be halted, the colonel will command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *HALT!* 3. *Right—Dress.* 4. *Front!*

1081. (PLATE 65.) At the word *halt*, the general guides will briskly place themselves so as to serve as the base of alignment as near as possible to the front, but not so as to be masked by the officers' horses; the guide at the right point facing to the left, and the left guides of squadrons facing to the right. The adjutant will rectify them, observing that the prolongation of the line does not pass in rear of any of the squadrons, and also that it does not oblige them to advance too much.

1082. At the command *right dress!* given by the colonel when the line is marked, the squadrons will move forward into the alignment, so that the front rank of each squadron may have their horses' heads on a line with the boot of the general guides: the officers

must be exact in their distance of one pace from the front rank, so as not to mask the guides, and to be correctly dressed upon each other.

1083. As soon as the alignment is completed, the word *front* will be given; when the guides will retire.

1084. When, marching in line, it is intended to gain ground to the front and to a flank, the colonel will command,

1. *Regiment.* 2. *By platoons—right (or left) half wheel.* 3. *MARCH!*

1085. These movements will be performed according to the directions in the School of the Squadron, No. 850, &c.

1086. When the colonel has brought the right of his regiment on a line with the point where he wishes it to take a forward direction, he will give the command accordingly, indicating the point upon which he wishes to lead it.

1087. In this oblique march, the sergeant on the right of the first platoon of each squadron, ought to take his direction a little towards the left of the sergeant of the left of the fourth platoon of the squadron preceding him.

1088. If the left squadron has served as the base of the alignment, the point of direction, after the oblique march, would be given by the left, in the manner just prescribed for the opposite direction where the named squadron was on the right.

1089. When on the march, oblique or perpendicular, changes of direction are to be made upon one of the flanks, the directions will be given by the colonel, for the first squadron, in the following manner:



line, in a small degree; but these means of instruction will only be employed when the regiment is manœuvring singly.

1092. The colonel will not increase the pace of his regiment, until the moment when its movements are perfectly united and regular; and, when the least disorder occurs, he will put it into a walk, until it has been well practised in the principles herein established.

ARTICLE NINTH.

Of the Charge.

EIGHTEENTH MANŒUVRE.

Of the Different Modes of Charging.

1093. The charge is not, properly speaking, a manœuvre; it is a direct march, but more lively and impetuous, of which the enemy is the point of direction, and his defeat the object. In the outset, then, it is regulated on the principles of the direct march, but in proportion to the approach towards the enemy it takes the character of an attack.

There may be admitted to be three modes of charging:

1094. In a line, parallel or oblique to the front of the enemy; by echelons; and in column.

1095. When the colonel finds his regiment at such a distance from the enemy as to enable him to make a charge, (neither too far, so as to *blow* his horses, and to deprive them of the strength of the shock, nor too near, so as to prevent the necessary impulse,) he will command,

1. *Regiment—Prepare to Charge.* 2. *Draw—SWORDS!* 3. *Trot.*
4. *MARCH!*

1096. At the word *march*, the regiment will break into a trot. After one hundred and fifty paces, the colonel will command, *gallop!* and, after this command has been repeated by the field officers and chiefs of squadrons, he will give the word, *MARCH!* which will be repeated in like manner. After passing about one hundred paces at a gallop, the colonel will cause *the charge* to be sounded by all

the trumpets; at which signal the gallop will be increased in speed; the men will rise in their stirrups, lowering their bridle heads, but preserving the command of their horses, as well as their dressing, and will dash upon the enemy; the front rank, with the sword pointed forward, immediately before the shock, and the rear rank, with the weapon over the head, as is shown in the School of the Trooper, Nos. 530, 531.

1097. The enemy being routed, the colonel will cause *the rally* to be sounded; when each man will *pull up*, and join his standard. but, as it is important not to give the enemy time to rally, the flank platoons of each squadron, or some others, will be detached to pursue him; and to recall them, the same means will be observed as are directed for skirmishers Nos. 872 to 874.

1098. Commandants of corps and squadrons in battle, ought never to lose sight of the importance of maintaining their commands together, and in case of need, of rallying them as quickly as possible, to be always ready to present a front to the enemy, or to attack any new lines that may be presented.

1099. There will be always a real advantage in forestalling the enemy's attack, or in meeting him so briskly as to anticipate him in the charge.

1100. Charges ought to be made with vigor and impetuosity: their success is generally in proportion to their velocity.

1101. At the signal for the charge, officers in front of the line will cause the file in rear of them to fall back, so as to admit the



1. *Regiment*—Trot! 2. *Walk*. 3. *Halt*!

1105. All the officers will repeat these commands.

1106. At the first command, the men will carry their swords, and they will slacken their paces to the trot and walk, with as much uniformity as possible, sloping swords at the latter pace.

1107. When halted, the colonel will command, *Dress!* and then, *Post!*

1108. The alignment will be made on the squadron, or part of a squadron, furthest in advance, in order not to be obliged to fall back in dressing.

1109. In these exercises, the charges ought to be rapid, but short; in terminating them, the above prescribed gradation will be pursued, to avoid too sudden checks, which often injure the horses, and are not practised in real charges.

1110. The oblique charge will be made on the same principles as the charge in parallel order; it will be preferred when the enemy's line is the most extensive, as depriving him of the advantage of that circumstance, by refusing a wing, or even by outflanking his own.

1111. The charge by echelons is to be preferred, when it is desirable that the strength of the regiment should be kept in reserve, bringing only a part of it in contact with the enemy, or when making parallel and successive attacks.

Of the Charge against a Line of Infantry.

1112. The charge by echelons may also be employed with success against a line of infantry; for these threatening and successive attacks disturb the soldier, and often lead him to throw away his fire precipitately.

1113. When the infantry is thrown into column or square, it not being presumable that a practised enemy will await a cavalry charge in line, the charge will be made in a column of attack composed of its several squadrons, which, to charge successively, will take distance of double their front, in order that the first squadron, having dashed forward, may be promptly followed by the second, which, if the first has broken in, will throw itself into the square, charging to either side, and completing the rout.

1114. If the first squadron should be repulsed, it should unmask

the second squadron, by escaping to the right and left, forming again in rear of the column. The second squadron would, in this case, renew the charge, and, if also repulsed, would clear the way for the third.

1115. Such charges, in rapid and redoubled succession, would probably accomplish the object of breaking the square, particularly if directed, as they ought always to be, against the angles, which present the smallest defence, when not strengthened by artillery. The right angle ought to be specially aimed at, as, from the position of the men, they can give the least annoyance by a well-directed fire.

1116. The squadrons which have not charged will be sent in pursuit of the fugitives, until recalled by *the rally*. They will then return and take their places in the column, in rear of the squadron already formed.

ARTICLE TENTH.

The Evolutions of the Line.

1117. Being only the combination of movements of several regiments in line or column, cannot differ essentially from the manœuvres of a regiment. It is merely considered necessary, therefore, in relation to the evolutions of the line, to establish the following

General Rules.



every chief of regiment, squadron, or even of platoon, will conform, as well in the repetition of commands as in the execution of movements, to what he may hear or see, to the side from which the general commands are given.

1119. When lines are to be formed, they will be marked in the same manner as for a regiment; with the difference that an officer of the general staff will previously indicate to the adjutant of regiment the points on which the right or left of the regiment is to be formed.

1120. General guides of regiments will take their proper positions as their several regiments are about to be formed.

1121. Whenever a line is broken into several columns, the officer of each column will command it.

A P P E N

ARTICLE ELE

Compliments by Cavalry

1122. A regiment being in order of battle, the commander will give the caution, *Regiment, prepare for review!* when the ranks will be opened in the manner prescribed in the School of the Squadron, No. 563.

1123. At the word *march*, all the officers in the rank of file closers will advance to the front, and place themselves on the line of officers, and opposite to the positions they before occupied.

1124. The music, at the same time, will be formed in one rank, on the right of the regiment, ten paces removed. Swords will be sloped.

1125. In this parade order the regiment will await the approach of the personage who is to review it; for whose guide a camp color will have been placed eighty or one hundred and fifty paces in front of the centre, according to the extent of the line and the plain in front of it.

1126. When the reviewing personage is midway between the camp color and the colonel, the latter will turn his horse to the right-about on his ground, and command, *Regiment, carry—Sword!*

resuming immediately his proper front; when all the officers will salute.

1127. When the reviewing personage, who has halted till the proper compliments are paid, advances, the colonel will bring his sword to a *carry*, turn about as before to the line, and order, *Regiment, slope—Swains!* when the whole will remain perfectly steady, except the colonel, who resumes his proper front.

1128. The reviewing personage now turns off to the right of the regiment, passes thence into front of all the officers to the left, around the left, and behind the rank of file closers, to the right again. Whilst he is passing around the regiment, no matter what his rank, the music will play; and when he turns off to take his station near the camp color, the music will cease.

1129. When the music ceases, the colonel will turn about, and command, *Regiment, rear rank, close order—March!* At the word *march*, all the officers from the rank of file closers will return to their position in that rank.

1130. The reviewing personage having taken a position near the camp color, previously placed at a proper distance, the colonel, or other commander, will cause it to break into column of divisions, right or left in front, and command, *Pass in review!*

1131. At this command the band and trumpets will repair to the head of the regimental column, six paces in front of the colonel. The quartermaster sergeant will be ten paces in front of the colonel, two paces from the side opposite to the guides; and the quartermaster, sergeant, and assistant surgeon, and veterinary surgeon, to one

1134. The regiments will take, in marching, intervals between them, of about forty paces.

1135. When the head of the column arrives within fifty paces of the reviewing personage, the colonel will cause it to carry swords, when the music will commence playing.

1136. The musicians having passed, the chief musician will cause them to wheel out of the column, and take position opposite to the reviewing personage; the music will continue to play, till the last division of the regiment has passed; it will then cease, and follow in the rear.

1137. Passing at a walk, the colonel, and all the officers will, as they successively arrive within six paces of the reviewing personage, salute with the sword.

1138. The standards will not salute, except to the President or Vice President of the United States, Governors of States, Heads of Departments, or the Commander-in-Chief; when the trumpets are to flourish in passing, the band will cease playing, and resume the same air, or march, when the flourishes have ceased.

1139. The lieutenant colonel will be opposite to the leading division of his wing; the major opposite to the rear division; the adjutant opposite to the division next to the front; and the sergeant-major opposite to the division next to rear: each six paces from the flank, opposite to the reviewing personage.

1140. All other officers, and non-commissioned officers, will march past, in the places prescribed for them in the march of an open column.

1141. The guides, and the men, will keep the head well to the front, in passing in review.

ARTICLE TWELFTH.

Form and Course of Inspection, &c.

1142. The inspection of the troops will generally be preceded by a review, the form of which has been prescribed under article 11. The present example embraces a regiment of cavalry.

1143. The regiment, or squadron, being in line, on an intimation from the inspector, the colonel will cause it to break into open column of divisions, or troops, the right in front, each troop

entire. He will next order the ranks to be opened; at which, the standard bearers will, under the conduct of the adjutant, be placed twenty paces ahead of the column.

1144. The colonel seeing the ranks aligned, will add, *Officers, and non-commissioned officers, to the front of your troops—March!* on which the officers will form themselves in one rank, twelve paces, and the non-commissioned officers, in one rank, six paces, in advance, along the whole front of their respective troops, in the order of rank, the highest on the right, and the lowest on the left; the trumpets of each troop, at the same time, take post on the alignment of the front rank, six paces from the right; and the farriers in their rear, on the alignment of the rear rank.

1145. Seeing the last order in a train of execution, the colonel will command, *Field and staff, to the front—March!* The commissioned officers, thus designated, will form themselves in one rank, twelve paces in front of the standards, in the following order, beginning on the right: lieutenant colonel, major, adjutant, quartermaster, surgeon, assistant surgeon. The non-commissioned staff for themselves in a similar manner, six paces in the rear of the preceding rank, the veterinary surgeon being on their left. The band, if there be one, will be formed in one rank, ten paces in the rear of the column, the chief musician, four paces in its front.

1146. The colonel will now take post, on the right of the lieutenant colonel; but such of the field officers as may be superior in rank to the adjutant, will not take post as above.

1148. The inspector will then dismount, with the field and commissioned staff officers, for the purpose of inspecting horse furniture and valises. Preparatory to which, the colonel will cause the column to dismount, (as in the *School of the Trooper*, Lesson 3,) the men being then in the position of *stand to horse*, the colonel will command, *Right!* for the whole column; when the inspector will proceed to make a minute inspection of the several ranks, or divisions, in succession, commencing in front.

1149. On approaching the non-commissioned staff, and the band, the adjutant will give the necessary orders for the inspection of boxes and valises; and, in like manner, as to the standard bearers; to enable the latter to display their valises, after dismounting, the standards will be planted firm in the ground: this division being inspected, the adjutant may direct the standard bearers to link, and to disperse, until the standards are to be escorted back to the place from which they were taken. The non-commissioned staff may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

1150. As the inspector successively approaches the troops, each captain will command, *attention! unstrap valises and coats! open valises and boxes!* when the valises will be placed at the feet of the men, the flaps from them, with the great coats on the flaps, and the valises leaning forward on the great coats. In this position, the inspector may examine the contents of the whole, boxes and valises, or of as many as he may think necessary, beginning again with the non-commissioned officers, noticing, in passing, the tools, &c. of the farriers, and the trumpets of the musicians.

1151. As the inspector passes the troops, they will successively, under the orders of the respective captains, re-pack and re-strap, their valises and coats, and file off to their tents or quarters, except the troop that is to re-escort the standards, which will await the further orders of the colonel.

1152. In an extensive column, some of the rearmost divisions, when dismounted after the inspection of dress, general appearance, horses, and arms, might be permitted to *link*, awaiting the approach of the inspector. In this case such divisions would resume the position above supposed, before the minute inspection.

1153. If the troops are to be mustered for payment, it will be done after the inspection. The original, or proof-roll of each troop,

by which the muster is made, with the remarks and verifications in the hand writing of the inspector, will be the check on the duplicates or triplicates to be made out by the captains for the signature of the mustering officer.

1154. The inspection of the troops ended, the field and staff will next accompany the inspector to the hospital, quarters, stables, sutler's shop, &c. The captains and subalterns will precede him in his visit to their troops and sections, respectively.

1155. The hospital is at all times an object of the most particular interest. In it no neglect or defect will be overlooked or tolerated. The surgeon will show the inspector the wards, patients, bunks, dispensary, kitchen, &c. &c.; the whole will be carefully inspected.

1156. On entering the troop quarters, the inspector will be received by the men arranged round their chambers, standing. At the word, *attention!* given by the non-commissioned officer of the squad, the men, if in uniform, will compliment the inspector by the hand salute; if not in uniform, by taking off forage caps.

1157. The inspector will examine the general arrangement; the bunks and bedding; cooking and table utensils, &c. &c.; and afterwards the exterior neatness of the quarters.

1158. The stables and riding house are also to be very carefully inspected, together with their furniture and utensils.

1159. The adjutant will exhibit to the inspector the regimental books and papers; the troop books and papers will also be exhibited,



make a thorough inspection of his hospital, &c. every Sunday morning.

1163. Besides these inspections, daily visits will be made to the quarters, hospitals, stables, &c. &c. by the colonel and other officers.

ARTICLE THIRTEENTH.

Assembly, Inspection, and Parade of Guards.

1164. All guards will be turned off at 9 o'clock, A. M. and when a different hour is appointed by the commander of the troops, or posts, on account of the heat of the weather, or a other special reason.

1165. Thirty minutes before that hour a signal will be made to the details to turn out, when the men from each troop will be inspected by the first sergeant, under the superintendence of the officer of the troop.

1166. Ten minutes after the preceding signal, a second sound will be given, at which the sergeants will conduct the troop details to the regimental parade, each detachment for the same guard taking on the left of that which preceded it, (under the direction of the adjutant,) in open order, with swords drawn.

1167. The adjutant, as he successively accepts the detachments, will dismiss the supernumerary men under the conduct of the respective first sergeants.

1168. The guards are either organized on the regimental (or garrison) parade, or, according to the nature of the case, partly on that, and partly on the grand parade. In the latter case, the senior officer of the details, or guards, furnished by each regiment, and intended for the grand parade, will conduct them from the regimental parade.

1169. On arriving at the grand parade, each detachment will take post in the order above prescribed, under the direction of the staff officer from head-quarters, or his assistant, the adjutant of the day.

1170. The adjutant of the day will accompany the details of his regiment to the grand parade, and will be replaced on his own parade by the second officer of the new police guard, if there be two; by the commander, if there be but one; and if there be no officer of

that guard, by the sergeant-major. The regiment that furnishes the *adjutant of the day*, will also furnish the music for the grand parade.

1171. The *officer of the day* will always be present at guard mounting; no other, except a general officer, will interfere with, or give any order on the parade, to the staff officer on duty there. The commander of the troops, (or garrison,) though under the rank of general, is, of course, an exception to this rule.

1172. The following form regards, more particularly, the grand parade. With a few obvious variations, it will equally apply to the regimental (or post) parade.

1173. When the detachments or guards open ranks, the officers of them take post sixteen paces in front of the centre, in one rank, in the order of seniority; the sergeants in one rank, four paces in the rear of the officers; the corporals in another rank, four paces in the rear of the sergeants, all with swords drawn.

1174. The *adjutant of the day* will dress the line, count the files, verify the details by reference to the written orders, and tell off the guards, whilst the other staff officer appoints the officers and non-commissioned officers to the several guards, and designates the posts which they are to occupy. The larger guards, if necessary, may be told off into platoons.

1175. The staff officer will next command, *Officers and non-commissioned officers, inspect your guards—March!* The two highest in rank of each guard will divide the ranks between them, accompanied by the other officers, &c. The commander of each guard

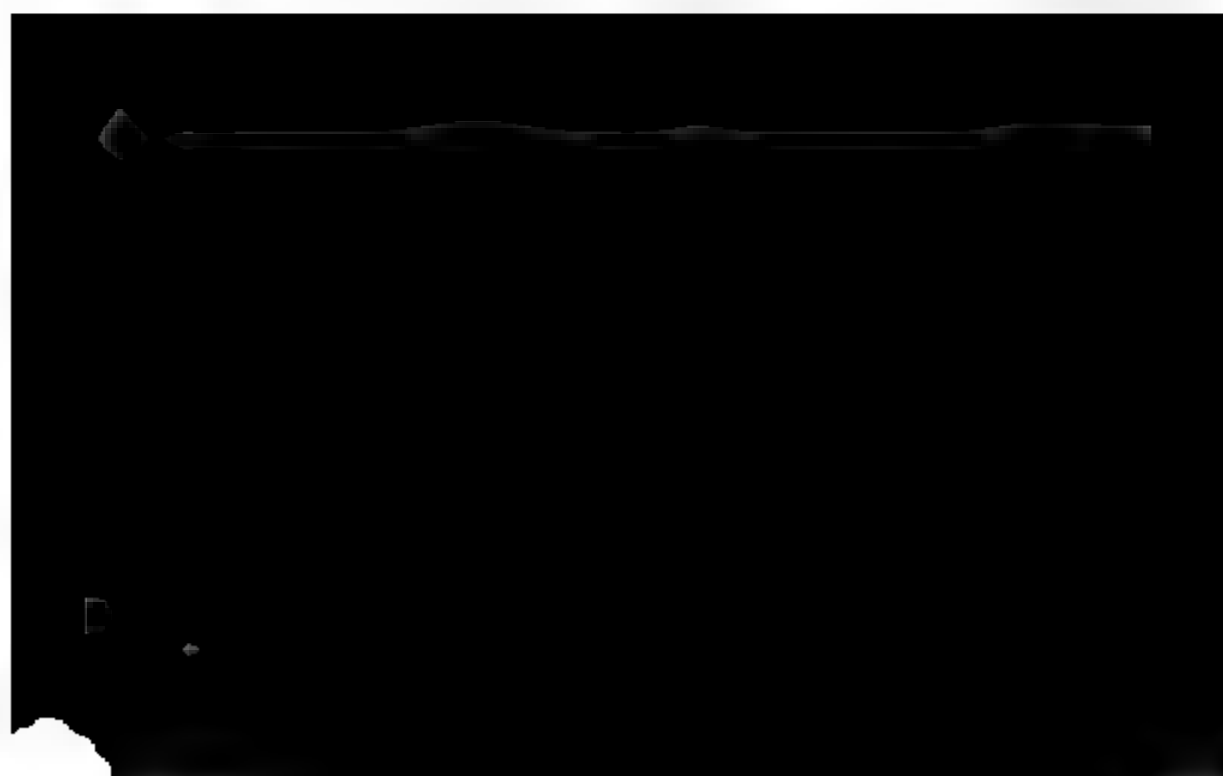
1178. The staff officer will continue—**ATTENTION! Rear rank close order—MARCH! Carry—SWORDS!** at which, he will face to the new *officer of the day*, drop sword and report, "Sir, the guards are ready to receive your orders." The new *officer of the day*, after acknowledging the salute, will direct the staff officer what is next to be done. But if the staff officer should be senior to the *officer of the day*, he would report without saluting with sword, and immediately retire. In this case, the *adjutant of the day* would be instructed to give the orders contained in the following paragraph, or the officer of the day would give them himself.

1179. The guards having performed such exercises as were required by the *officer of the day*, the staff officer will again command, *Guards, (or platoon,) right wheel—MARCH! Column slope—SWORDS! Forward, guide right—MARCH!* when the whole will pass the *officer of the day*, in the manner prescribed for passing in review, in common time, or at a walk if mounted, the staff officer, (if still present on duty,) marching on the then reverse flank of the first division, and the *adjutant of the day* on that of the last division, or, in the absence of the staff officer, the *adjutant of the day* would be dressed on the first division.

1180. When the column has passed, the guards break off, under their respective commanders, and take the route to the several posts assigned them; at the same time, the two staff officers break off, or the remaining one breaks off; the music ceases, and the old *officer of the day* salutes and gives the old, or standing instructions, to the new officer of the day.

1181. Guards which are assigned to new posts will be conducted to, and established in them, by the *officer of the day*, and the staff officer or officers detached from head quarters for the purpose.

1182. In bad weather the ceremony of *turning off* guards on the usual parades, may be dispensed with by the *officer of the day*, and the inspection be made under shelter. Also, in the case of guards which may have to mount in the night, or at the close of the day after fatiguing marches, the ceremony of *turning off* will be dispensed with; but that of *inspection*, never.



EXERCISES AND MANŒUVRES

FOR

LIGHT INFANTRY AND RIFLES

1183. Battalions of the line may be broken and intersected grounds, to manœuvres both in closed and extended order, and that any battalion of a division or army, or a battalion, may, in the absence of light troops, be so employed. It will cause their battalions to be well instructed in the movements of light infantry.

1184. When the colonel of a battalion of the line is to manœuvre as light infantry, he will cause the battalion to unfix its ranks, and command—1. *As light infantry.* 2. *Shoulder—Arms!*

1185. The men and officers are always to understand, when this order is given, that they are to manœuvre as light infantry.

1186. The object of light infantry *proper*, whether in battalion or company, is to protect the advance or retreat, and to cover and assist the manœuvres of large bodies; and these particular instructions are laid down to simplify the service, to establish uniformity of movement, and to afford such details as will, under all circumstances, contribute to produce unity of action.

1187. The first principle essential to this object, is, the utmost rapidity of movement consistent with order and regularity. When shifting from one position to another, the officers will *always* move in *double quick* time; and when no particular time is specified, all light infantry movements in close order, except formations from file, will be in quick time, (of one hundred and twenty paces per minute.)

1188. All formations from file, and from extended order, and

all extensions, will be executed in double quick time, (of one hundred and sixty paces per minute.) A just discretion, however, is necessarily vested in every commanding officer on actual service; when the double quick time must be sparingly used. In broken grounds, or when rapidly advancing to seize an advantageous point, or in cases of great danger in retreating or assembling, it may always be resorted to; but for common skirmishing it is liable to exhaust the men. Whenever the company or battalion is to be put in motion in double quick time, or when double quick time is to be assumed on the march, the previous order to *trail arms* will be understood, and arms trailed accordingly.

1189. The organization and habitual formation of light infantry and rifle companies will be, in all respects, the same as of companies of the line, substituting, only, two buglers in lieu of a drummer and a fifer to each.

1190. The files will be numbered from right to left, and the men particularly instructed to recollect their respective numbers. The right and left files of platoons and sections will be particularly designated as such.

1191. As the men composing light infantry and rifle companies are selected from among the most active and intelligent soldiers of the line, (expert, of course, in the use of their arms,) an entire company may be taught the manual exercise at the same time.

1192. The bayonets of light infantry companies will, when acting in closer order, be fixed by command; in open order, whenever the order is given, they will be fixed at the discretion of the commanding officer.

MANUAL EXERCISE.*Shouldered Arms.*

1195. The firelock in the right hand nearly against the point of the shoulder, the barrel perpendicular, and to the rear, the ramrod to the front, the right arm almost at its full extent, the right hand embracing the cock and guard, the butt flat along the right thigh, and the left hand hanging by the left side.

Present—Arms!

One motion.

1196. The firelock is raised with the right hand, opposite to the centre of the body, the ramrod to the front, the cock as high as the lowest coat button; at the same time the firelock is grasped with the left hand, so that the little finger may touch the hammer spring, the thumb upwards along the stock, the fore arm kept close to the body without constraint; and the soldier remains steady to the front, with the right hand grasping the small.

Shoulder—Arms!

First motion.

1197. The firelock is brought quickly across the body to the right side, the left hand seizing the firelock smartly as high as the shoulder; the right, slipping round into the original position when shouldered.

Second motion.

1198. The left hand quits the firelock, and is promptly brought, as before, upon the left thigh.

Order—Arms!

First motion.

1199. The left hand seizes the firelock even with the right shoulder, and raises it by the right hand about two inches.

Second motion.

1200. The right hand quits its hold, grasps the firelock round the

muzzle, and brings it gently to the ground, the beak even with the toe of the right foot, the wrist pressing against the side, and elbows close to the body.

Shoulder—ARMS!

First motion.

1201. The firelock is thrown at once to the right shoulder, by a jerk of the right hand, the left catches it till the right seizes the firelock at the proper place.

Second motion.

1202. Bring the left hand quickly to its position on the left thigh.

Support—ARMS!

One motion.

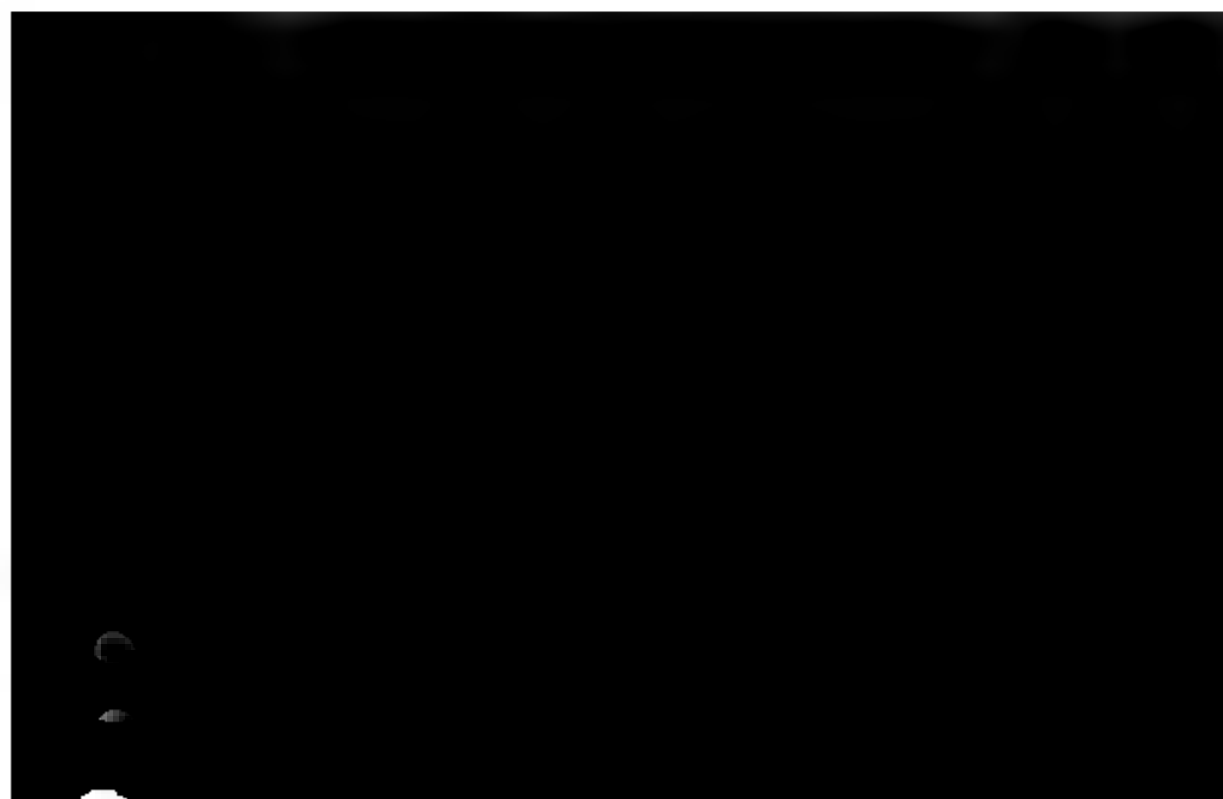
1203. The firelock is brought (by bending the right arm) across the body with the guard upward, and opposite the middle of the body; the barrel resting in the joint of the right elbow; the left hand laid across the right.

Carry—ARMS!

One motion.

1204. The firelock is brought smartly to the right side, the left hand to its position.

Trail—ARMS!



Thrust—Arms!***First motion.***

1208. The right hand seizes the firelock as low as possible, without constraint, then raises and catches it about six inches above the lock.

Second motion.

1209. Raise the butt till the firelock is nearly horizontal.

Shoulder—Arms!***First motion.***

1210. Raise the muzzle till the firelock is perpendicular.

Second motion.

1211. The firelock is thrown at once into the right shoulder by a jerk of the right hand; the left catches it till the right seizes the firelock at the proper place.

Third motion.

1212. Bring the left hand quickly to its position on the left thigh.

To Load as Riflemen.

1213. The instructor will command,

Load by eight commands.**1. LOAD!*****One motion.***

1214. Carry back the right foot, making a half face to the right, turning on the left heel, let fall the firelock, seizing it with the left hand at the swell, the elbow resting against the left side; the right hand quits its hold, placing the thumb against the top of the hammer.

2. Open—PAN!***One motion.***

1215. The pan is pushed open with the right thumb; the right hand seizes the cartridge with the three first fingers, carries it to the mouth, which tears off the end, whence it is brought close to the pan.

3. PRIME!*One motion.*

1216. The priming is shaken into the pan; the pan is shut by the third and little finger; the right hand then slides behind the cock and holds the small of the stock between the third and little finger, and ball of the hand.

4. Cast—About!*First motion.*

1217. The soldier fronts, bringing the right foot to its original position; the rifle is brought, with the barrel outwards, (sliding it with care through the left hand,) to the ground, the butt placed between the heels, the barrel between the knees, which must be sufficiently bent for that purpose; the left hand takes hold near the muzzle, the thumb stretched along the stock.

Second motion.

1218. The cartridge is put into the barrel, and the ramrod seized with the fore finger and thumb of the right hand.

5. Draw—RAMROD!*One motion.*

1219. The ramrod is drawn by the right hand, the left quits the rifle and grasps the rod, the breadth of a hand from the bottom, which is sunk one inch into the barrel.



8. Shoulder—Arms!*First motion.*

1222. The left hand carries the rifle to the right shoulder, turning the guard outwards, the right receiving it in its proper position at the small.

Second motion.

1223. The left hand is carried quickly to the left thigh.

To Load as Light Infantry.

1224. The instructor will command,

Load by eight commands.

1. **LOAD!** 2. **Open—PAN!** 3. **PAINK!**

1225. These commands will be executed, respectively, as prescribed, Nos. 1214, 1215, and 1216.

4. Cast—ABOUT!*One motion.*

1226. Without moving the shoulders or feet, press down the butt of the firelock, letting it slide through the left hand, to the ground, the heel of the butt resting on a line with the left toe, the ramrod towards the body, and the muzzle inclined towards the rear, and opposite the right shoulder; the right hand carried as high as, and opposite to the muzzle; enter the cartridge, and seize the ramrod with the thumb and fore finger.

5. Draw—RAMROD!*One motion.*

1227. Draw the ramrod, extending the right arm; seize it at the middle, turn it into the barrel, as far as the hand.

6. Ram—CARTRIDGE!*One motion.*

1228. Extend the arm its whole length, in raising the right hand to seize the ramrod with the thumb extended and the fore finger bent, the other fingers being closed, drive the ramrod forcibly into

the barrel, ramming home twice; seize it again by the small end, between the thumb and fore finger bent, the others closed, the right elbow close to the body.

7. *Return—RAMMED!*

First motion.

1229. As in the first motion of *drawing ramrod*, bring the small end of it opposite to the upper pipe, and hold it there without entering it.

Second motion.

1230. Introduce the small end into the pipe, and force it into its place; raise the right hand quickly, and place it, somewhat bent, on the butt of the ramrod, the palm downwards.

8. *Shoulder—ARMS!*

First motion.

1231. Raise the fire-lock, (with the left hand as high as the shoulder,) to the right side, seize it with the right, as prescribed for *shoulder arms*, turning, at the same time, on the left heel, and bringing the right foot in position.

Second motion.

1232. Carry the left hand quickly to its place.

1233. After the company shall be fully acquainted with the mechanism of loading, the instructor will cause it to execute the



1236. The covering sergeant will fall back to the alignment of the file closers, opposite his interval: this rule will be general for the covering sergeant during the firing.

1237. At the second command, the captain will command,

1. *Company.* 2. *READY.* 3. *AIM.* 4. *FIRE.* 5. *LOAD.*

1238. At the word *load*, the soldiers will bring down their locks to the priming position, load, and shoulder; the captain by the same commands, cause the company to fire again, which will be continued until a roll causes the firing to cease.

1239. The captain will sometimes cause his company to obliquely to the right and to the left, taking care to give the command *right (or left) oblique*, after the word *READY*, and before the word *AIM*, causing his company to fire, sometimes to the right, sometimes to the left, without any other caution. He will sometimes, make his men *Recover Arms*, after aiming, in order to accustom them to steadiness, and attention to the command.

To Fire by File.

1240. To effect this, the instructor will command,

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Company.* 3. *READY.* 4. *Commence—FIRE.*

1241. At the first command, the captain will retire one pace in rear of the rear rank, opposite his interval.

1242. The right hand file at the fourth command will commence the firing, the next file will aim at the instant the first, which has just fired, primes, and so on to the left; but this progression will take place only for the first fire, every man afterwards loading and firing, without waiting for others.

1243. The instructor will cause the firing, whether by file or company, to cease by a roll, at the commencement of which the firing will cease. Those who have just fired, will load and shoulder; if in the position of ready, they will front, half cock, and then shoulder at the same time; if aiming, they will recover of their own accord, front, half cock, and shoulder.

1244. The roll will always be followed by a tap of the drum: at this signal, the captain, as also the covering sergeant, will quickly

resume their places in line, and rectify, if necessary, the alignment of the ranks.

1245. In this school, the instructor will cause the firing to cease by the command,

ROLL.

1246. At the word *roll*, the firing will cease; to ensure which, every file closer will call out *cease firing*.

1247. The tap of the drumstick, as a signal for the captain and covering sergeant to resume their places in line, may be indicated by the command *tap* from the instructor, when he sees arms shouldered.

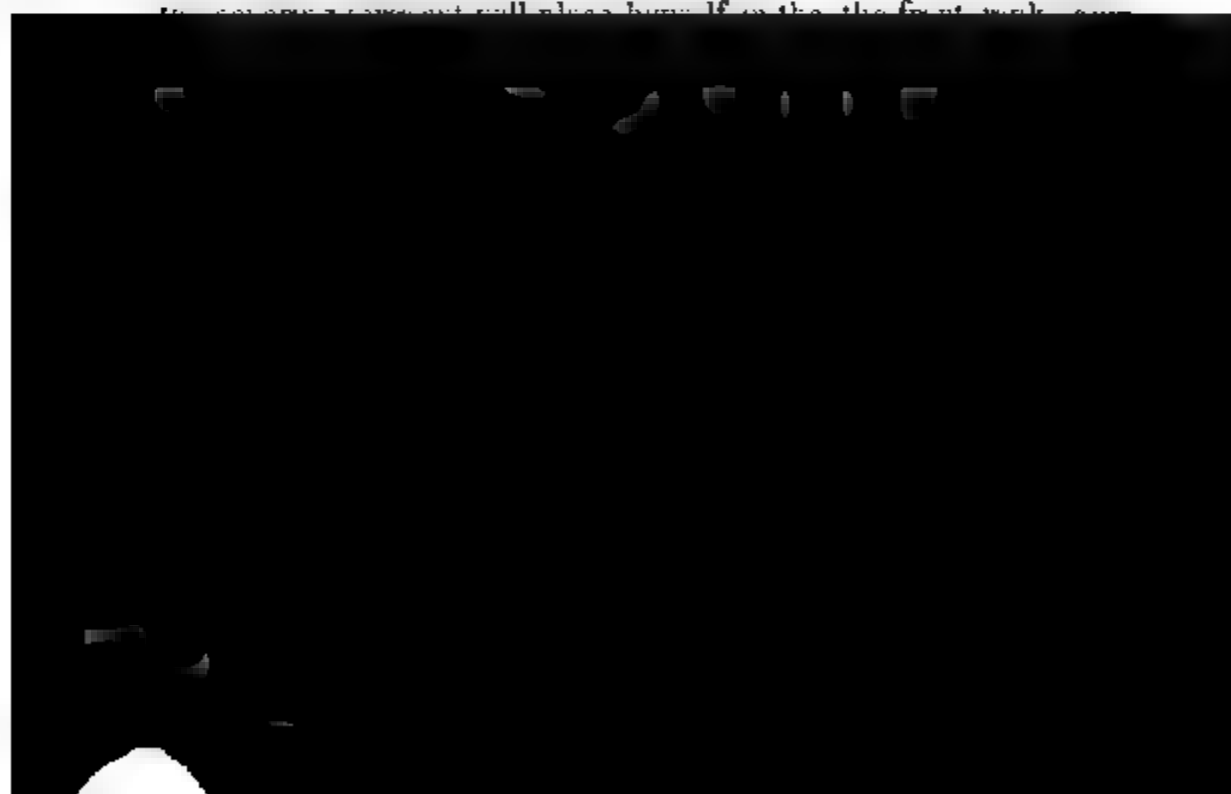
To Fire to the Rear.

1248. To effect this, the instructor will command,

1. *Fire to the rear.* 2. *Company.* 3. *About—Face.*

1249. At the word *about*, the captain will place himself facing, and close against, the right hand front rank man of his company, the covering sergeant and file closers will pass quickly through the interval of the captain, placing themselves facing to the rear, two paces from the front rank, and opposite to their respective places in line.

1250. At the word *face*, the captain will occupy his interval in line, but place himself in the rear rank, now become front; and the covering sergeant will place himself in the front rank, now



1255. At the word *face*, the captain and covering sergeant resume their places in line.

1256. Light infantry and rifle companies will be particularly instructed in file firing, *as in open order*, as this will be the mode usually adopted by them in the field. In this fire, the soldier will not be required, as heretofore prescribed, to aim direct to the but will be allowed to select his object to the right, left, or The instructor will command,

1. *Company (platoons or sections.)*

* 2. *Fire by file, as in open order.* 3. *Commence—FIRING.*

1257. At the third command, the right file of the company (it may be, the right files of each platoon or section,) will take a paces to the front; the rear rank man of the file will last step, obliquely, to the right; each man will then raise ~~the~~ firelock by the right hand, in front of the centre of the body; with the left, seize it, so that the little finger will rest upon the hammer spring, the thumb extended along the stock, and as high as the mouth; the right thumb on the cock, and the fingers under the guard.

1258. When cocked, (which must be done gently,) the right hand will grasp the small; the soldier will half face to the right, and place the butt in the hollow of the right shoulder, move the right foot about eighteen inches in rear of the left, the left knee bent, the body brought well forward; the left hand, without having quitted its hold, supporting the firelock near, and in front of the lock; the right elbow raised even with the shoulder; the fore finger on the trigger; the head bent forward, and the cheek resting against the butt; the left eye shut, the right taking aim through the sight; so soon as the soldier has fixed upon his object, he will fire, without waiting for any command.

1259. When the soldier has fired, he will bring the firelock, steadied by the left hand, to the position of *shoulder arms*; and, facing to the right-about, resume his place, and front; he will then bring the firelock into the position to load, half cock, and proceed to load, as prescribed above.

*To Fire and Load, Kneeling and Lying.**1st. Kneeling.*

1260. The instructor will cause this to be executed by the commands prescribed No. 1256, substituting for the second command, therein directed, 2. *Fire and load, kneeling.*

1261. At the third command, the right file (or files) will step forward, as indicated, No. 1257, and assume the kneeling position, by throwing the right foot smartly to the rear, the heel raised, and the foot resting on the toes, bent; dropping down on the right knee (not suddenly) ten or twelve inches in the rear, and about six inches to the right of the left heel. The piece will be raised in front of the centre of the body, as prescribed, No. 1257.

1262. Each will then aim, bringing the body well forward, and fire, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 1258.

1263. After firing, the soldier (remaining on his knee) will bring the piece, supported by the left hand, to the right side; the left elbow resting on, and the barrel in a line with, the left thigh; he will half cock, and then open pan, and prime, as prescribed, Nos. 1215, 1216, bring round the firelock with the left hand to the left side, the butt well to the rear, the barrel between the left arm and the body, and held thus, (or by the left hand, as circumstances require,) the muzzle as high as the breast, and three inches in rear of the left knee; he will then insert the cartridge with the right hand, draw ramrod, as prescribed, No. 1227, and ram forcibly home,

flat on his belly, his feet to the rear: in this position he will cock his firelock, holding it (with his left hand) diagonally across and under his breast, aim and fire.

1267. So soon as he has fired, he will turn upon his left side and rest upon his left elbow; bringing back his piece with both hands until the lock be opposite his breast, the butt resting on the ground; in this position he will half cock, take out his cartridge with his right hand, prime and shut pan; he will then, still he with his left hand, turn upon his back and throw the butt placing the butt between his heels, with the muzzle raised above a horizontal position. He will then hold the cartridge with the utmost care, in order not to lose it; now put it into the barrel, draw ramrod, and return ramrod. After taking the position, lying on his belly, and ready to fire. This file will then quickly spring resume its place in line.

1268. The second file shall then conform to what is prescribed the first, and so on, successively through the company, (platoon sections.)

Remarks on Firing as in Open Order.

1269. In the above cases of firing as in open order, the men will only fire and load once at the command; but when they shall have been taught to extend, the instructor will inform the company that they are to fire (after extending) either standing, kneeling, or lying: he will then cause the signal to extend, to be given; after which, that to fire; and the men, (thus extended,) will commence and continue firing and loading as directed by the instructor, until the signal to cease firing.

1270. In all firings in extended order, whether at a halt, advancing or retreating, the firelock will be brought to the position to cock it, from a trail.

To March by a Flank.

1271. The company being in line at a halt, the instructor wishing it to march by the right flank, will command,

1. Company. 2. Right—Face. 3. Forward—March.

1272. At the second command, the company will face to the right, the captain will also face, moving one pace out of the rank so as to be on the left of the covering sergeant, who will also face to the right, moving to the front rank so as to occupy the place out of which the captain has just moved.

1273. At the word *march*, the company will step off, smartly in common time; the covering sergeant placed before the man on the right of the front rank, and the captain placed at the side of the covering sergeant, will march straight forward. The men of the rear rank will march abreast of their file leader, and keep the face direct to the front; the file closers will march opposite their respective places in line.

1274. The instructor, during the march, will place himself five or six paces in front, to see that the principles prescribed above are strictly observed.

1275. He will also, sometimes, place himself in rear of the file, and let it pass him fifteen or twenty paces, to observe whether the recruits cover the file leader exactly.

1276. The instructor will cause the company to march by the left flank, by the commands prescribed for marching by the right, substituting the word *left* for that of *right*.

1277. At the instant the company faces to the left, the guide of the left will place himself before the man on the left of the front rank; the captain will go, quickly, to the left, placing himself on the right of the guide, the covering sergeant will post himself in the front rank before the man on the right of the captain.

the rear rank conforms to his movement by describing a small circle, as has first been explained. Each file will wheel on the same ground.

1280. The instructor will strictly observe, that the wheel is executed on these principles, so that the distance between the files may always be preserved, and that there be no sudden check or repulsion on the march.

To Halt the Company Marching by a Flank and to Front it,

1281. The instructor will command,

1. *Company.* 2. *HALT.* 3. *FRONT.*

1282. At the second word, the company will halt, and no man will move, even to rectify a false distance; this attention being necessary to habituate the soldier to the constant observance of his distance.

1283. At the third word, each man will front, by facing to the left, if marching by the right flank; and by facing to the right, if marching by the left flank. The captain and covering sergeant resume their posts in line at the instant the company fronts.

1284. The instructor may then cause the company to take a new alignment, or direct the captain to rectify the alignment of the company on its ground.

To Advance by Files from the Right or Left.

1285. To effect this, the instructor will command,

1. *Advance by right.* 2. *Company, Right—FACE!* 3. *MARCH!*

1286. (PLATE 73.) At the second word the company, except the first file, (the rear rank man of which will step obliquely to the right and front, placing himself on the right of his file leader,) will face to the right; the captain will place himself on the left of his first sergeant, who will step in front of the leading man of the front rank.

1287. At the third word, the whole will step off together, each file changing direction on the same ground; the captain will,

unless otherwise ordered, be careful to lead, so that the new direction may be at right angles with the original line.

1288. To advance by file from the right of platoons, or sections, would be performed on the same principles; the instructor commanding,

1. *Advance by right of platoons (or sections.)* 2. *Company,*
Right—Face! 3. *MARCH!*

1289. At the second word, the captain will place himself as prescribed in advancing from the right of company, and each chief of the other named divisions will pass to the front, by the right of his own division, through the interval occasioned by the right file disengaging to the front, and place himself on the left of his guide of the right, who will have followed, and taken post in front of the leading front rank man of the division.

1290. At the word *march*, the whole will step off together; each division led by its chief, aligning its head by, and preserving distance from, the right; and conforming to what has been prescribed for the whole company, Nos. 1285, 1286.

1291. Advancing by file from the left of company, platoons or sections, will be executed by inverse means. In all cases the heads of divisions will align themselves by the proper right of the whole.

To Retire by File, from the Right (or Left.)

1292. To effect this, the instructor will command,



would be executed on the same principles; the instructor substituting the commands,

1. *Retire by right of platoons (or sections)* 2. *Company, Right—FACE!* 3. *MARCH!*

1296. Each named division will execute precisely what has been prescribed above for the whole company, and each chief and guide of division will conform to the instructions for the captain and covering sergeant.

1297. Retiring by file from the left of company, platoons, or sections, will be executed by inverse commands and means; the captain always proceeding by the rear to the left of his company or division.

To Form Single File.

1298. The company supposed marching by a flank, to form single file, the instructor will command,

1. *Single file.* 2. *MARCH!*

1299. At the second word, each rear rank man, by an oblique, (or side step,) will cover his proper file leader.

1300. If the company were at a halt, and the instructor wished to put it in march by single file, on the above command, the whole would face to the right: at the word *march*, rear rank men would conduct themselves as prescribed above.

1301. To resume the order of double files, the instructor will command,

1. *Double file.* 2. *MARCH!*

1302. At the word *march*, the rear rank men will advance the left shoulder, and move up, in double quick time, till abreast of their respective file leaders.

Remarks on Single File.

1303. (PLATE 76.) If a company, advancing from the right or left in single file, were ordered, as will be hereafter prescribed, 1. *Into line.* 2. *MARCH!* the first file would halt; each man would, in succession, move on in the track of the first; when arrived to within

one or two paces of that file, turn at right angles to the left, move on till opposite his place in line, then face to the right or left, and move up to his rank in line, thus forming line of battle in two ranks from the march in single file, the rear rank men taking special care to cover their file leaders.

1304. The company will also be practised, when advancing and retiring by *single file*, to form in line of *single rank*; in which case, the instructor will command, 1. *Into single rank*. 2. *Into line*. 3. *MARCH!* and it will be executed on the same principles, except that each proper rear rank man takes his place in the single rank on the left of his proper file leader.

1305. It will be observed, that the above movements are intended to be executed in thick woods, narrow paths, or marshy and difficult ground. Whenever the ground admits, and the intention is to form line in two ranks, the files will first be doubled, and at the command, *Into line—MARCH!* each file will move up in echelon, as prescribed, No. 1661, and following.

Formations in Line from File.

To the Front.

1306. The company marching by the right flank, the instructor will command,

1. *Into line*. 2. *MARCH!*

1307. (PLATE 73.) The front rank men of the leading file will



On the Right.

1310. The company, marching by the right flank, and the instructor, wishing it to form line on the right, will command,

1. *On right into line.* 2. *MARCH!*

1311. At this word, the captain and covering sergeant will turn quickly to the right, advance two paces, and halt, the latter stepping in the rear, so as to cover the former. Each file will turn in succession to the right, advance two paces, and align itself on the men who preceded them.

1312. The whole being aligned, the captain will command, *FRONT!*

1313. The company, marching by the left flank, would form line on the left by inverse commands and means; the captain shifting to the right after giving the last command.

Faced to the Rear.

1314. The company, marching by the right flank, would be formed facing to the then rear, by the commands,

1. *Rear into line.* 2. *MARCH!*

1315. At the second word, the front rank man of the leading file will halt, and face to the left about, his rear rank man will wheel to the left-about and cover him.

1316. The other files will advance the left shoulder, and pass over the shortest space to, and cross the new line; halt, and turn to the left about, cast their eyes to, and dress by the right.

1317. The captain will shift to the right, superintend the alignment, and add, *FRONT!*

1318. (PLATE 74.) Marching by the left flank, this movement would be performed by the same commands and by inverse means.

To Advance by Files from the Centre.

1319. To effect this, the instructor will command,

1. *Advance by centre.* 2. *Company, inwards—FACE!* 3. *MARCH!*

1320. (PLATE 75.) At the second word the men will face inwards, except the two centre files, (the left of the first and right of the

second platoon,) who will advance one pace obliquely to the right and left, to admit their two rear rank men between them, who will advance for this purpose; the first sergeant will take post in front of the left man of the two in the centre, and the captain in front of the other.

1321. At the word *march*, the who's will step off together, the captain conducting the four leading men directly to the front; each file of the first platoon will change direction in rear of, and follow the two right hand leading men, and the files of the second platoon in like manner will follow the two left; the company thus marching its two platoons side by side; the first platoon by the left, and the second by the right flank, and the whole in four files, the two exterior files formed by the front rank; so soon as the company shall have advanced the front of a platoon, the file closers (who will have run to the centre, at the commencement of the movement) will take the step, and follow the march of the company.

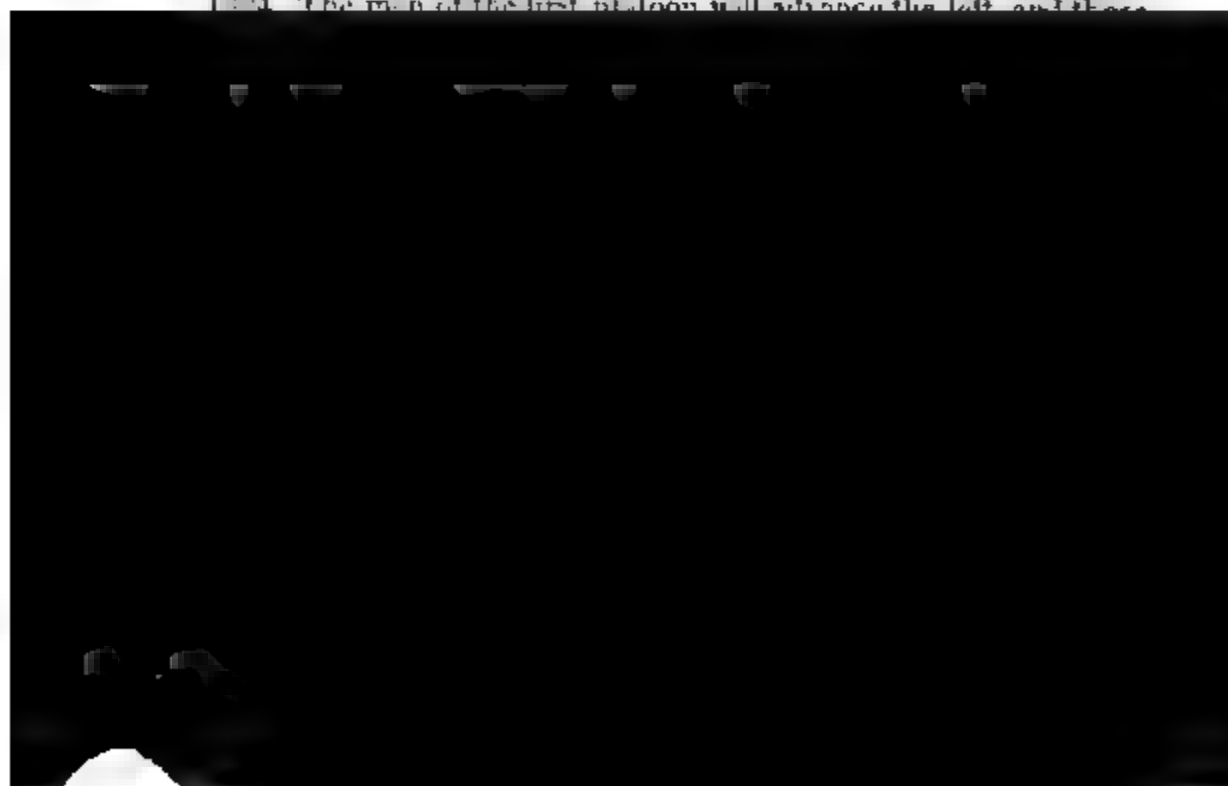
Advancing by Files from the Centre, to form Line to the Front.

1322. To effect this the instructor will command,

1. *Into line.* 2. *MARCH!*

1323. At the second word, the two centre of the four leading men will halt; the two of the front rank will step obliquely to the left and right, covering them in front.

1324. The men of the first platoon will advance the left, and those



1. *Right into line.* 2. **MARCH!**

1326. (PLATE 75.) At the last word, the right hand files (those of the first platoon) will halt and face to the right, the captain and covering sergeant proceeding, by the front rank, to their posts on the right, whence the former will align the company. The first of the left files (those of the second platoon) will pass the rear of the left of the first platoon, turn to the right, and form line on it; the remaining files will turn successively, and form line on the right, the whole casting their eyes to the right flank; the file closers will conform to the movement, and resume their posts in rear of the line.

1327. The captain will then command, **FRONT.**

1328. Forming line on the left will be executed by inverse means, the left files halting and facing, and those of the right forming line on the left; the captain will proceed to the left flank to align the company and resume his post, on giving the word **FRONT.**

To Retire by Files from the Centre.

1329. To retire by files from the centre, the instructor will command,

1. *Retire by centre.* 2. *Command, inward—FACE!* 3. **MARCH!**

1330. At the second word, the men will face inwards, except the two centre files.

1331. The two centre files will face about; the two rear rank men will advance one step obliquely to the left and right; the two front rank men step between them. The captain and first sergeant will shift by the rear and take post as in advancing—the former on the left of the latter.

1332. At the word *march*, the four leading men will be conducted by the captain directly to the rear, and the remaining files of the company will follow, as in *advancing* by files from the centre.

Retiring by Files from the Centre, to Form Line Faced to the then Rear.

1333. The instructor wishing the company, retiring as above, to form line faced to the original front, will command,

1. *Row into line.* 2. *March!*

1334. At the second word, the two front rank men of the leading four will halt, and face about; the two rear rank men will turn about, inwards, and cover the former; the men will advance, those of the first platoon the right, and those of the second the left shoulder, move over the shortest space, cross the line, face about, and dress by the centre.

1335. The captain will shift to the right, followed by his covering sergeant, correct the alignment, and add, *front*.

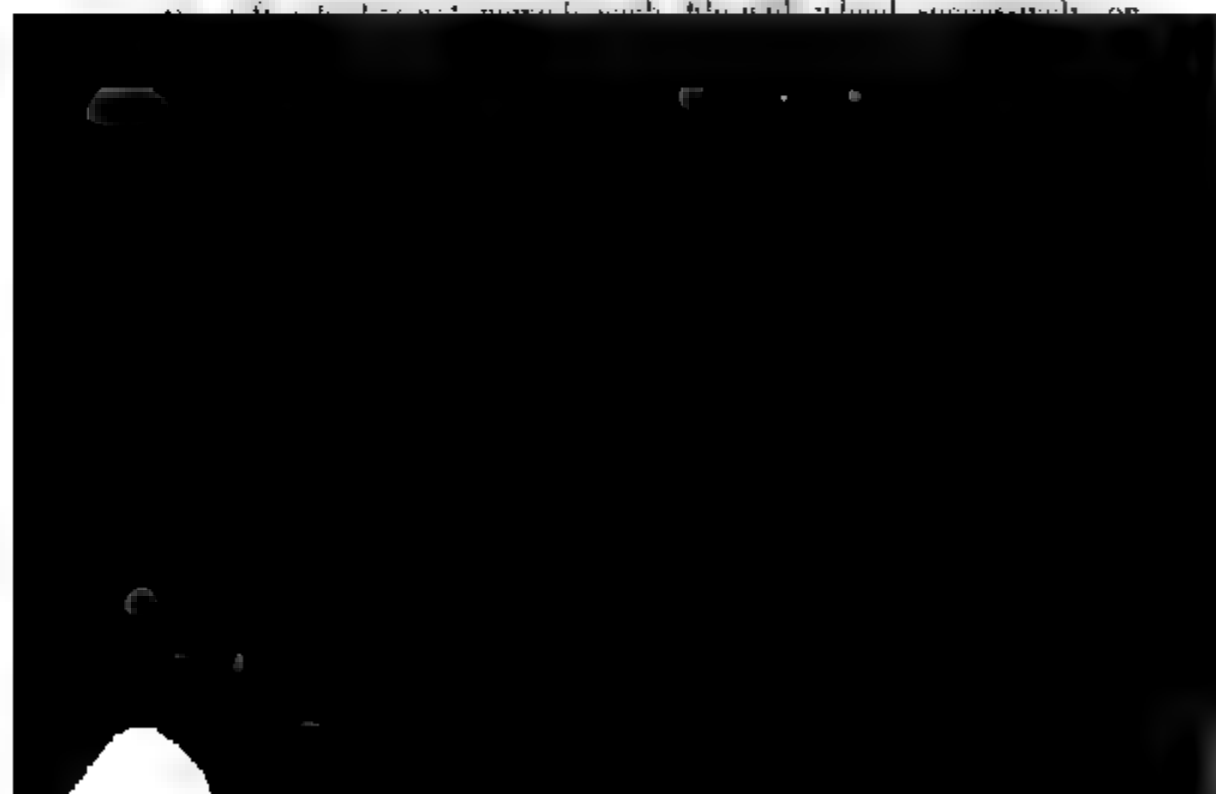
Countermarch.

1336. The company halted, and supposed to constitute part of a column, right in front, the instructor, to cause it to countermarch, will command,

1. *Company—countermarch.* 2. *Right—Face!* 3. *By file left.*
4. *March!*

1337. At the second command, the company will face to the right; the captain will move to the side of the guide of the right; and the guide of the left will face to the right about.

1338. At the word *march*, the guide of the left will not move; the company will step off smartly; the leading file conducted by the captain, will wheel to the left about, moving along the front rank, so as to arrive at the distance of two paces in rear of the guide of



right of the front rank, will place himself to the left, and by the side of, the guide; the captain will place himself at the distance of two paces outside of the guide, in order to direct the alignment; which, being effected, he will command, *Face*, placing himself in front of the centre of the company; the covering sergeant will then place himself on the right of the front rank; and the guide of the left, who was there, will move to the left of the front rank.

1343. In a column, left in front, the countermarch would be executed on the same principles, but by inverse means; accordingly the movement would be made by the right flank of divisions, if the right were in front; by the left flank, if the left were in front, passing always by the front rank.

1344. Finally, if it were a column of platoons or sections, the countermarch would be executed by the same commands, and in the same manner, as in a column of companies.

Change of Front.

1345. To change the front of the company, halted in line, the instructor will command,

Change front to the right.

1346. At this word, the captain will step one pace to the front, face to the left, and command,

1. *Company, right—Face!* 2. *Into line.* 3. *March!*

1347. At the first command, the men will face to the right. At the word *march*, the front rank man on the right will stand fast, and the rear rank man of the same file, cover by a side step to the left and rear; the remaining files will advance the right shoulders, and move over the shortest space to their places in the new line, and dress by the right as they come up; the rear rank men will carefully conform to the movement of their respective file leaders.

1348. The captain (who has, after giving the above command, resumed his place on the right of the company) shall carefully superintend the alignment of the men as they arrive on the line, and then promptly command, *Face*!

1349. It is a rule, to be invariably observed by the men, in all manœuvres, that, on coming into line, they are to close in upon, turn

their heads towards, and fix their eyes on the dressing point, align themselves without further command, and steadily maintain that position of the head, until the command, *Face!*

1350. The change of front to the left, would be executed by inverse commands and means; the captain, on hearing the command from the instructor, will run quickly to the left of his company, face towards its right, and give the commands prescribed above, substituting *left* for *right*, align the company by the left, and proceed promptly to the right on ordering *front*.

To Break into Column.

1351. The company standing in line, and the instructor wishing it to break into column of platoons, right in front, will command,

1. *Column of platoons to the right.* 2. *Company, right—Face!*

1352. At the second word, the whole will face to the right; the captain will step one pace to the front and face to the left; the first lieutenant will run quickly round the left flank of the company, one pace in front; each will then give the caution, *platoon, into line*.

1353. On hearing the cautions of the chiefs of platoons, the instructor will add,

3. *March!*

1354. At the third command, each platoon will execute what has been prescribed for the company in the preceding.

1355. At the command, align the platoons, run one pace rapidly to the

files of the division on his right, to the point where the left of his division will rest.

1358. A column, left in front, will be formed by inverse commands and means.

To Resume the Formation in Line.

To the Left.

1359. The instructor will command,

1. *Left into line.* 2. *Column, left—Face!*

1360. At the second command, all the divisions will face to the left. The instructor will then add,

3. *March!*

1361. The captain will instantly proceed to the point where the right will rest, and each of the other chiefs of division by the left, to his place in the rank of file closers; the files of each division will advance the left shoulders, and form to the front, as in No. 1347, and then align themselves by the right: the captain will then command, *Company—Front!*

1362. At this word, the guides will resume their position in line.

To March in Column.

1363. The company having broken into column of platoons right in front, the instructor wishing it to advance, will move fifteen or twenty paces to the front, facing to the guides, and place himself correctly on their direction, after having ordered the leading guide to take points on the ground to march on.

1364. The instructor thus placed, the guide of the leading platoon will take two points on the ground between himself and the instructor, on the line passing from himself between the heels of the latter, who will then command,

1. *Column—forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. *March!*

1365. At the word *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs platoons, the whole will step forward smartly together.

1366. The soldiers will touch lightly the elbow towards the guide.

1367. The man of each platoon next the guide, shall always keep six inches from him, in order to avoid pushing him out of the direction; and will be also careful never to be more advanced than the guide.

1368. The leading guide will observe, with the greatest precision the length and cadence of the step march in the direction of the two points he has chosen between himself and the instructor, take, as he advances, and always before he arrives at the nearest point, new points, which must be exactly in the prolongation of the two first, and fifteen or twenty paces from each other; the captain will constantly march in the trace of the directing sergeant, keeping always six paces from him.

1369. The following guide will march, accurately, in the trace of the leading guide, observing to keep a distance equal to the front of his own platoon from him, maintaining the same step as that of the guide who precedes him.

1370. If the guide of the second platoon lose his distance, which can arise only from his own carelessness, he will regain it gradually, either by insensibly lengthening or shortening the step.

1371. If the guide of the second platoon, neglecting to follow exactly the trace of the first, should have thrown himself without the line of direction, he will remedy this fault by advancing more or less, the left shoulder, so as to regain the direction, gradually, by

line of direction of the guide on the pivot flank, is to have his right shoulder nearest to the head of the column.

1373. The leading guide will direct his march on the instructor or marker, placed at the turning point, so that his left arm shall lightly graze his breast, and when arrived nearly abreast of him the chief of platoon will command,

1. *Left turn.* 2. *MARCH!*

1374. The first command will be given when the guide is within two paces of the turning point.

1375. At the second word, to be given at the instant when the rank is to commence turning, the guide will turn to the left, (or right,) in marching, and without changing the cadence, or without lengthening or shortening the step, move forward in the new direction; the rest of the rank will quickly conform to the new direction of the guide; and, for this purpose, each man will advance the shoulder furthest from the guide, will turn the head and eyes to the flank the guide is on, touch the elbow of the next man towards the guide, placing himself on the same alignment with the guide, and then turn his head and eyes to the front. Each man arrives thus, *successively*, on the alignment of the guide.

1376. The guide of the first platoon having turned, will take points on the ground in the new direction.

1377. The second platoon will continue to march forward; its guide will execute what has been prescribed for the leading guide; and when arrived at the turning point, the second platoon will turn by the same commands and on the same principles as the first.

1378. In order to change direction on the reverse flank, (opposite the guide,) the instructor, after giving a caution to that effect to the chief of the first platoon, will immediately proceed to the point where the change of direction is to commence, or will detach a marker thither, placing himself on this marker as prescribed for changing direction on the pivot flank.

1379. The guide of the leading platoon will direct his march as prescribed, No. 1373, and when arrived within two paces of the wheeling point, the chief of platoon will command,

1. *Right wheel.* 2. *MARCH!*

1380 The first command shall be given, when the platoon is within two paces of the wheeling point.

1381. At the second word, the wheel will be executed as on a halted pivot, except that the touch of the elbows will be towards the marching flank; that the pivot man, in lieu of turning in his place, shall conform to the movement of the marching flank, feel lightly the elbow of the man next to him, take steps of seven inches, gain ground in advancing, and move on a part of the circumference of a small circle, so as to clear the wheeling point, the centre of the rank curving a little towards the rear.

1382. The wheel being effected, the chief of platoon will command,

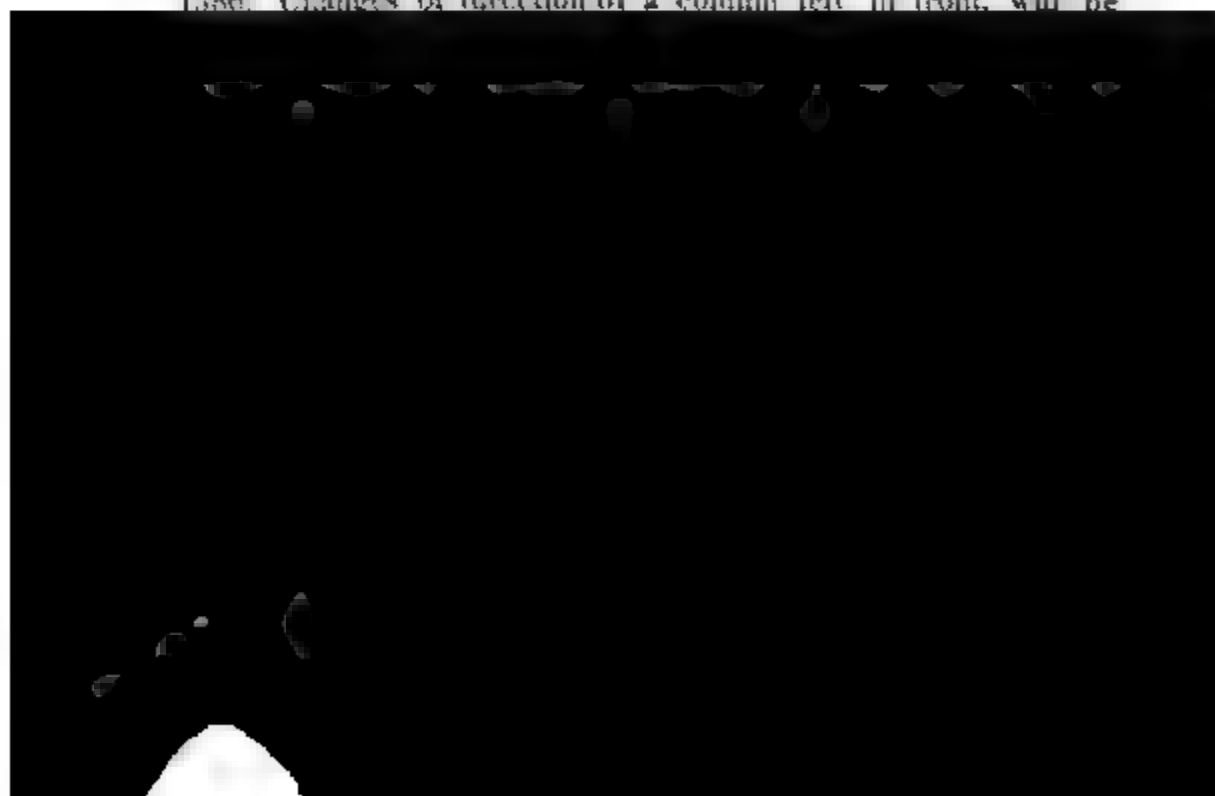
3. *Forward.* 4. *MARCH!*

1383. The first word will be pronounced two paces before the wheel is finished.

1384. At the second, to be given at the instant the wheel is effected, the man directing the marching flank, will move straight forward, and the pivot man, with the other men composing the rank, will resume the step of twenty-eight inches, directing the head to the front.

1385. The second platoon will continue to march straight forward, the guide observing to direct himself on the instructor, or marker; this platoon will wheel at the same point, and by the same commands and means as the first.

1386. Changes of direction of a column left in front, will be



To Form Line on the Right or Left, from Column at Full Distance.

1389. The company being in open column of platoons, right in front, to form on the right, the instructor will command,

1. *On right into line.* 2. *Guides right.*

1390. At the second command, the guide of each platoon will move quickly to the right flank of his platoon, and the soldiers will touch elbows towards the right; the column will continue to march forward.

1391. The instructor having given the second command, will move quickly to the point where the right of the company is to rest in line, and place himself there, facing to the left of the new line.

1392. The new line ought to be such, that each platoon, after having turned to the right, may have at least four paces to march, in order to arrive on the line.

1393. The head of the column having arrived nearly opposite the instructor, placed at the point of *appui*, (*support*;) the chief of the first platoon will command,

Right turn.

And when it shall be opposite, the instructor will add,

March!

1394. At the word *march*, the first platoon will turn to the right, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 1375, and then move forward; the guide will move along the new line till opposite one of the three files on the left of his platoon; he will face to the instructor, who will align him on the point of direction on the left; the captain will move at the same time, to the point where the right is to rest; each man on coming into line will halt and dress to the right.

1395. The second platoon will continue to march on until it arrives opposite to the left flank of the first, when, by command of its chief, it will turn to the right, and move up towards the line, conforming to what is already prescribed for the first platoon, the guide springing forward and placing himself on the line opposite to

1411. At this command, the men will carry their firelocks, sloped indifferently on either shoulder, or with either hand; the muzzle always up; they will no longer be required to march with the cadenced step, nor to keep silence; the files march at ease, but the ranks must never intermix, and the men of the front rank must never be further advanced to the front than the guide who is on the pivot flank; and the rear rank must keep at the distance of about two paces from the front rank.

1412. The column marching with the cadenced step, the instructor wishing it to march with the route step, will command,

1. *Route step.* 2. *March!*

1413. At the word *march*, the front rank will continue to march the step of twenty-eight inches; the rear rank will, in marching, take the distance of about two paces from the front rank; the instructor will then command *ease arms*, which will be executed, as just prescribed.

1414. The soldiers marching by the route step, the instructor will cause the direction to be changed on the pivot, or on the reverse flank, which will be executed without a *command*, and simply on a caution from the captain; the rear rank will change direction on the same ground as the front, conforming, though marching by the route step, to the principles prescribed for changing direction with closed ranks and cadenced step, with this difference, that in changes of direction on the reverse flank, the pivot man will take



arms, were the company marching with closed ranks and arms supported, at the command *halt*, arms would be carried. This rule is general, whatever may be the number of companies.

1418. In this school, the route step will be the same as in marching with ranks closed, in common time. In route marches, the approximation to the same rate will be as near as the roads will admit.

Diminishing and Increasing Front by Files.

1419. Files will be broken off from the pivot flank only. The company marching, and supposed to constitute a part of a column, right in front, and the instructor wishing to break off files, will give a caution to that effect, to the captain, who will immediately face to his company, and command,

1. *One file, from left to the rear.* 2. **MARCH!**

1420. At the command *march*, the first file on the left will mark time, and the company will continue to march forward; the man of the rear rank of that file, will move, so soon as the rear rank of the company shall have passed him, to the right, and will place himself in rear of the second file from the left; the man of the front rank will, likewise, move in rear of the first file, at the instant the rear of the company shall have passed him; each man will move to his place by advancing the left shoulder, taking great care not to lose distance.

1421. The instructor, wishing to break off another file, will give caution to that effect, to the captain, who will give the same commands as above.

1422. At the command *march*, from the captain, the file already broke off, advancing the left shoulder, will gain the space of one file to the right, shortening the step, in order to make room for the new file in its front; the new file will break off in the same manner as the first, and place itself between the company and the file first broken off.

1423. The instructor will thus be enabled to diminish, successively, the front of the company, by as many files as he may judge necessary.

1424. The file closers of the part of the company broken off, will arrange themselves opposite the files they cover in line.

1425. The instructor, to cause files in the rear to form up, will order the captain, successively, to effect this, by the following command,

1. *One file into line.* 2. *March!*

1426. At the word *march*, the front file of those broke off, will move up quickly to the front, and the files in the rear will, by bringing forward the right shoulder, incline the breadth of one file to the left.

1427. The captain, facing his company, will see that the movement is executed according to the prescribed principles.

1428. The instructor having thus caused files to break off, and form up, successively, one at a time, will cause two or three files to break off together; the named files will face inwards, mark time until disengaged from the company, and then, wheeling in file to the left, cover the two exterior files of the left flank.

1429. The instructor will then order the captain to cause two or three files at the same time to move to the front. To effect this, the captain will command,

1. *Two (or three) files into line.* 2. *March!*

1430. The named files will move up quickly over the shortest lines leading to their places, as above.



extend more than twelve paces. When the instructor wishes the extension to be at a greater or less interval than the habitual one, he will prefix to the command *extend*, the words, *four (ten or other) paces*.

1435. The extension will always take place from the point where the bugle sounds, or whence the command issues.

1436. The instructor, wishing the company to extend to the right, would repair to the left file, and command,

Right—EXTEND, (or Right — paces—EXTEND.)

1437. (PLATE 84, Fig. 4.) At this word (or it may be signal) the men except the left file, will face to the right, trail arms, and move in *double quick time*; the front rank man of the first file will immediately take up points in prolongation of the line, to which he will conform as far as the ground will admit; each file will follow the trace of that in front, halt, and front when at the requisite distance from that in rear. The rear rank man of each file will caution his front rank man, in an under tone, when to halt; and he will judge of the distance by casting his eye over the shoulder. It will thus, always be the duty (in extending in file) of the front rank man, to preserve the direction, and the rear rank man, the distance.

1438. If the extension were to be to the left, it would be effected by inverse commands and means.

1439. If, from the centre, or any central point, the instructor will repair thither, and command,

To the flanks—EXTEND! (or To the flanks — paces—EXTEND!)

1440. (PLATE 84, Fig. 3.) At the command, (or signal,) the files except that opposite the instructor, or bugle, will face outwards, conduct themselves as prescribed above.

1441. To extend in single rank, the instructor will command,

Right, (left, or to the flanks,) in single rank—EXTEND!

1442. At this command, the whole will face, as prescribed, and the rear rank men immediately, on the march, by a side step, cover their file leaders: the whole thus forming one rank. In this case, each man will regulate the distance of the one in his front, and caution him to *halt*, when at the prescribed number of paces.

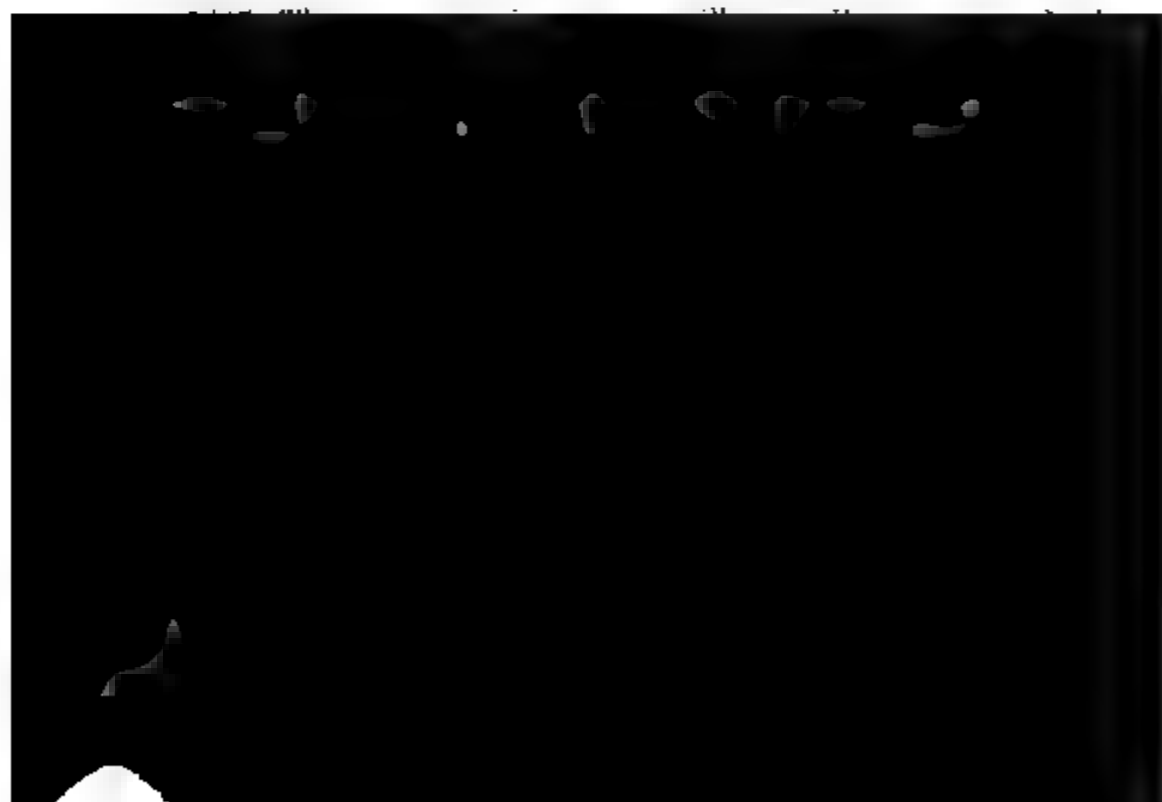
1443. In elementary instruction, the distance will be frequently varied, in order to accustom the men to judge accurately by the eye.

Supports and Reserves.

1444. Supports and reserves will be designated previous to extending, and the total of these will vary according to circumstances, a *platoon* or *section* for a company, as the ground may be more or less open or enclosed.

1445. (PLATE 84, Fig. 3;) When a company approaches the ground where it is to extend, it will *halt* with one section, or any other proportion of the company; this section, will constitute a *reserve*, and remain embodied at a convenient distance in rear of the line of skirmishers. The captain will designate the number and strength of the *supports*, each to be commanded by an officer, if practicable; these supports will advance with the sections to which they belong, about one hundred paces, and halt; the remainder of each section will continue to advance to about the same distance further to the front, whence, on a signal to that effect from the reserve, or a command from its own chief, take extended order. The captain will previously have designated the file from which the extension will be made.

1446. The *supports* will, by a movement to the right and left, place themselves opposite the centre of their respective lines of skirmishers, and remain embodied.



file they cover in close order; when extended, they are not to confine themselves to any spot, but will be in constant activity along the rear, within the limits of the ground, covered by their particular section or platoon.

1451. (PLATE 84, Fig. 3.) If the object be to mask the deployment of a column, or the movement of a line, the extension should brace such a space as to envelope the flanks of the party covered and the better to effect this, the flanks of the chain will be a thrown back; if the officers towards the flanks discover that obvious object is not attained by the specified distance, (altho no order to that effect may have been gi y will cause files at the extremities to ex one tow centre conform to the movement.

1452. When a party, in close advancing upon a given space, to select objects at the extremities or uns files, and equidistant for the centre file; to upon the above order, (or signal,) n upon the same points. In this manner the whole will be extending gradus they advance, and regulate their distances on the march; in case the reserve and supports will, from the commencement, conform to the movement of the line.

1453. The combined command, (or signal,) to advance and extend, will be given in the above case.

1454. If a company, marching in close order, find it necessary to retreat and extend, the combined command (or signal) would, in like manner, be given and executed.

To Fire in Extended Order.

1455. In extended order, on the signal being given to fire at a halt, whether in double or single rank, every man will take deliberate aim at his object, firing at will, as prescribed, No. 1257 to 1270, inclusive.

Advancing.

1456. 1st. At the command (or signal) for the whole line to fire advancing. The men of each file will keep together, preserving their distances and aligning themselves as accurately as may be,

in the direction from which the command is given, loading and firing as rapidly as is consistent with order and execution; the moment the man in front has fired, he will commence loading, and the other man of his file will pass to the front by the right.

1457. (PLATE 83.) When the command (or signal) is given to *advance and fire by ranks*. The front rank of each file will fire; the rear rank man will then move forward the designated number of paces, in the manner which will be prescribed, and fire at will: so soon as he has fired, the front rank man will advance again, the prescribed number of paces, and, in his turn, fire; and so on alternately.

Retiring.

1458. 1st. When ordered to *fire retiring* by the whole line. The men of each file will not separate; but face about, and fire deliberately at their object alternately, covering each other while loading, and then retiring together, with the line.

1459. 2d. On the signal to *fire retiring*, by *alternate ranks*. The man of the front rank will fire deliberately, and run to the rear by the left of the rear rank man, to the designated number of paces, and instantly load. When he has nearly accomplished this, the man of the other rank will fire so soon as an object presents itself, and run in like manner by the right, and to the designated number of paces, in rear of the other; and so on alternately.

1460. Firing, advancing, or retiring, in *single rank*, the odd and even files should advance alternately, preserving their distances of

be greater or less than the habitual one, in advancing or retiring, he will add, after the order to advance or retire (so many) paces, when each man, in advancing or retiring, will pass his file leader, the designated number of paces.

1463. In firing in extended order, the skirmishers will be governed by circumstances, and fire, *standing, kneeling, or lying*, as they may require, and take advantage of any object which presents itself to shelter the person; and for this they may advance a few paces, more or less.

1464. In occupying fences, or the edges of hills, whether in close or extended order, the line will always follow the direction of these objects, provided the salient angles are not too acute; but the men must be very careful to fire clear of each other.

1465. In relieving a line of skirmishers the men in the rear, out of reach of the enemy's fire, will run rapidly to the old line; each file of the former will pass in rear of the latter, so as to keep them out of the enemy's fire.

1466. If the relief is to take place when halted, each man of the old skirmishers will run straight to the rear, the instant that a new skirmisher reaches the line of defence; and whenever the former is out of reach of the enemy's fire, they will close in upon their supports; should an immediate advance be intended, the relieved skirmishers ought to remain in the line, if covered, instead of exposing themselves to a fire while retiring.

1467. If the relief take place while advancing, the new skirmishers will run up in the same way, and pass briskly in front of the others; the old skirmishers will lie down till they are out of the enemy's fire, after which they close upon their supports as before.

1468. If relieving, while retiring, the new skirmishers will extend a considerable distance in the rear, and each cover himself with an object, if practicable. The old line of skirmishers will retire gradually, until within twenty paces of the new; they will then run through the intervals, until out of reach of the enemy's fire, and close.

To Cease Firing.

1469. At the signal or command to *cease firing*, which will be

repeated, particularly in extended order, by every officer and file closer, every man will reload and maintain his position, if in his proper rank: if not in his proper rank, it will instantly be assumed, the men in the rear passing quickly to the front of their file leaders.

To Close.

1470. When the command or signal is given to *close*, all the files will face towards the point whence the signal is given, if in their own line, or if a file has been previously designated, on which to *close*, they will face towards it, and run in double quick time until they are closed. If the signal is sounded from the supports or reserve, and no file has been designated as above, they will close on the supports.

1471. As each file reaches the closing point, it will halt, shoulder arms, and align itself; if the close be upon the centre, the alignment will be on the centre; if to a flank, towards that flank. When the close is ordered, the rear man may be in front, in which case they will shift as they come on the line.

To Recall.

1472. The commander of a column wishing to recall his skirmishers, would cause *the recall* to be sounded, and this signal would be repeated by the bugle of the reserve; the extended line of skirmishers will instantly run in upon the supports, with them rapidly retreat to the reserve: then together with the latter retire to the column. Should the officer commanding the column wish to recall

To Incline.

1475. When the *incline* sounds, preceded by the signal to the right or left, each file will advance the reverse shoulder, and gain ground laterally, to the designated flank, preserving, carefully, his distance from the next file toward the point of inclination.

To Throw Forward a Flank.

1476. When the signal is sounded of left or right, and the *advance*, the men will advance the reverse shoulder, and gain to the front and flank; when the *advance* again sounds, they will resume the direct step. In obeying the above signal, the men will take shorter steps in proportion as they are near the pivot flank.

1477. By the above means, the front of a line of light troops may be changed.

1478. When a line of skirmishers, masking the movement of troops, is compelled to fall back, they will do it with perfect deliberation, disputing every inch of ground—when the *assembly* sounds, it is an evidence that the troops are prepared to act, and the skirmishers will unmask the front with the greatest despatch, re-assemble in rear of their respective corps, re-form, and take their positions in line, or such other position as may be designated.

Too Fast (or, Too Slow.)

1479. When this signal sounds, it will be answered by the bugles of the advanced or flanking parties, to whom it may be directed; the latter will obey the signal, and decrease or accelerate their rate of march accordingly.

*Signals.*1480. *Simple Signals.* (PLATES 85 to 88.)

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| No. 1. <i>To extend.</i> | No. 7. <i>To cease firing.</i> |
| 2. <i>To close.</i> | 8. <i>To annul.</i> |
| 3. <i>To advance.</i> | 9. <i>To relieve skirmishers.</i> |
| 4. <i>To halt.</i> | 10. <i>To recall.</i> |
| 5. <i>To retire.</i> | 11. <i>To assemble.</i> |
| 6. <i>To fire.</i> | 13. <i>Too fast.</i> |

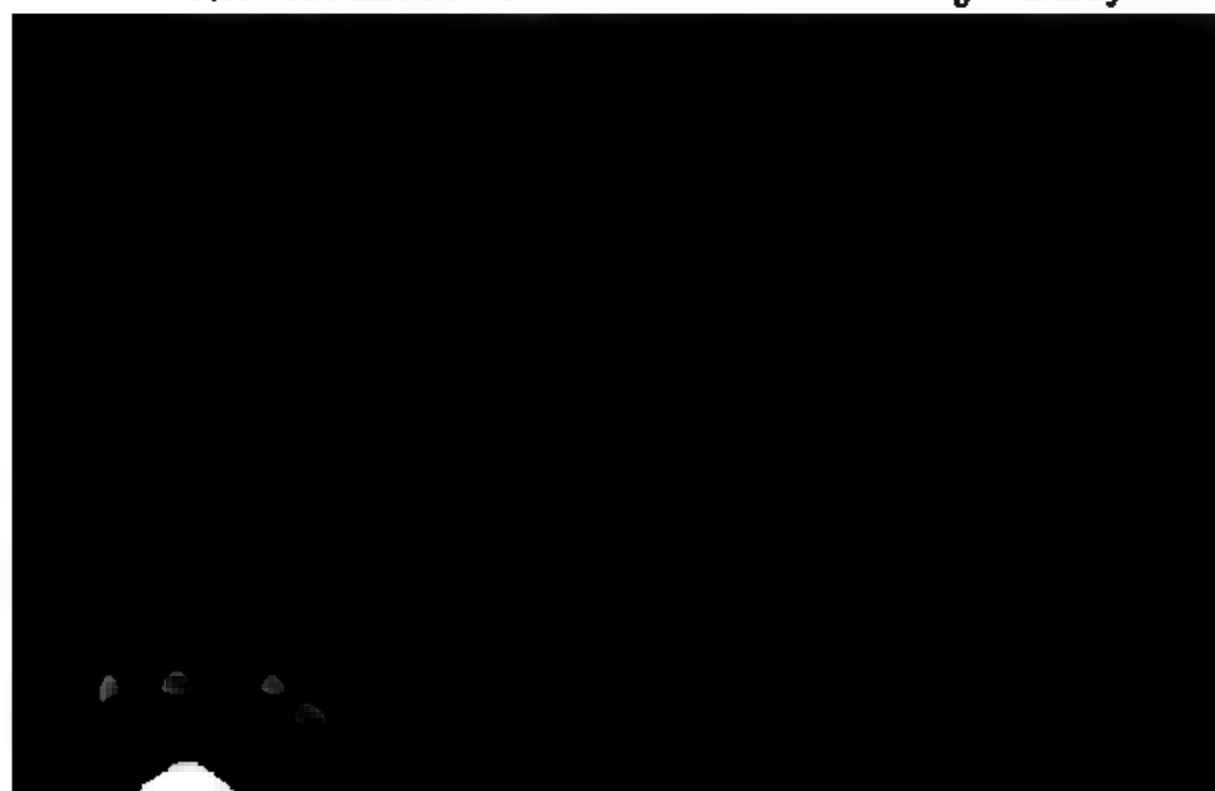
- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| No. 13. <i>Too slow.</i> | No. 17. <i>Centre.</i> |
| 14. <i>To incline.</i> | 18. <i>Double quick march.</i> |
| 15. <i>Right.</i> | 19. <i>Alternate ranks.</i> |
| 16. <i>Left.</i> | |

1481. The following combinations of the above signals will be required under various circumstances, viz.

- No. 1 and 15. *To extend from right.*
 1 and 16. *To extend from left.*
 1 and 17. *To extend from centre.*
 1 and 3. *To extend, advancing.*
 3 and 6. *To advance, firing.*
 2 and 5. *To close, retiring.*
 5 and 6. *To retire, firing.*
 7 and 3. *To cease firing and advance.*
 9 and 3. *To relieve, advancing.*
 9 and 5. *To relieve, retiring.*
 15 and 14. *To incline to the right.*
 16 and 3. *To throw forward the left.*
 15 and 3. *To throw forward the right.*
 3, 6 and 19. *To advance, firing, by alternate ranks.*
 16 and 13. *The left is too slow.*

BATTALION.

1482. The habitual order of battle of a battalion of light infantry



1485. At the first command, all the covering sergeants, as also the second sergeant in the rear rank, on the left of the battalion, will step to the rear, in order to mark off the new alignment for the rear rank, and will align themselves by the right, parallel to the rank of file closers.

1486. The lieutenant colonel will move to the right of the rank of covering sergeants, and see that it is correctly aligned, one pace from, and parallel to the rank of file closers.

1487. At the word *march*, the rear rank, as also the rank of file closers, will step back, in common time, without reckoning the number of steps; the men will pass a little beyond their rank, halt, and place themselves accurately on the alignment of the covering sergeants, who will take care to align them correctly in their intervals.

1488. The file closers will place themselves two paces in rear of the rear rank, and align themselves by their right. The lieutenant colonel, placed on the right of this rank, will align it on the file closer of the left, who will take care to place himself exactly two paces in rear of the rear rank, and to raise his firelock perpendicularly between his eyes.

1489. The colonel, seeing the ranks aligned, will command,

3. FRONT!

To Close Ranks.

1490. Having executed the manual exercise and loadings, the colonel will cause the ranks to close. To effect this, he will command,

1. *Rear rank, close order.* 2. *MARCH!*

1491. At the word *march*, the rear rank will close in common time, each man covering his file leader.

Firings.

1492. The colonel will cause the battalion to fire by company, by wing, by battalion, and by file, by the commands hereafter prescribed.

1493. The firing by company and by file, will always be direct to

the front; and the firings by wing or by battalion, may be direct or oblique.

1494. When the firing is to be oblique, the colonel must, each time, give the caution, *right oblique*, or *left oblique*, after the word *ready*, and previously to the word *aim*.

1495. Firing by company will be executed by the first and second companies of each grand division, alternately, as if each grand division were isolated; the first company will fire first; the captain of the second will not give the first command, until he sees one or two firelocks shouldered in the first, after loading; the captain of the first company, in his turn, will observe the same rule in regard to the second, the firing continuing thus, alternately.

1496. The colonel will regulate the firing by wing, in the same manner.

1497. The firing by file will commence in all the companies at the same time, and conformably to what is prescribed, No. 1242.

1498. The color guard will not fire, but remain shouldered during the firings.

1499. The colonel will cause the firing to cease by a roll followed by a tap of the drumstick; at the signal of the tap, the captains, covering sergeants, color-rank, and color-guard, will quickly resume their places in line.

1500. At the instant when the roll commences, the soldiers will execute what is prescribed, No. 1243, and all the officers and sergeants of the battalion will promptly repeat the words, *cease firing*.



To Fire by Company.

1504. To effect this, the colonel will command,

1. *Fire by company.* 2. *Commence firing.*

1505. At the first command, the captains and their covering sergeants will retire, as prescribed, Nos. 1235, 1236, and the lieutenant and sergeant on the left of the battalion will retire to the rank of file closers of the left company, the lieutenant covering the centre of the fourth section; the sergeant, the second file from the left from the same section. This rule will be general in all the firings.

1506. The color rank and the color guard will retire in such manner, that their front rank may be in the rear rank of the battalion.

1507. At the second command, the odd companies will commence firing; the captains will give the commands prescribed, No. 1237, taking care to add to the word *company*, the designation of *first*, *third*, *fifth*, or *seventh*, according to the number of each.

1508. The captains of the even companies will give, in their turn, the same commands, adding, likewise, the denomination of each company; and so on, alternately.

1509. In order that the odd companies, which commence the firing, may not fire all at once, the captains will observe, (but for the first fire only,) to give the word *fire*, one after another; thus, the captain of the third company will not give the words *aim*, and *fire*, till he has heard the fire of the first company; and the captain of the fifth will observe the same rule with respect to the third, as also the captain of the seventh, with respect to the fifth company.

To Fire by Wing.

1510. To effect this the colonel will command,

1. *Fire by wing.* 2. *Right wing.* 3. *READY!* 4. *Aim!* 5. *Fire!*
6. *Load!*

1511. The colonel will cause the wings to fire alternately, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 1496, in relation to the intervals, between the firings.

To Fire by Battalion.

1512. The colonel will command,

1. *Fire by battalion.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *READY!* 4. *AIM!* 5. *FIRE!*
6. *LOAD!*

To Fire by File.

1513. To effect this, the colonel will command,

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *READY!* 4. *Commence—FIRE!*

1514. In firing by wing, by battalion, and by file, the captains, at the first command from the colonel, will retire one pace in rear of the rear rank, each opposite his interval; and the covering sergeants will move, as in firing by company, into the rank of file closers, each covering his captain.

1515. The color rank and guard, will, at the same command, place themselves as prescribed, in firing by company.

To Fire to the Rear.

1516. To effect this, the colonel will command,

1. *Fire to the rear.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *About—FACE!*

1517. At the word *about*, the captains, covering sergeants, and file closers, will execute what is prescribed, Nos. 1249, 1250.

1518. The battalion thus faced to the rear, will execute the

1523. At the second command, the captains, covering sergeants, and file closers, will execute what is prescribed, Nos. 1254, 1255.

1524. A battalion of light infantry or riflemen, in close order, may be caused to fire *by battalion, by wing, by company, or by file*, by the commands and means prescribed above. But, the *fire by file, as in open order*, will always be conducted by each company, as prescribed, No. 1256, and following.

To March by a Flank.

1525. The colonel will sometimes exercise the battalion in marking time, and when it is confirmed in the cadence and length of the step in common time, he will change to quick time; he will also exercise the battalion in marching by a flank, and, to effect this, will command,

1. *Battalion.* 2. *Right—Face!* 3. *Forward—March!*

1526. At the second command, the captains and covering sergeants will place themselves, as prescribed, No. 1272. The lieutenant and sergeant on the left flank, face and march in their respective ranks.

1527. But, when the battalion marches by the left flank, the captains and covering sergeants will face and march in their respective ranks; the sergeant who was on the left of the line, will place himself in front of the front rank, and the lieutenant who was on the same flank, will place himself by the right side of this sergeant, to conduct the march.

1528. Whether the battalion march by the right or left, the lieutenant colonel will take post opposite the leading file, and the major opposite the colors; and both on the front rank side of the battalion, removed from it about six paces.

1529. At the third command, the battalion will step off smartly; the sergeant, placed in front of the leading file, will preserve the exact length and cadence of the step, and march straight forward.

1530. The lieutenant colonel and major will march always the same step as the head of the battalion, and these give the step to the battalion.

1531. The captains and file closers will vigilantly observe, that

the files neither open or crowd, and that they regain their distances, insensibly, should they have lost them.

1532. To wheel by file, the colonel will command,

1. *By file, right (or left.)* 2. MARCH!

1533. The files will wheel, conforming to the principles prescribed, No. 1279.

1534. The colonel will, in this lesson, cause the battalion to wheel to the right and left in such manner, that it may exhibit different divisions wheeling at the same time, some to the right, and some to the left, without any alteration of the step, or loss of the lock step.

1535. This lesson is one of the best that can be given to confirm the battalion in the cadence and lock step.

To Advance by the Right (or Left) of Companies.

1536. To effect this, the colonel will command,

1. *Advance by right of companies.* 2. *Battalion, right—FACE!*
3. MARCH!

1537. (PLATE 77.) At the second command, the battalion will face to the right; captains, first sergeants, and the rear rank man on the right of each company, will place themselves as prescribed, No. 1286, and following.

1538. At the word *march*, the whole will step off; the captain of the first company will move steadily, upon a line perpendicular to the ground line, the captain of the second, will conduct his company



1541. (PLATE 78.) At the second word, the battalion will face to the right, and each company conforms to what is prescribed, No. 1293.

1542. At the command *march*, the whole will step off; each captain aligning by the *proper* right, and conducting as prescribed above.

1543. The battalion may retire by the left, on the same principles.

To Advance by the Centre of Companies.

1544. The colonel will command,

1. *Advance by centre of companies.* 2. *Battalion, inwards—FACE!*
3. *MARCH!*

1545. At the second command, each company will conduct itself as prescribed for a single company, No. 1320, and following.

1546. At the word *march*, the whole will step off, as prescribed, No. 1321, captains carefully preserving distance from, and aligning by the right.

To Retire by the Centre of Companies.

1547. The colonel will command,

1. *Retire by centre of companies.* 2. *Battalion, inwards—FACE!*
3. *MARCH!*

1548. At the second command, each company will conform to what is prescribed for a single company, No. 1330, and following.

1549. At the third word, the whole will step off; preserving intervals and alignments as prescribed above.

Formations in Line, from File.

To the Front.

1550. The battalion advancing by the right of companies, to form line to the front, the colonel will command,

1. *Battalion, into line.* 2. *MARCH!*

1551. (PLATE 77.) At the second word, the leading front rank man

of each company will halt; each first sergeant will halt, face to the right, his right elbow pressed gently against the breast of the front rank man of the right file, and will carefully cover the guide in his front, on the alignment; the second sergeant of the left company will run up rapidly, and place himself on the line of guides, and near where the left of his company will rest. Each company will then conform to what is directed for a single company, Nos. 1307, 1308, and the captains, after correcting the alignment, will command, *Front*, and the colonel will command,

3. *Guides—Posts!*

1552. At this command, the guides will resume their places in line, passing, each through the interval of the captain nearest to them; the colonel will, from the right, judge of the accuracy of the alignment, causing it, if necessary, to be rectified by the captains. If the general guides be on the alignment, they would, in like manner, retire to their places in line, at the last command, the corporal in the front rank, who replaced the bearer of the regimental colors, stepping back to the rear rank at the same time.

1553. Advancing by the left of companies, the line would be formed by inverse means; the first sergeant of the right company, conducting himself as prescribed above, for the second sergeant of the left, and, together with all the second sergeants, acting as guides; captains who would have aligned their companies from the left, shifting to the right at the command, *Guides—Posts!*

1554. If necessary, the whole battalion would form as above on

On either Flank, or at any Angle forward of the original Line.

1556. The battalion, advancing by the right, left, or centre of companies, may be formed in line at any angle with the original line. For example, advancing by the right of companies, the colonel, to form line to the right, will command,

1. *Companies—Right!* 2. *Battalion, into Line.* 3. *March!*

1557. (PLATE 80.) At the first command, the captain of the first company will wheel by file to the right, at the angle prescribed by the colonel, who will have placed himself, or a field officer, at the wheeling point, for that purpose, when arrived at the point, where the right is to rest, (also indicated by a field or staff officer,) the captain will command, 1. *Into line.* 2. *March!* establish his right and left guides, and align his company. Each of the other captains will change direction, conducting his company in such manner, as, that it shall regain its parallelism with, and distance from the company on its right, at least the length of a company from, the line to be formed on, and thus each will arrive perpendicularly on the new line; the captain will then command, 1. *Into line.* 2. *March,* and each left guide will spring on the line, face towards its right, and cover the guides of the first company; the companies will conduct themselves, in the formation, as prescribed, No. 1551; the captain, after aligning his company, will command, 3. *Front!*

1558. When the manœuvre is completed, the colonel will command,

Guides—Post!

1559. The line may be formed by the same means *to the left*, the battalion advancing by the right of companies. In this case, each captain will recollect, that the space between the head of his own company and that of the company on his left, is to be occupied by his own men, instead of those of that company, as in the other case. The right guide will halt on the line facing to its left, and the captain will spring to the left to align.

1560. In like manner, the new line (at any angle in advance of the original line) may be formed on the same principles, when advancing by the left or centre of companies.

Faced to the Rear of the March, Retiring.

1561. The battalion, retiring by the right of companies, will form line faced to their (then) rear, and parallel to the original front. On arriving where the new line is to be formed, the colonel will command,

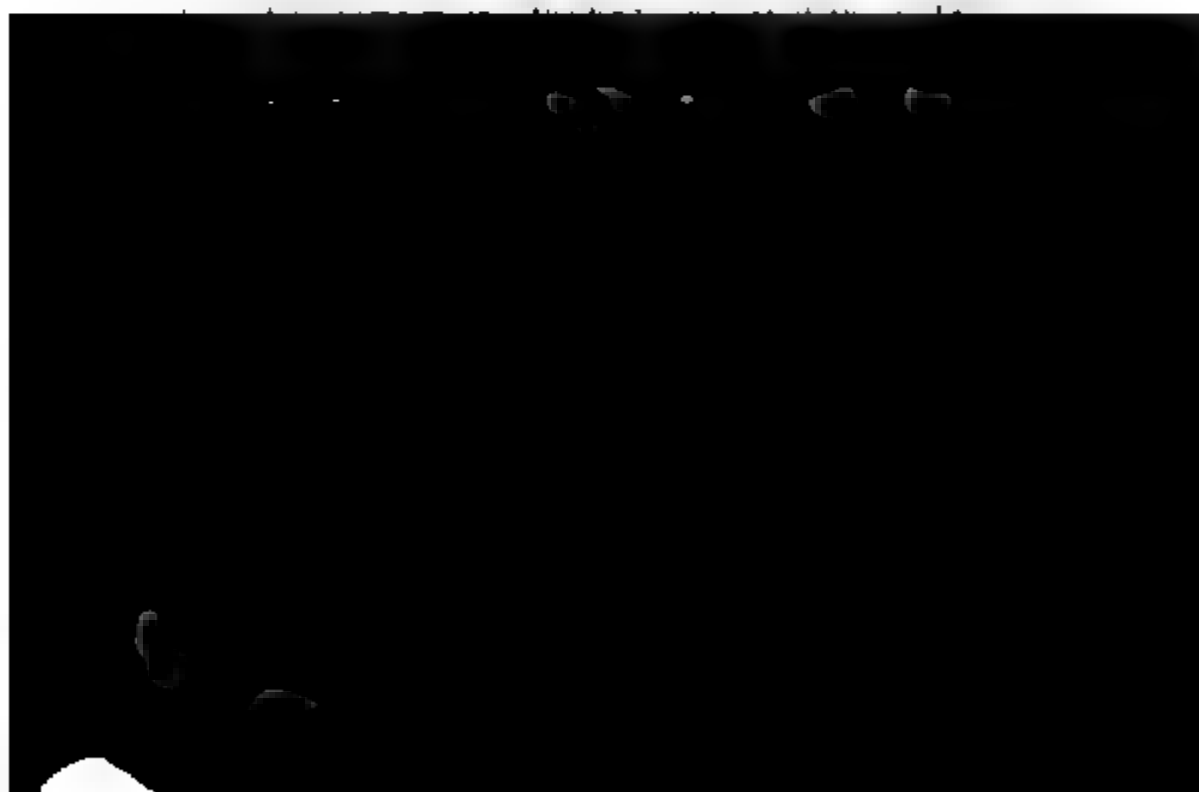
1. *Battalion, rear into line.* 2. *MARCH!*

1562. At the second command, the leading file of the front rank of each company, will face to the left-about; the covering sergeant will step quickly in his front, face to the left, and touch the breast of the former with his right elbow; each captain will quickly assume his post on the right to align his company, and each rear rank man of the right file, will spring to the left-about, covering his file leader, and facing to the new front: the remaining files of each company will run by the shortest space to their places in the new line, cross that line, face to the left-about, each in his proper rank, and quickly align by the right; the second sergeant of the left company will cover on the line of guides, conforming to what has been prescribed; each captain, seeing the alignment of his company complete, will command, *FRONT!*

The colonel will then command,

Guides—Posts!

1563. Retiring by the left of companies, the line would be formed



tiring by the right; as will also the second sergeant of the left company, the remaining files conform to what is prescribed for those of a single company, No. 1334.

On either Flank, Retiring, at any Angle in Rear of the original Line.

1566. Retiring by the right, left, or centre of companies, the battalion may form line at any angle with, and in rear of the original line. If (for instance) retiring by the right, the formation were to be on the left, and fronting towards the right of their then direction, the colonel would command,

1. *Companies left.* 2. *Battalion, rear into line.* 3. **MARCH!**

1567. (PLATE 78.) At the first command, the captain of the first company will cause it to wheel by file, to the left, at the angle prescribed by the colonel, who will have placed himself, or a field officer, at the wheeling point for that purpose; when arrived at the point, where the right is to rest, (which the colonel will also have caused to be indicated,) the captain will command, 1. *Rear into line!* 2. **MARCH!** and the company will conform to what is prescribed, No. 1315, and following; the right and left guides will place themselves on the line, and the company will align itself by the right. Each of the other captains will change direction to the left, conducting his company in such manner, that it shall regain its parallelism with, and distance from the company which preceded it, at least the length of a company, before arriving at the new line, on which line each company will then arrive perpendicularly: each captain will, on arriving, command, 1. *Rear into line.* 2. **MARCH!** the left guides will quickly cover on the line, the guides of the first company; and the companies will conduct themselves as prescribed, No. 1315, and following; after the word **FRONT**, by the captain, the colonel will command,

Guides—Posts!

1568. On the same principles, but by inverse means, the line may be formed (when the battalion is retiring by the right) on the right and faced to the left of the line of direction.

1569. In like manner, the new line may be formed on the same principles, when retiring by the left or centre of companies.

1570. Lastly, if retiring thus it were necessary to form the line on either flank, but faced *outwards*, the colonel would command,

1. *Companies left (or right.)* 2. *Battalion, by inversion, into line.*
3. *MARCH!*

When the companies would form on the above principles by *inversion*.

Different Methods of Forming Open Column.

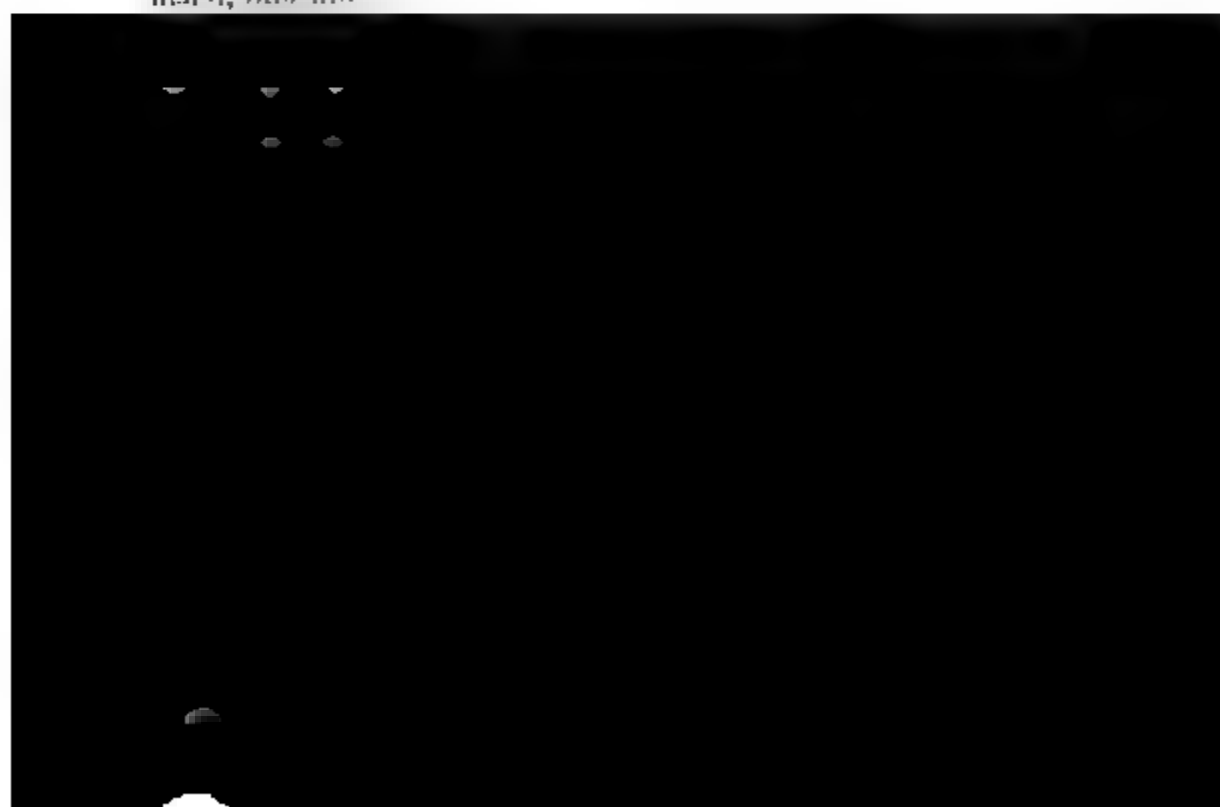
1571. A battalion of light infantry or riflemen, (like infantry of the line,) will break habitually into column of companies, though, should it be deemed necessary, the principles which govern in the following manœuvres, will be applied in forming column of platoons or sections. In this latter case, chiefs of divisions would conform to what is prescribed for them, No. 1352, and following.

To Break into Column.

1572. The battalion aligned, and the colonel wishing it to break into column of companies, right in front, will command,

1. *Column of companies to the right.* 2. *Battalion, right—FACE!*
3. *MARCH!*

1573. At the second command, the whole will face to the right; each captain will step one pace forward, face to the left, and command, *into line*



1577. At the first word, the captains will place themselves in front of the centre of their respective companies, and caution them to face to the right.

1578. At the second, the battalion will face; each captain will move quickly to the right of his company, causing the two files on the right to disengage to the rear, the front file to its right the breadth of two ranks; the second file, advancing only the left shoulder; which, being effected, each captain will move opposite the left file of the company, immediately on his right, placing himself so as to press lightly his breast against the left arm of the front rank man of that file; the captain of the company on the right of the battalion, will place himself in the same manner, as if there were a company on his right, aligning himself on the other captains; each covering sergeant will move at the same time to the rear of his company, and place himself in front of the front rank man of the first file, to conduct it.

1579. At the word *march*, the first file of each company will wheel to the right; the covering sergeant conducting it, perpendicularly to the rear; the following files will wheel, successively, on the same ground; the captains will not move, observing their companies file before them; and at the instant the last file shall have wheeled, will command,

1. *Company.* 2. **HALT!**

When the company will halt, front, and dress to the left.

1580. At the instant the company fronts, the guide of the left will place himself opposite the captain, against whose breast he will press his left arm, lightly.

1581. The captain will direct the alignment so that the position of the company may be perpendicular to that it occupied in line; for this purpose he will move about two paces without the flank, the better to ascertain the direction.

1582. The company being aligned, the captain will command, **FRONT**, and place himself in front of its centre. This will be a general rule.

1583. To file into column, left in front, the colonel will give the same commands as above, substituting *left* for *right*.

1584. The movement is executed on the same principles, but by

inverse means; the captain shifting to his left, and the guide of the left placing himself in position to lead, when the two files break to the rear.

By Filing in Front, or Rear of the Company, on either Flank, or on any other Company.

1585. To form open column of companies, right in front, on any named company, the colonel will command,

1. *Open column of companies, right in front, on second company.*
2. *Battalion, inwards—Fack.* 3. *March!*

1586. At the first command, each captain will place himself in front of his company to command it.

1587. At the second, the captain of the second company will caution it to stand fast.

1588. The captain of the first company will caution his company to face to the left; the captain of each company on the left of the second, will caution his company to face to the right.

1589. At the third command, the first company will face to the left; the captain of this company will step quickly to its left, causing the two files on the left to disengage to the front; which being executed, the guide of the left of the company will place himself in front of the front rank man of the first file, in order to lead it.

1590. The companies on the left of the second company will face to the right; the captain of each will step quickly to the right of his company, and the guide of the first company will step to the right of the guide of the second company, and so on, until the whole is in line.

will step off together, to take their places in the column; the first will gain, by wheeling by file to the front, the space which is to separate it from the second in the column, and enter the column parallel to the second company.

1594. The third company will gain, by wheeling by file to the rear, the space which is to separate it from the second, directing itself in such manner as to enter the column, parallel to the second company: the other companies will enter the column parallel to the second, at the distance which is to separate them from the company immediately in their front.

1595. The captain of the first company will halt his company, the instant before his guide of the left arrives opposite to the guide of the left of the *directing company*, by the command,

1. *First company.* 2. **HALT!**

1596. At the second word, the company will halt, front, and dress to the left; its guide of the left will immediately face to the rear, placing himself quickly, so as to cover the guide on the left of the *company of direction*.

1597. The chief of the first company will move two paces outside of the guide, and direct the alignment, so that his company may be established parallel to that of direction; which being executed, he will command, **FRONT!** and place himself two paces in front of the centre of his company.

1598. The chief of each company which is to take its place in the column, in the rear of that of direction, will conduct his company till it arrives opposite to the guide of the left of the company of direction; he will then halt in his own person; allowing his company to file past him; and at the instant the last file shall have past him, he will halt his company by the commands prescribed, No.

1595, substituting for *first*, the designation of his own company; the guide of the left shall place himself, quickly, in the line of direction of the flank; the captain having aligned his company as in No. 1597, will command, **FRONT!** placing himself two paces in front of the centre of his grand division.

1599. If any chief of a company find that his company has not its true distance, he will not attempt to correct it, but will cause it to remain in its place, in order to avoid extending the error. This

fault will necessarily arise, should the guides not be prompt and accurate in taking their places.

1600. The manoeuvre being completed, the colonel will command,

Guide, about—FACE!

1601. At this word, the guide facing to the rear, will front.

1602. The colonel will superintend the general execution of the movement, and cause the prescribed principles to be observed.

1603. The lieutenant colonel will place himself in front of, and facing the guide of the left of the grand division of direction. He will, if necessary, rectify the position of the guide of the grand division in front of that of direction.

1604. The major performs the same duty from the rear of the column, with respect to the guides in rear of the grand division of direction.

1605. The column would be formed on any other company of the battalion, according to the above principles.

1606. A column, left in front, may be formed on similar principles, but by inverse means.

March in Column at Full Distance.

1607. When the colonel intends to put the column in march, he will point out to the leading guide two distinct objects, in front, in the line of direction; the guide will immediately face towards these objects, taking as a point of sight, the more remote, and

1. *Column—forward.* 2. *Guides—left (or right.)* 3. **MARCH!**

1611. By marching always on the prolongation of the two points established, the leading guide is enabled to move correctly, on the line of direction; if these points be objects elevated above the level of the ground; he is certain of being in the true direction, when the nearest point masks the most distant.

1612. The following guides will maintain the exact step and distance, marching, each, in the path of the guide immediately preceding him, without attending to the general direction.

1613. The lieutenant colonel will be near the leading guide, to see that he does not deviate from the direction, and that the guide of the second division marches exactly in the trace of the first.

1614. The major will post himself near the guide of the rear division, and should any of the intermediate guides deviate, sensibly, from the line of direction, he will rectify that error, and prevent its being communicated; but such correction will only take place when it may be necessary to prevent considerable deviations.

1615. The colonel will habitually be on the pivot flank, and see that the step, the distance, and all the principles of marching in column, as prescribed in the *School of the Company*, are observed.

1616. These means, which the practice of the *School of the Company* must have rendered familiar, will enable a column to march in a given direction, with sufficient accuracy to form line *to the front*, or *faced to the rear*; or, *on the right or left*; or to form close, from open column.

1617. But when a column, arriving in front or rear of a line, is to prolong that line, in order to wheel up to the *left*, or *right*, into it, it is essential that such column should neither intersect, or deviate sensibly from the new line. To ensure this, the following means will be employed:

1618. If the column, right in front, arrive in front of the line, the guide of the leading division will direct his march on the intermediate point, previously established on that line, in order to indicate the point where the column is to turn to the left, and prolong the new direction; the chief of the leading division will

not cause it to turn till it has passed four paces beyond the line; and at the instant it has turned, the *general guide* of the right will place himself on the line opposite this division, face to the two points of direction in front, which the colonel and lieutenant colonel will point out to him, and march, correctly, on the prolongation of those points.

1619. The bearer of the *regimental colors* will place himself in the same manner, at the instant the color division has turned; and will march on the line opposite his division, observing to carry the colors perpendicularly before the middle of his body, and to march exactly in the direction of the *general guide*, who precedes him, and of the point of sight in front; which will be indicated to him.

1620. Finally, the *general guide* of the left will place himself also on the line, at the instant the rear division shall have turned, and march, accurately, in the direction of the *regimental colors*, and *general guide* of the right, who precede him.

1621. The guide of the leading division will always march opposite the *general guide* of the right, and about four paces inside of him; the guides of the following divisions will each march in the trace of the guide who immediately precedes, as prescribed, No. 1612.

1622. The colonel placed on the flank, outside of the *general guides*, will see that the column marches nearly parallel to, and about four paces inside of, the line of the *general guides*.

1623. The lieutenant colonel and major will see that the *general guides* march, correctly, in the direction of the two points in front

the false direction of one battalion may not influence those which follow.

1626. If the column, right in front, arrive in rear of the line, the commander of the column, or the colonel of the leading battalion will conduct the guide of the left (the pivot flank,) of the leading division not on the intermediate point situated on that line, but more to the left by at least the whole front of the division, ordering it to wheel to the right, in such manner that, when the wheel is finished, the guide may be four paces within the intermediate point.

1627. At the instant the leading division, having wheeled to the right, shall commence marching parallel to the line, the *general guide* of the right will place himself on the line, directing himself on the two points in front; the color bearer will also place himself on the line, when his division has wheeled; and, lastly, the *general guide* of the left, after the rear division has wheeled.

1628. If the column be composed of several battalions, the *general guides* of the other battalions will, successively, execute what has just been prescribed for those of the leading battalion; the colonel, lieutenant colonel, major, general guides, and guides of divisions of each battalion, conforming to what has been prescribed above, for a column arriving in front of the line.

1629. These movements will be executed in a column, left in front, and arriving in front or in rear of the line, on the same principles, by inverse means.

1630. If, lastly, the column, instead of arriving in front or in rear of line, should arrive on the right or left of it, and was to prolong that line, in order to wheel up afterwards, to the *left* or *right*, into line, the colonel would order the *general guides* to the flank of the column, by the command, *general guides on the line*; when these guides would prolong the line, as prescribed above.

1631. If, instead of causing the column to march with the cadenced step, the colonel wish it to march with the route step, the word *march*, would be preceded by *route step*.

1632. All that is prescribed above, for maintaining the direction, is equally applicable to a column, marching with the route step.

To Change Direction in Column at Full Distance.

1633. The colonel, wishing the column to change direction, will

caution, to that effect, the chief of the leading division, and repair in his own person to the spot where the movement is to commence; he will place himself there, whether the change of direction be on the pivot or reverse flank, and remain in that position till the rear division of his battalion arrives.

1634. The guide of each division will direct himself so as to pass before, and close to the head of the horse of the colonel; and when there, the chief of the division will cause his division to change direction, according to the principles, and by the commands, prescribed, No. 1372, and following.

1635. When the column changes direction on the reverse flank, the colonel will observe that the guide moves accurately on the arc of the circle.

1636. When there is no distinct object in the new direction, to serve as a point of view to the guide of the leading division, the lieutenant colonel will move, beforehand, thirty or forty paces to the front, and the leading guide, as soon as he has turned, will take points on the ground, in the line passing from himself between the heels of the lieutenant colonel, who will face towards him; this leading guide will assume new points as he advances.

1637. The major will see that the guides conduct their march on the colonel, placed at the wheeling point, so as to graze the head of his horse.

1638. In a column of several battalions, the colonel of the second will post himself at the wheeling point, at the moment the colonel of the first battalion commences the wheeling movement; he will then

column will halt; no guide will move, although he be not at his proper distance, nor on the line of the guides preceding him.

1641. The column being halted, if the colonel wish to form line, he will place himself a little in front of the leading guide, and face towards him; the latter and the following guide will fix their eyes on the colonel, in order to conform readily to the direction he may indicate to them.

1642. Should the colonel judge it necessary to place the guide on a general line of direction, he will place the two first on the line and immediately command,

Guides, on the line.

1643. At this command, all the other guides will
the two first, precisely at wheel
colonel will verify their position

Left (or

1644. At this command, each company
guide, by closing to the left; the captains
paces without their guides, promptly
nies parallel to that immediately
FRONT, stepping quickly to their places in column.

1645. Should the colonel deem it unnecessary to establish the guides on a general line, he need only rectify the position of those too much within or without the line of direction, by commanding, *Guide of such company, (or of such companies,) to your right, or to your left;* at this, the guides named will place themselves on the line of direction, all the other guides standing fast.

1646. If, finally, the general guides were marching on the flank of the column, the colonel, having halted it, would place himself in rear of the color bearer, to ascertain whether he and the leading general guide are accurately on the prolongation of the two points in front on which they marched; if not on this line, the colonel will place them on it; the major, in like manner, will ascertain, and rectify, if necessary, the position of the general guide of the rear, which being accomplished, the colonel will command,

Guides on the line.

1647. At this, each guide on the pivot flank shall step quickly on the line of the general guides, facing towards the head of the column; the lieutenant colonel, in front of the leading general guide, towards whom he faces, and the major, placed in rear of the general guide of the rear, shall promptly align the guides of divisions. If the general guides occupy the places where the left of the divisions, opposite to them respectively, are to rest, when dressed to that flank, (which is supposed in Nos. 1618, and following,) the particular guides of these three divisions would not place themselves on the alignment, but, would, on the next command, (below,) fall back momentarily to the rank of file closers.

1648. The colonel, having verified the position of the guides, will command,

Left (or right)—DRESS.

1649. At this command, all the companies will incline to their respective guides, and will be promptly aligned by their chiefs, who, for this purpose, will place themselves two paces outside of their respective guides.

To Close to Half Distance, or to Form Close from Open Column.

1650. The battalion in column of companies, at full distance, would be closed to half distance, by the following commands from the colonel:



1653. At the instant each company halts, the guide of the left, if the right be in front, or the guide of the right, if the left be in front, will quickly 'place himself on the line of the preceding guides; the captain will move two paces outside of his guide, and command, *Left (or right)*—*DESSA*.

1654. The company being aligned, the captain will order *FRONT*, moving two paces in front of the centre of his company.

1655. The direction of the guides, previous to the halt, need not be particularly attended to, it being sufficient that each marches in the trace of the preceding guide.

1656. The colonel, on the pivot flank of the column, superintends the execution of the movement, observing that the captains halt their companies at half distance.

1657. The lieutenant colonel will post himself some paces in front of the leading company, facing to its guide on the pivot flank; and carefully rectify the position of each guide, as each places himself on the line of direction.

1658. The major near the flank of the rear company, will follow the movement.

1659. To form close column, the colonel will order,

1. *Column, close to the front.* 2. *MARCH!*

1660. The captains will conform to all that has been prescribed above, excepting that they are not to halt their companies till within three paces of the preceding one; the file closers shall close up one pace to their respective companies, at the word *Left (or right)*—*DESSA*, given to each company. This rule shall be invariable for file closers in close column.

To Form Open from Close Column.

1661. To form open column, the colonel will halt the column, and command,

Column take wheeling distance!

1662. He will order the captain of the leading company to put it in march; the captain will immediately command,

1. *Company, forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. *MARCH!*

1663. The captain of the second company, perceiving that it is nearly at its proper distance, will command, *company forward—guide left*, and then *MARCH*, at the moment he sees his company at the proper distance from the first; this will be executed successively, by the companies to the rear of the column, each taking up the step from the one preceding.

Countermarch.

1664. If the column be at full or half distance, the countermarch will be executed by the commands and means, prescribed in the *School of the Company*, the colonel substituting *battalion* for *company*, and each captain will put, before the caution *company*, which precedes *halt*, the appellation of *first*, *second*, &c., according to the number of his company.

1665. To countermarch the close column, the following means will be employed.

1666. The close column being supposed formed of grand divisions, right in front, the colonel will command,

1. *Countermarch.* 2. *Column, right—FACE!* 3. *Even grand divisions, forward.* 4. *MARCH!*

1667. At the second command, the whole column will face to the right; the chiefs of grand divisions will each move to the side of his guide of the right; the guide of the left of each grand division, will face to the right about.

1668. At the third command, the even grand divisions will march by

side of it, will continue to march on, till in their respective places in the column.

1671. Each grand division having arrived nearly opposite to its guide of the left, its chief will command,

1. *Such a grand division.* 2. **HALT!**

1672. At this command, the grand division will halt, front, move up to its guide of the left, and dress; its chief will direct the alignment perpendicular to the line of the guides; which being executed, he will order **FRONT!** and move in front to the centre of his grand division; the guide of the left, placed on the line of direction, will move to the left of the grand division; and the guide of the right will occupy the place just left by the other guide.

1673. The countermarch, left in front, will be executed on the same principles; in this case, as in the preceding, the even grand divisions will lead out and countermarch outside of the column.

1674. When in column of grand divisions, the flank companies, if united in front, will be considered an even grand division, and odd if in the rear. The same principle will be applied to the flank companies in column of companies. Were the close column formed of companies, instead of grand divisions, the even companies would march out to accomplish the countermarch, on the outside of the column.

1675. The colonel, on the pivot flank, superintends the general execution of the movement. The countermarch being executed, the lieutenant colonel will post himself near the rear grand division, now become the front, and the major, near the front grand division, now become the rear.

Different Methods of Forming Line from Column. To the Left.

1676. The column of companies, halted right in front, the colonel, wishing it to form on a line passing through the left flank, will command,

1. *Left into line.* 2. *Column, left—FACE.* 3. **MARCH!**

1677. At the second command, the whole, except the left guides, who will stand fast, will face to the left.

1678. Each captain will instantly proceed to the point where

the right will rest, placing himself by the left man of the company on his right, and thence align his company: the left man of the front rank of each company will stand fast, and the rear rank man will cover him by a side step to the right; the remaining files will throw forward the left shoulder, move over the shortest space to the new line, and dress by the right.

1679. The captain will then command *Front*, and the colonel,

Guides—Posts.

1680. A column, left in front, would form on a line passing through the right flank, by inverse commands and means.

1681. Lastly, were it necessary to form line to the right flank, from a halted column, right in front, it would be done by *inversion*; the colonel commanding,

1. *By inversion, right into line.* 2. *Column right—Face.*

3. *March!*

1682. The companies will face to the right, and on the command *march*, advance the right shoulder, and with the guides and captains, form line by *inversion* on the above principles.

1683. The column, left in front, would also form line by *inversion*, by inverse commands and means.

To form Line on the Right, from Column Right in Front.

1684. When the column at full distance, right in front, is to form line on the right, the colonel will beforehand point out to



1687. At the second command, the men will touch elbows towards the right; the guide of the right of the leading company will march straight forward to the point where this company is to turn to the right.

1688. The following guides will march in the trace of the guide who precedes them.

1689. The leading company having arrived nearly opposite the first marker, its captain will command,

Right turn.

1690. And when the company has its right precisely opposite the marker, he will add,

MARCH!

1691. At the word *march*, the company will turn to the right, and the guide of the right will direct his march so as to conduct the man next to him against the marker of the right.

1692. The company being arrived near the two markers, its captain will promptly command,

1. *Company.* 2. **HALT!**

1693. At the second command, the company will halt, and align itself; the two front rank men who are opposite the markers, will press their breasts lightly against their right arms, respectively: the guide of the left will retire to the rank of file closers; the captain will move to the right of his front rank, and direct the alignment on the two men whose breasts touch the right arms of the markers; this rule will be general in all successive formations.

1694. The second company will continue to march straight forward, and when arrived opposite the left flank of the first, it will turn to the right, by command of its captain, as above, marching afterwards towards the line; the guide of the right will conduct the march so as to arrive by the side of the left hand man of the first company.

1695. When the company shall have arrived within two paces of the line, the captain will halt it, as prescribed above, and move quickly to the left of the first company, aligning himself accurately on the front rank of that company.

1696. The guide of the left will, at the same time, move to the front of one of the three files on the left of his company; and facing to the right, place himself in the line of the two markers of the first company.

1697. The second company will move up to the line, and the captain will direct the alignment on the man of his front rank, whose breast presses lightly against the right arm of his guide of the left.

1698. The succeeding companies will arrive thus, one after the other, into line, conforming to what is prescribed for the second company; and when the whole battalion is correctly in line, the colonel will command,

Guides—Posts!

1699. At this command, the guides will retire to their places in line, and the markers in front of the first company, will also retire; the same will take place after all formations in line; the guides will always pass through the interval of the nearest captain.

1700. The colonel will follow up the successive formation along the front of the line, and always opposite to the company about to turn, in order to move up to the line; whence he can best see and rectify any error arising from a command given too soon, or too late, to the preceding company.

1701. The lieutenant colonel will, with the utmost care, rectify the position of the guides as they arrive on the line, placing himself, for this purpose, some paces in rear of them on the line: this rule will be repeated in all successive formations.

right and left guides of this company place themselves in its front, facing to the right, opposite the exterior files; the other companies face to the left, captains taking post on the right of their respective guides of the left.

1705. At the third word, all the companies, except the first, leading by the left, will move towards the point on the line where their left is to rest, and, advancing, for at least the length of a company, perpendicular to the new line, as prescribed, No. 1557. When arrived to within two paces of the line, the captain will command, 1. *Into line.* 2. **MARCH!**

1706. At the second word the leading file will halt, the rear rank man of this file covering his file leader by a side step; the guide of the left will step on the line, face to the right, and align himself on the guides in front; the captain will spring to the point where the right will rest, align his company, and command, 3. **FRONT:**—each file will advance the left shoulder, move up to the line, and dress by the right.

1707. When the line is formed, the colonel will command,

Guides—Posts.

1708. To form in line faced to the front on the rear company, the colonel will command,

1. *Into line on rear company, faced to the front.* 2. *Column, right—FACE!* 3. **MARCH!**

1709. At the second command, the rear company stands fast; its right and left guides will take post on its front—the remaining companies will face to the right, and their captains and covering sergeants will place themselves as prescribed to lead by the right flank.

1710. At the third word, the whole, except the rear company, will step off; each captain will conduct his company towards the rear, and over the shortest space to where its right will rest in the new line, and when the first file crosses that line, command, 1. *Rear, into line.* 2. **MARCH!**

1711. The captain will then spring to the left of his company, and place himself to align it.

1712. At the command **MARCH**, the company will conform to

what is prescribed, No. 1315, and following, for a single company, and then dress by the left: the first sergeant will quickly place himself on the line of guides facing to its left, and opposite one of the three right files of his company; the captain, after aligning his company by the left, will command, 3. **FRONT.**

1713. The colonel will then order,

Guides—Posts.

1714. The column, right in front, may also form line facing to the front on any central company. For example, right in front, the colonel wishing to form line, thus, on the fourth company, will command,

1. *Into line on fourth company, faced to the front.* 2. *Column, outwards—FACE.* 3. **MARCH!**

1715. (PLATE 79.) At the second command, the fourth company will stand fast, and its right and left guides move quickly to the front; the captain will place himself on its right. The companies in front of the designated company will face to the right, and those in rear to the left; captains and sergeants will post themselves to lead, those of the former by the right and those of the latter by the left flank.

1716. At the command *march*, the whole will step off together, the front companies, by the right, inclining their heads to the rear, and, together with their captains, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 1710, and following. The captains in rear of the



on the first, the rear, or any central company, on the same principles, but by inverse means.

Faced to the Rear on any Company.

1720. The battalion in column, right in front, to form line faced to the rear, on the leading company, the colonel will command,

1. *Into line on first company, faced to the rear.* 2. *Column right—*
FACE. 3. MARCH!

1721. At the first command, the captain of the first company will rapidly countermarch his company, establish its two guides in front, and post himself on its right.

1722. At the second, the other companies will face to the right, and their captains will place themselves to lead their companies by the right flank.

1723. At the word *march*, each company will be conducted by its captain towards the new line (on which it is to arrive perpendicular) the leading file will cross the point where the right is to rest in line, and the captain will instantly command, 1. *Rear into line.* 2. MARCH! and place himself on the right to align his company.

1724. At the word *march*, from the captain, the left guide will spring on the line, face to the right of the line, and cover the guides in his front, each file will advance the left shoulder, and conform to what is prescribed, No. 1315, and following.

1725. Captains, after completing the alignment, will command, FACE!

1726. On which the colonel will command,

Guides—Posts!

1727. The column, right in front, to form in line on the rear company, faced to the rear, the colonel will command,

1. *Into line on rear company, faced to the rear.* 2. *Column, left—*
FACE! 3. MARCH!

1728. At the first command, the rear company will be rapidly countermarched by its captain, who will promptly establish the right and left guides in its front, and take his post on the left of his company.

1729. At the second, the other companies will face to the left and their captains will place themselves by the side of their guides of the left.

1730. At the word *march*, each company, led by its captain by the left flank, will gradually change direction to the rear, and approach the line at right angles, and at the point where the left will rest; when arrived within one pace of the line, captains will command, 1. *Into line*. 2. *March*! The guide of the right will run up rapidly to the line, and face to the left of the line, covering the guides in his front; each file will advance the left shoulder, move up to the line, and dress by the left; the captain who has placed himself on the left, will correct the alignment of each file as it arrives on the line, and add, 3. *Part*!

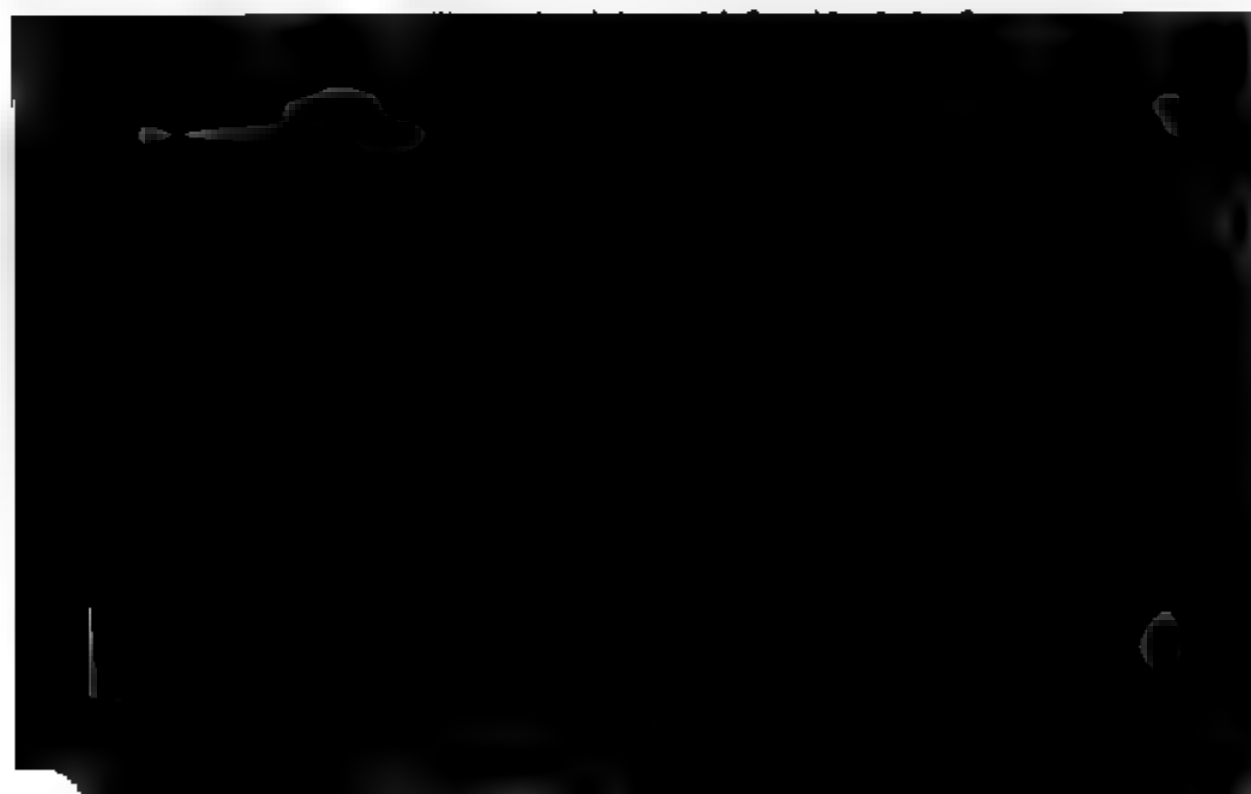
1731. When the last captain, after aligning, has given this command, the colonel will command,

Guides--Posts!

1732. The column, right in front, may form in line on any central company, faced to the rear. To execute this on the fourth company, the colonel will command,

1. *Into line, on fourth company, faced to the rear*. 2. *Column, outwards—Face*. 3. *March*!

1733. (PLATE 81.) At the first command, the named company (fourth in this example) will be rapidly countermarched by its



Guides—Posts!

1737. A column, left in front, would form line on any company faced to the rear, by inverse means, and on the same principles.

*Changes of Front.**Forward, on the Right (or Left.)*

1738. The battalion aligned, to change its front, forward on the first company, the colonel will establish two markers, on the new line which the battalion is to take, (at any angle forward;) the first opposite to the first file, and the other, opposite one of the three left files of the first company; he will then command,

1. *Change front, forward on first company.* 2. *Battalion, right—FACE!* 3. *MARCH!*

1739. At the first command, the captain of the first company, stepping a pace forward, will command,

1. *Company, right—FACE!* 2. *Into line.* 3. *MARCH!*

1740. At the word *march*, from the captain, the first company will form to the front, and be aligned as prescribed, No. 1347, and following.

1741. At the second command from the colonel, the other companies will face to the right; their captains will place themselves beside their respective guides of the right (to lead by the right flank) and disengage the heads of their companies to the front.

1742. At the command *march*, each captain will conduct his company towards, and form on the new line, as prescribed, No. 1557. align by the right, (the left guides having promptly covered the markers on the alignment,) and command, *FACE!*

1743. On which the colonel will command,

Guides—Posts!

1744. To change front, forward on the left company, would be executed by inverse commands and means.

On a Central Company, either Wing Forward.

1745. To effect this, left wing forward, and on the fourth company, (for example) at any angle, the colonel will establish two markers on the new line which he wishes the battalion to assume; these will be placed in front of the named company, the first opposite its right file, and the other, where one of the three left files of that company is to rest; he will then command,

1. *Change front on fourth company, left wing forward.* 2. *Battalion, inward—FACE!* 3. *MARCH!*

1746. (PLATE 82.) At the first command, the fourth company will face to the right, by command of its captain, who will step one pace forward and form his company to the *front*, on the markers; the captain of the third will command, 1. *Company, left—FACE!* at the same time, spring to the left of his company, disengage its left to the rear, and command, 2. *Rear into line.* 3. *MARCH!* which is executed as heretofore prescribed; he will then instantly place himself on the right of the fourth company (whose captain, after aligning his own company, has stepped back) and align his company on his right guide, who shall have placed himself facing to the left; and covering, on the new line, the markers of the fourth company.

1747. At the second command, the remaining companies will face inwards; the captains of the second and first companies will move



Guides—Posts!

1750. In like manner the change of front, *left wing forward*, at any angle, may be executed on any central company of the battalion.

1751. To change front of the battalion, *right wing forward*, at any angle, may be equally executed on the same principles, but by inverse means.

To the Rear, on either Flank.

1752. To change front to the rear on first company, at any angle, the colonel will establish two markers in rear of the first company; the first, in rear of the right file, and the other, on the new alignment, in front of where one of the three left files of that company will rest when thrown back; he will then command,

1. *Change front to the rear, on first company.* 2. *Battalion, right—FACE.* 3. *MARCH!*

1753. At the first command, the captain of the first company will command, 1. *Company, right—FACE.* 2. *Rear, into line.* 3. *MARCH!*

1754. The company will pass the markers, and form line faced to the rear, as heretofore prescribed; the captain aligning it from its right, on the markers.

1755. At the second command from the colonel, the remaining companies will face to the right, and disengage their heads to the rear; their captains will promptly post themselves to lead by the right flank.

1756. At the word *march*, from the colonel, the companies (except the first) will be led to the rear of the right flank, and towards their places in the new line, which they pass, and form about as prescribed; their captains aligning from the right on the left guide, who will have covered on the line of the markers, and faced to the right.

1757. When the colonel hears the last captain order *FACE*, he will command,

Guides—Posts!

1758. The colonel, wishing the aligned battalion to change front to the rear on the left company, will cause it to be executed by inverse commands and means.

Column of Route.

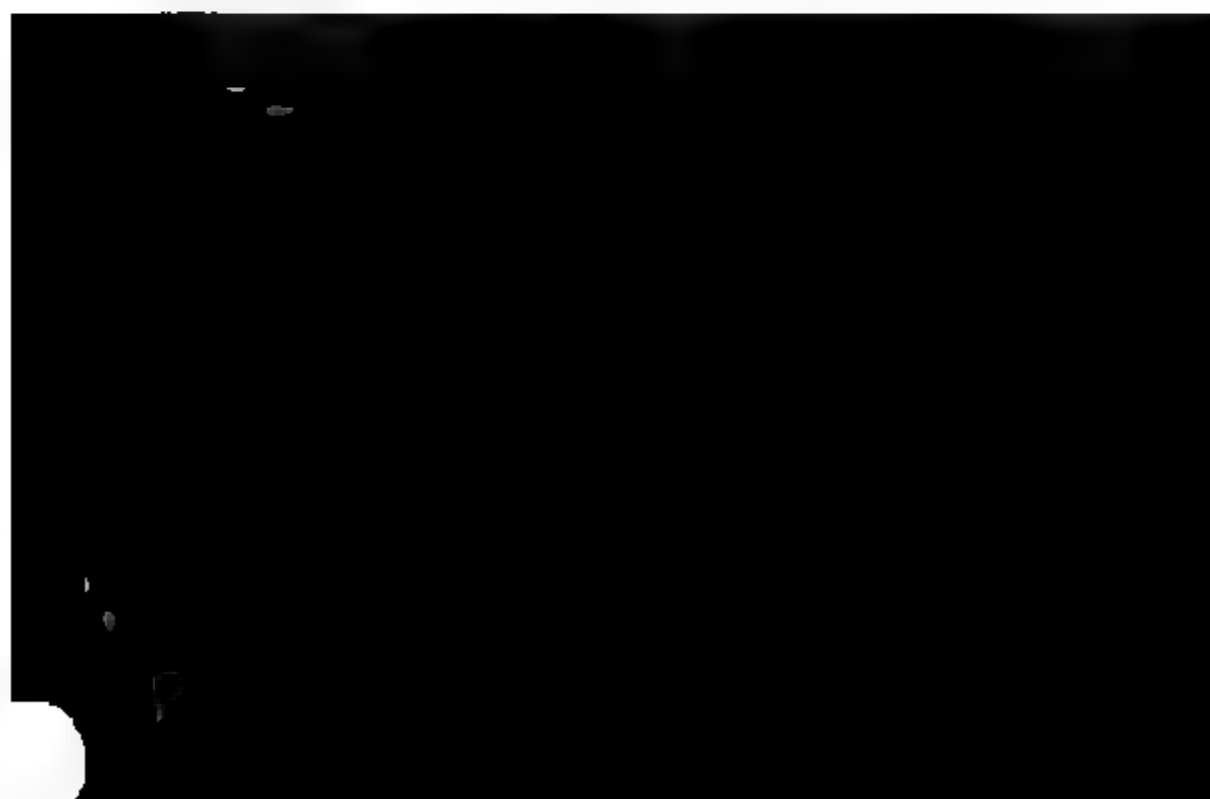
1759. To take the route, step from the cadenced step or the reverse, the colonel will give the commands prescribed, No. 1412, and following.

1760. It is a fixed principle, that the depth of an open column, whether of manœuvre or of route, shall be less than the front of its line, by the front of a division.

1761. The observance of this principle requires no particular rule in a column of manœuvre; but as columns of route frequently meet with narrow roads, bridges, and defiles, which oblige them to diminish the front of divisions, it is necessary to point out the method to be pursued in such cases, to enable the column to march as easy as long as possible, without the inconvenience of lengthening out.

1762. A column of route, as in interior or route marches, will assume, from the commencement of each particular march, that front, which the nature of the road or defile will permit it to carry the greater part of the distance to be gained from halt to halt.

1763. If an unforeseen want of space, only, or an occasional obstruction, render a diminution of front necessary, it will be made by the commands and means prescribed in the *School of the Com-*



guides would place themselves as prescribed for marching by the left flank, No. 1536, and following.

1768. The leading division will follow the windings of the road, or defile; the following divisions will not occupy the attention with the direction, but all successively follow the preceding. The soldiers will not endeavor to avoid bad roads, but each, as much as possible, march in his particular line of direction.

1769. When the column marches by the route step, changes of direction take place, always without command; the chiefs of division need only caution them, when the change of direction is considerable; the rear rank, and files in the rear, will change direction, successively, on the same ground.

1770. The front in which the column commenced the part of the march, having been that of company, when the two leading companies have passed the obstruction, the captain will form his company as so ordered, and the captains of the companies follow. The platoons will execute the same movement, successively, on the same ground.

1771. If the front of the column had been that of platoon, the chief of the leading platoon would, in like manner, form his platoon soon as the two leading sections have passed the obstruction. The following chiefs of platoons would, without command, follow the example, as above.

1772. Finally, the chief of the leading division will order up to the front, files broken off, as the road or defile widens, on an intimation from a field officer, which would be followed by the other chiefs on arriving on the same ground.

1773. The colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major, will cause the principles prescribed in this article, to be strictly observed; and see that there be no sudden transitions in the march, the prevention of which depends on the attention of the chiefs of divisions, in causing the same rate of march to be maintained, without being accelerated or retarded.

1774. The colonel, or lieutenant-colonel, remains at the head of the battalion, to regulate the rate of march of the leading division, and to indicate to the chief of that division the instant at which he is to execute the various movements prescribed above.

1775. If the column be composed of many battalions, each, in its turn, will execute what has been prescribed for the leading bat-

talion; each executing the movement on the same ground, and in the same manner.

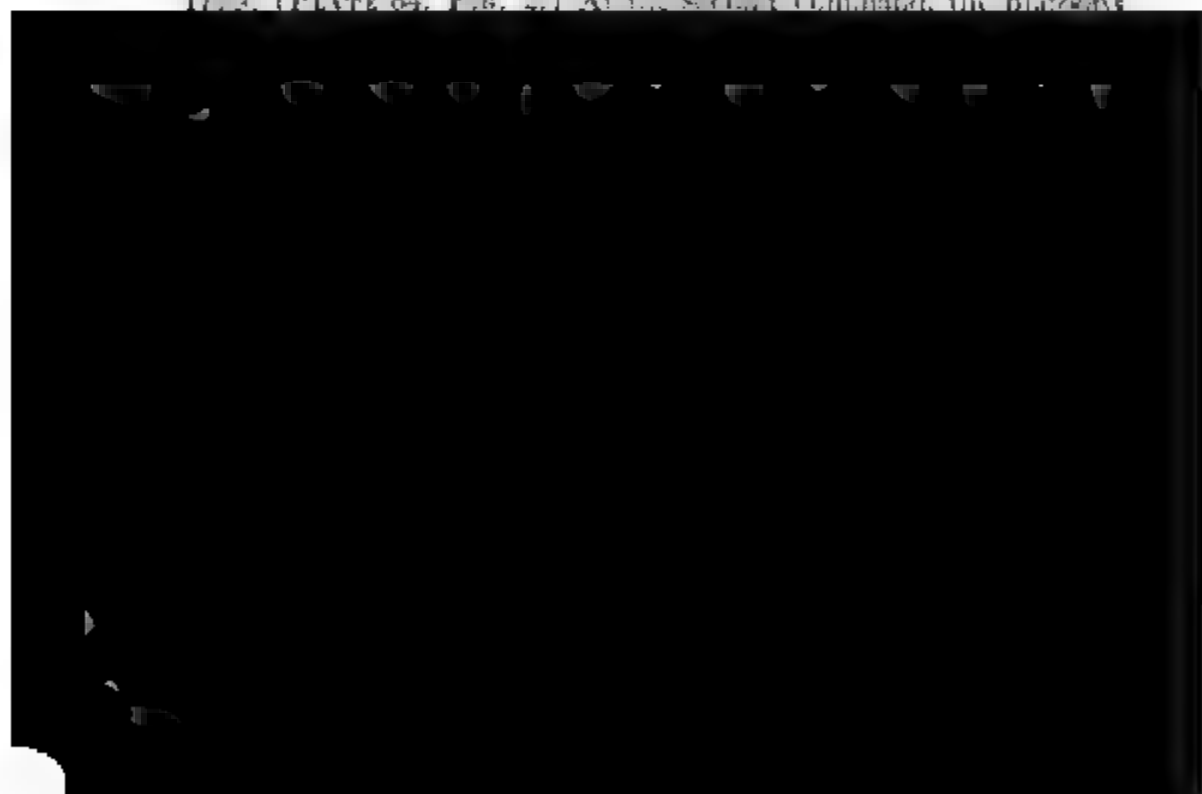
1776. To render the mechanism of all these movements familiar to the troops, and to accustom them to march by the route step in narrow roads, without lengthening out the column, the colonel will cause the battalion to march by the route step, to and from the field of exercise, practising diminutions of front in narrow passages, in order to inculcate the utility of the above principles: when the soldiers are confirmed in the length and cadence of the ordinary step, he will, in the course of the exercises, cause the battalion to march occasionally by the route step, and to increase and diminish front, sometimes at once, at other times, successively; as also to practise breaking off and moving up files to the front, as has been explained.

1777. The general principles and methods of increasing and decreasing front of a column of route, as above, for battalions of the line, will govern in similar marches of a battalion of light troops.

1778. One method of decreasing from company front, by advancing in files from the *centre of companies*, will, as often as circumstances admit, be resorted to, in preference to any other. The column, supposed at a halt, and the colonel wishing to effect this, he will command,

1. *Advance by centre of companies.* 2. *Column, inwards—FACE!*
3. *MARCH!*

1779. (PLATE 84. FIG. 2.) At the second command, the platoon



in front of his rear rank man; the file closers will conform to the movement, decreasing to the same front, and the company marching by the centre, thus occupying the same front, as if by a flank.

1784. To increase the front, the colonel will command,

1. *Column.* 2. *Double—Files.* 3. *March!*

1785. Each front rank man will step outward, join his rear rank man, and the companies will march as before.

1786. To increase to company front, the colonel will order,

1. *By companies, into line.* 2. *March!*

1787. Each company will promptly conform to what is prescribed, Nos. 1323, 1324, except that the leading file will not *halt*, but continue the march as before; and the battalion will thus march in column of companies.

1788. If the colonel wish the increase to be made by companies in succession, he will order the first captain to execute it; and each succeeding company conforms to the movement on the same ground; each captain giving, when he arrives at the proper place, the commands prescribed for the instructor, No. 1323.

1789. It is believed that this column possesses peculiar advantages for the route march, whereby the danger and inconvenience of opening the column is avoided, the interval of *platoons*, between the rear of one company and the front of the succeeding, enabling the men to march with all requisite openness of files. To take close order and resume platoon intervals, as preparatory to a formation *to the right, left, or front*, the colonel will command,

1. *By companies, close order.* 2. *Column—March!*

1790. At the word *march*, the leading files of companies will continue the march, the other files will close up.

1791. The column may be rapidly formed in line, to either flank, by the commands and means prescribed, No. 1325, and following; in the case of forming to the right by *inversion*, the reverse platoon would form in the interval between its *first* platoon, which has *halted* and *passed*, and the corresponding platoon of the company in front.

To Extend.

1792. The battalion extends, in open order, upon the principles prescribed for the company.

1793. The necessity will rarely occur for extending a whole battalion; therefore, one platoon of each company may be held in reserve, to support, relieve, and as a rallying point for its own particular line of skirmishers.

1794. Where a battalion operating singly, throws out one platoon of each company *en tirailleur*, the remaining platoons will move in closed order to the right and left, to place themselves nearly opposite their respective lines of skirmishers.

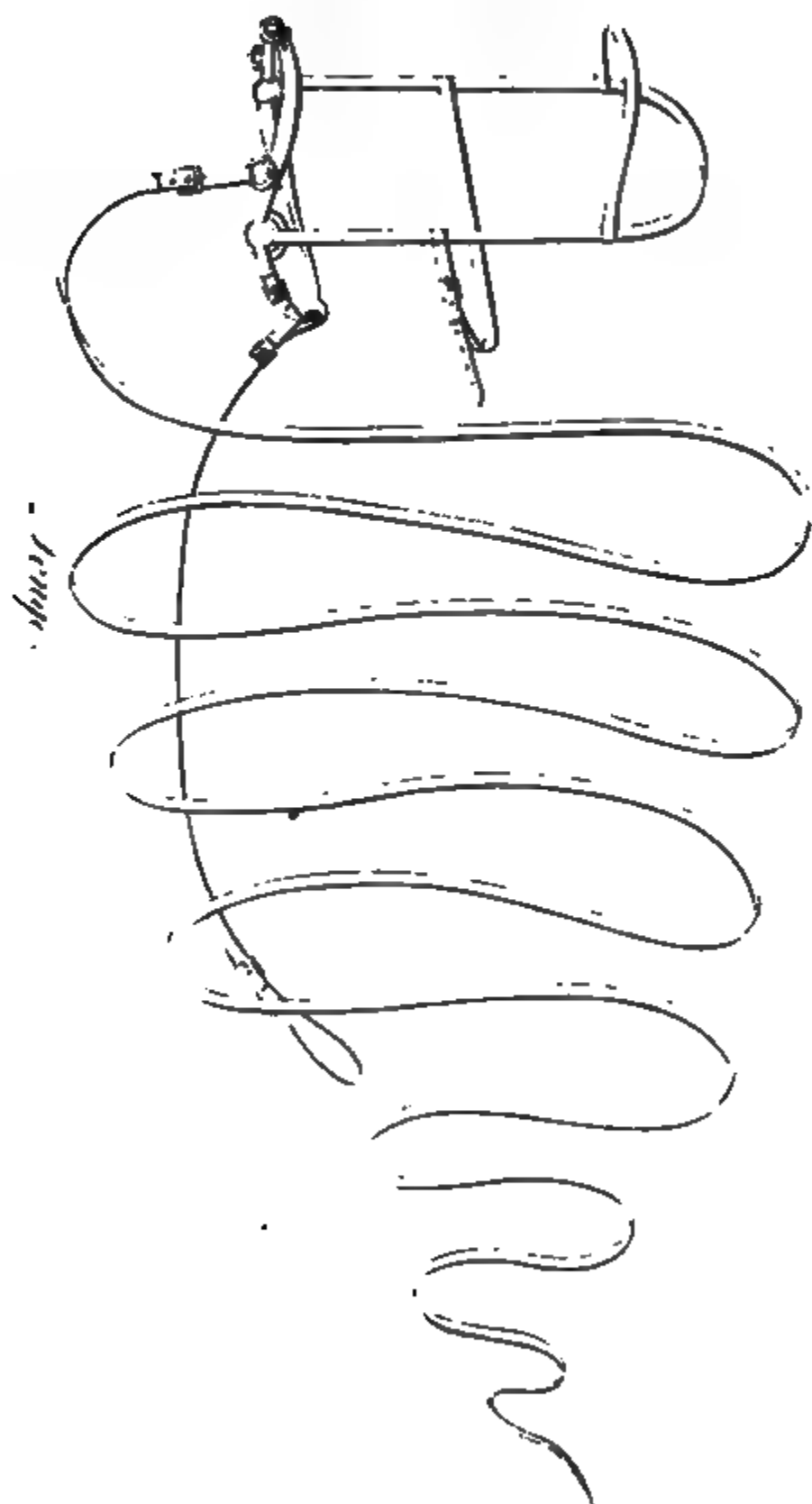
1795. Skirmishers thus thrown out, should, inasmuch as the duty is very fatiguing, be relieved as often as the proximity of the enemy or other circumstances permit.

1796. When a company is ordered to skirmish in the immediate vicinity of the column, it is not material whether it be furnished with supports and reserves; but when at a distance, beyond prompt support, one half, in general, should be held as supports and reserves.

1797. Should a company of light infantry, in extended order, and without cover, be menaced with an attack from cavalry, they will be ordered *to close, form column of sections*, and retire with steadiness towards the main body. If necessary, the column of sections would close entirely, and the two interior sections (subdivided for that purpose) fire backwards.



Casson





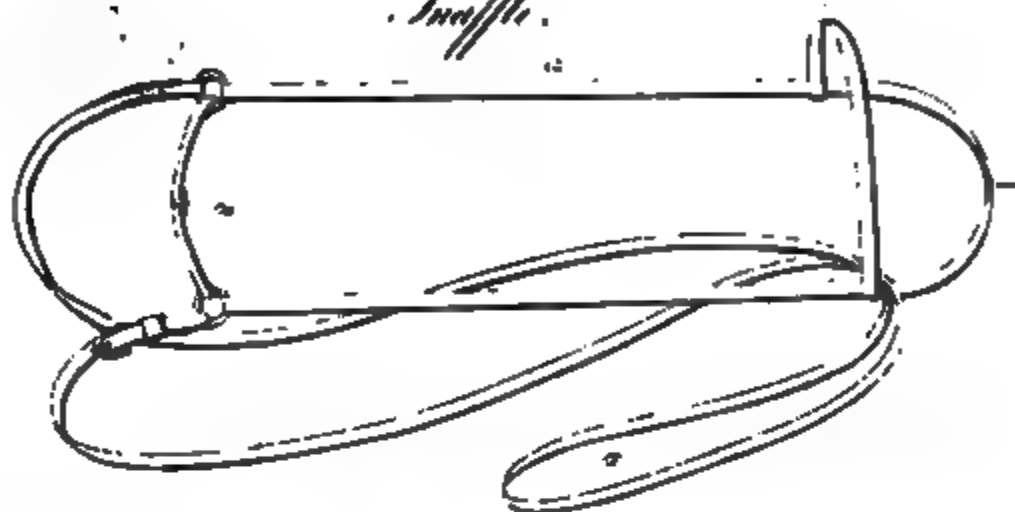
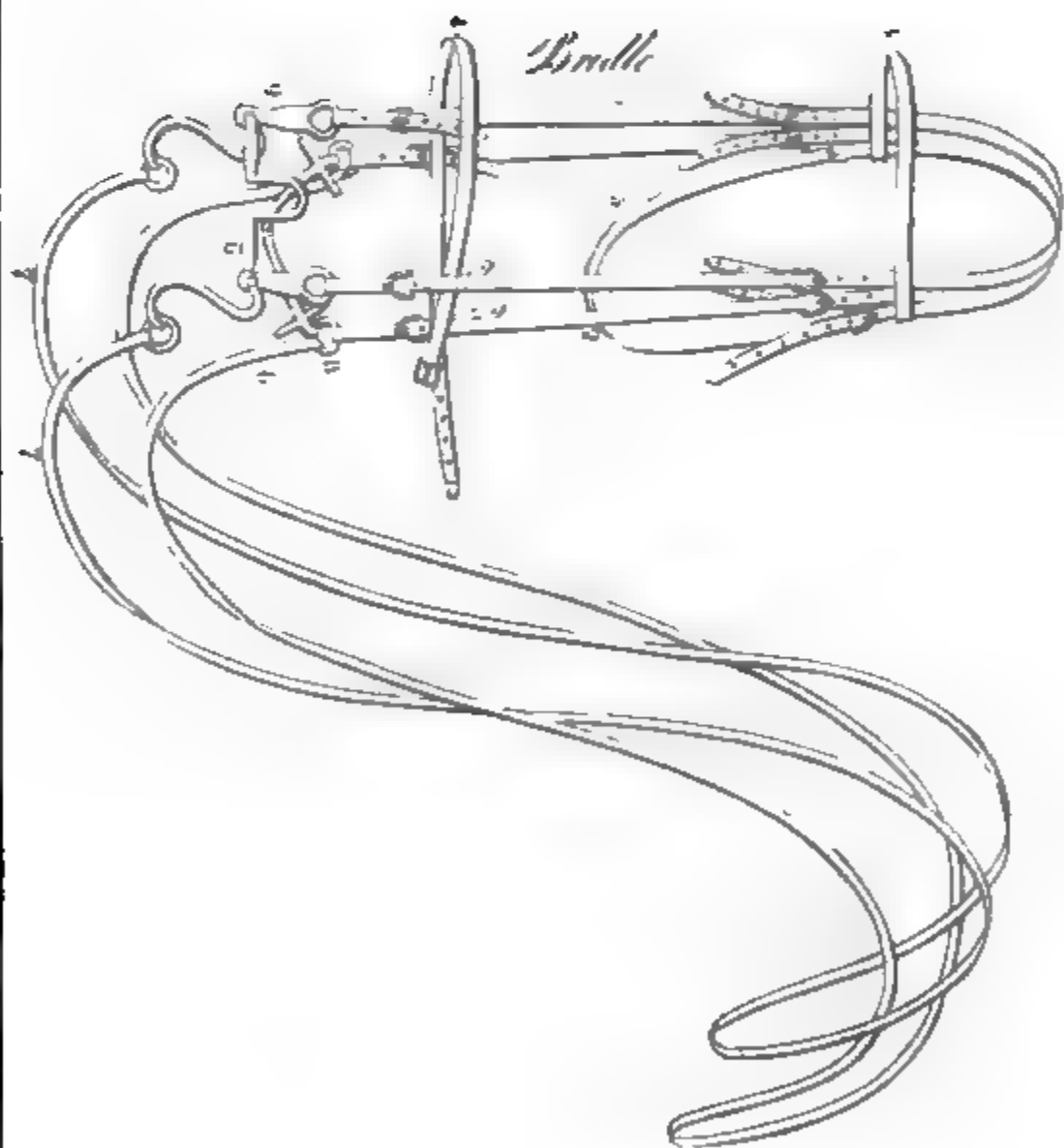
Websteri ferd.



Websteri



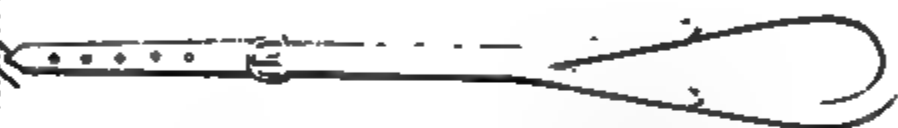
1872

Saffle*Brille*

Copper.
for Hammer. handle.



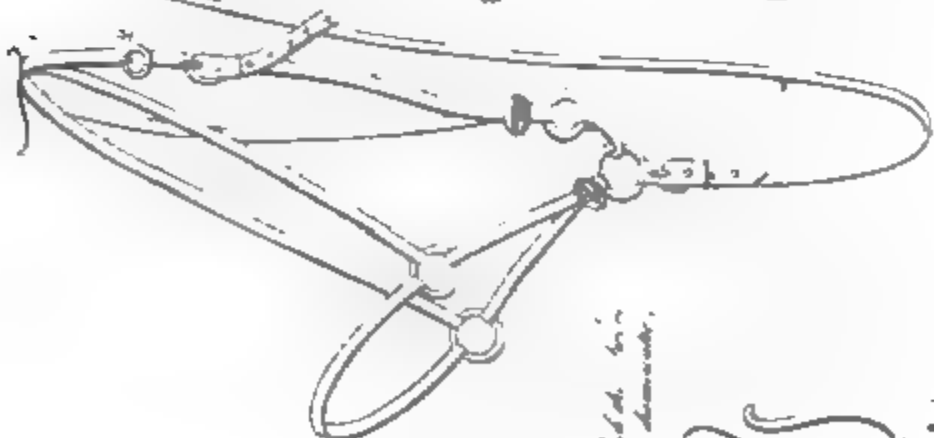
Copper.



Amalgam.



Gold.

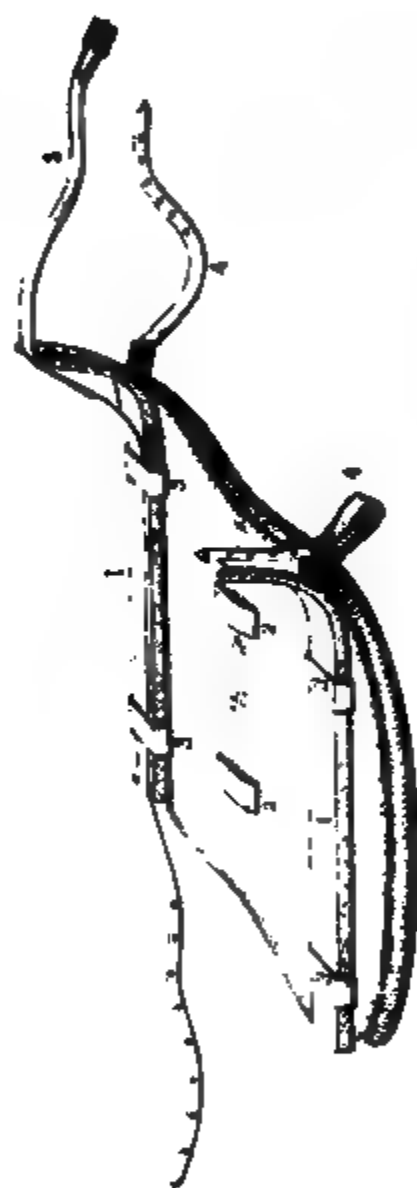


Hand as held in
mouth diameter.



at the 2. Position
of the 2. Position

Hand section.



.

°

.

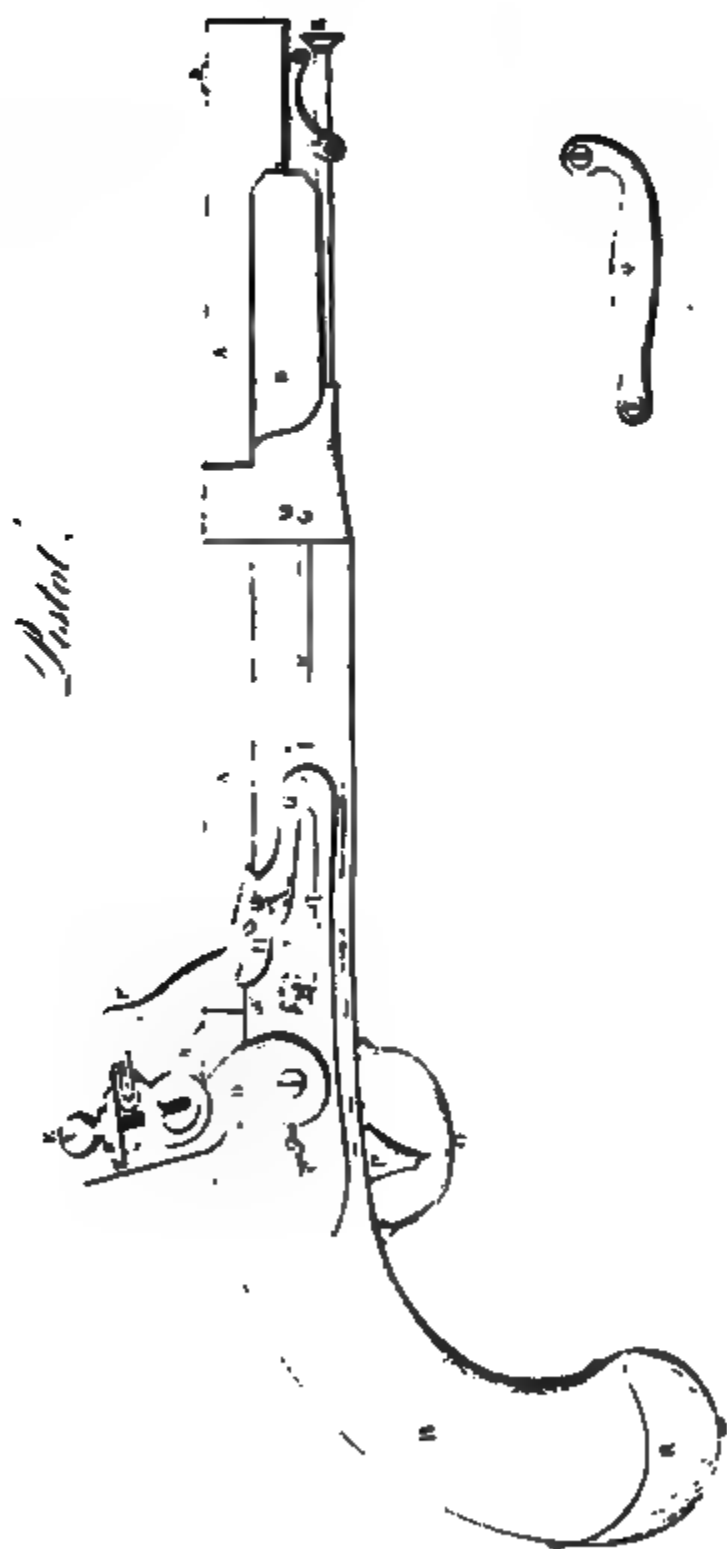
°

°

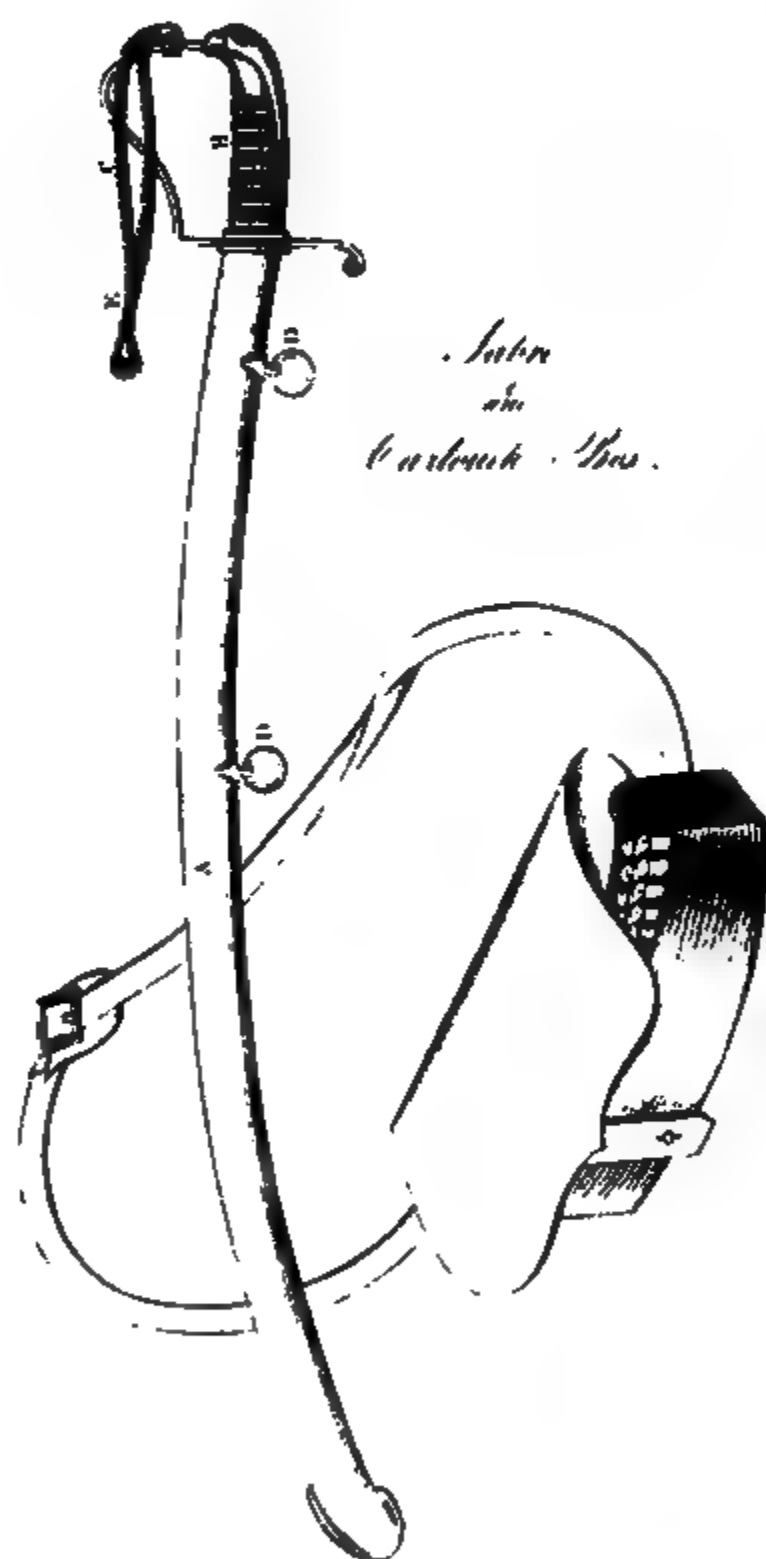
.

°

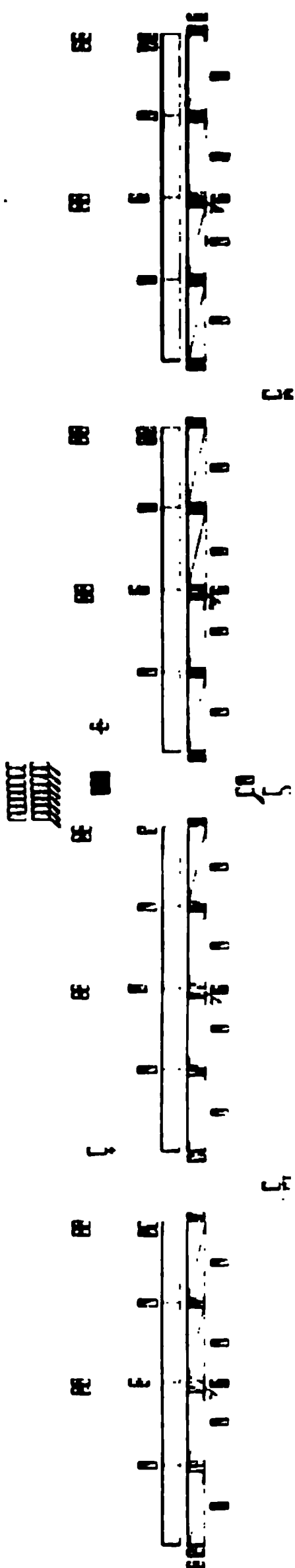
.



Postol.



Consisting of four quadrants in order of battle (or line)



- Colonel.
Lieutenant Colonel
Major
'Major' of 'Squadron'
Captain.
Lieutenant
Adjutant
Quartermaster.
Sergeant
Vice-master Sergeant
Sergeant Major
Quartermaster Sergeant
Sergeant Major
Sergeant
Saddler.
Trainer
Trumpet

EXPLANATION

Pl. 10

1. Troopers on foot on the secondary position

2. Troopers on foot on the secondary position

3. Troopers mounted on the secondary position

4. Troopers mounted on the secondary position

5. Troopers mounted on the secondary position
6. Troopers mounted on the secondary position
7. Troopers mounted on the secondary position

8. Troopers mounted on the secondary position

9. Troopers mounted on the secondary position

10. Troopers mounted on the secondary position

11. Troopers mounted on the secondary position

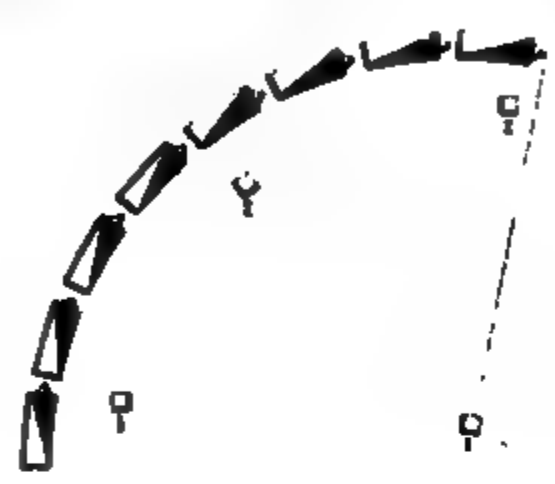
12. Troopers mounted on the secondary position

Fig 1 Troopers marching with the camp to the right hand and having commenced at camp of hand at the command

Right Turn

Fig 2 Troopers having finished the change of hand at the command
By the Left Turn March





Eight men having broken by the left to march with the company to the rightward, at the command

By the left file to the front MARCH

Squadron men formed in two ranks, preparing to mount

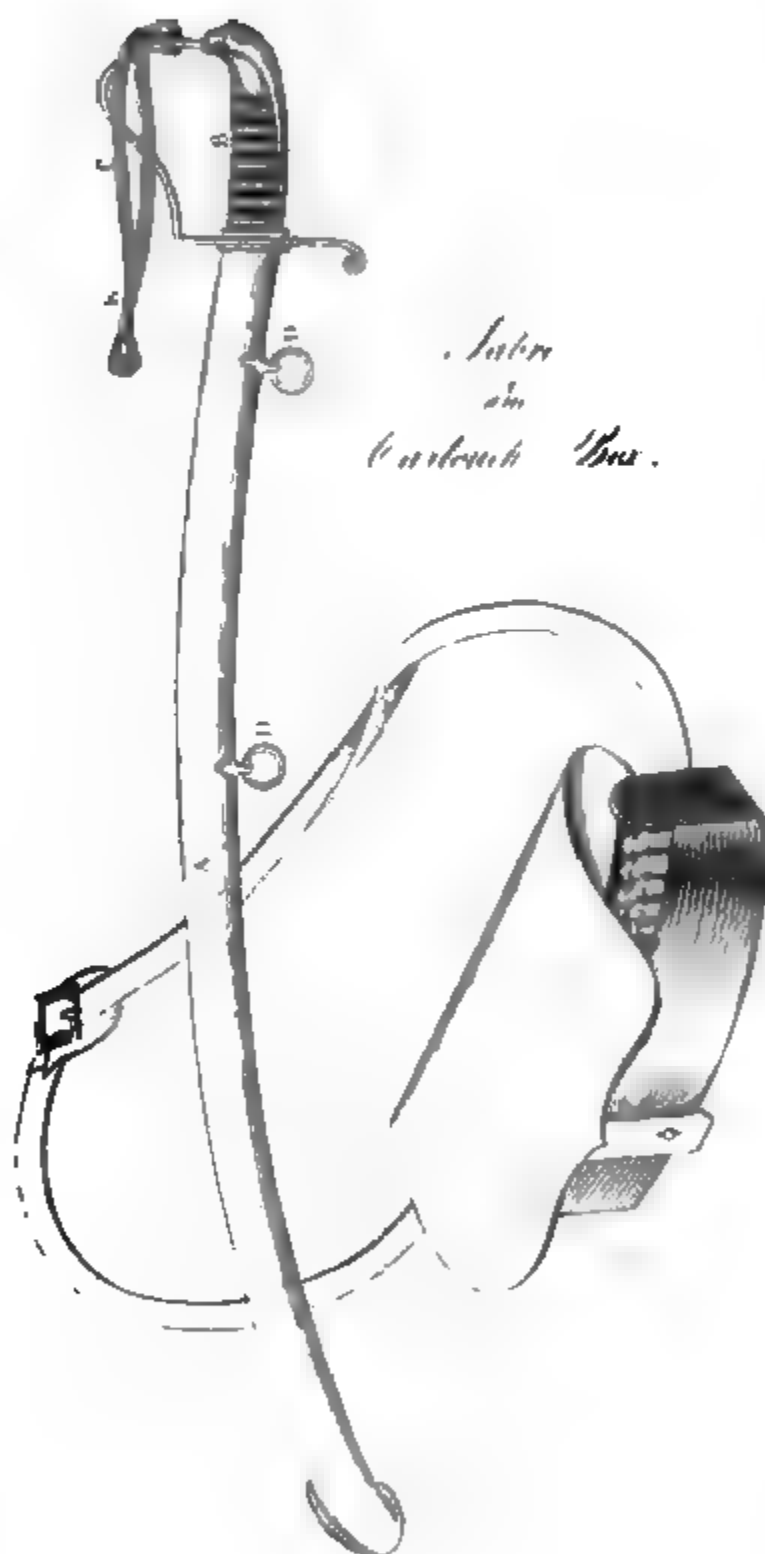
Fig. 1.



Squadron men having resumed their ranks at the distance of two feet.

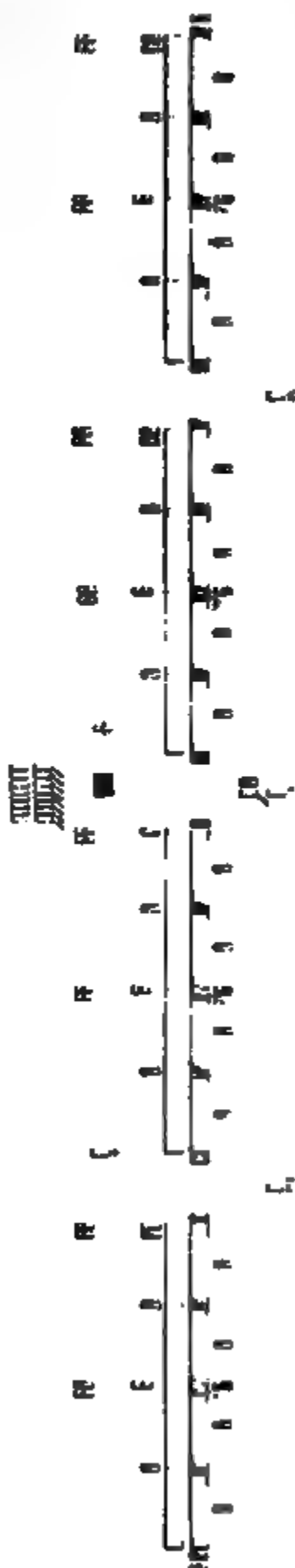
Fig. 2.





HIGHLY NUTRITIOUS

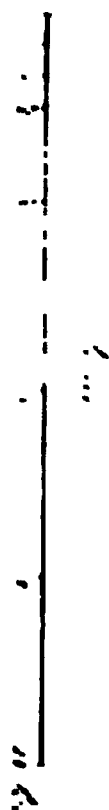
to enable my wife & me to live in order of Seattle (or here)



1. *Intentional Movement*
 2. *It is a purposeful movement.*

[illegible]

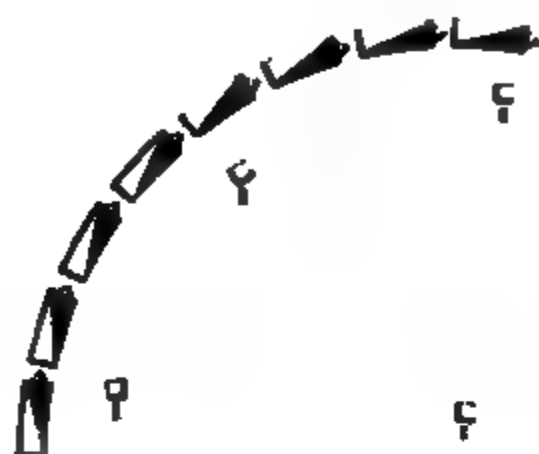
Images of the (p. 100)



By the Left Turn. March



Pl. II



*Eight men having broken by the L. to march with the line
to the rightward, at the command.*

By the left file to the Front MARCH

Section men formed in two ranks preparing to mount

Fig. 1.



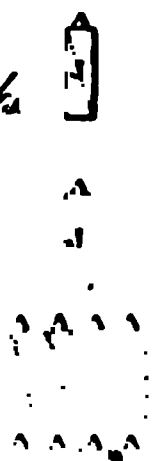
Section men having resumed their ranks at the distance of two feet.

Fig. 2.





thirteen men formed in two ranks
breaking by joint



1 1 1 1

1 1 1 1

A

J

1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

A

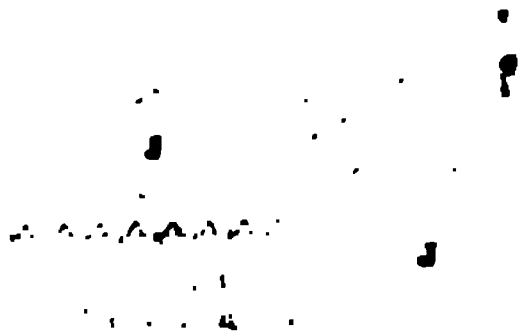
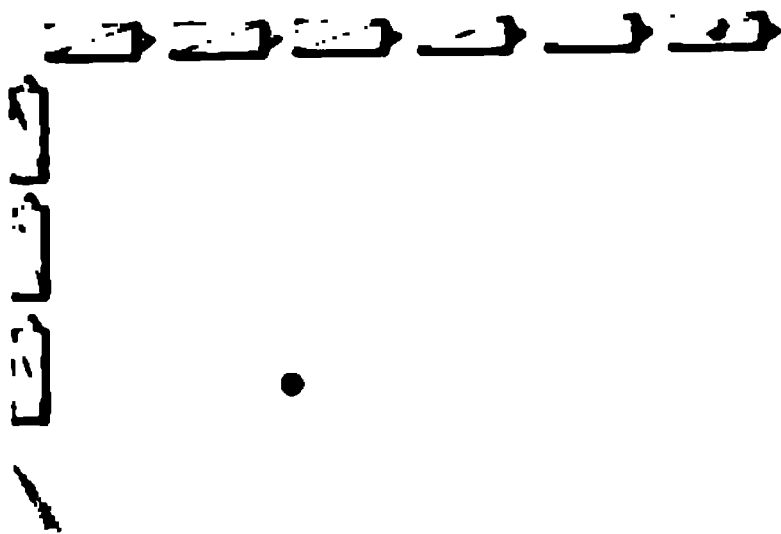
J

The front rank of the platoon, wheeling to the right about.

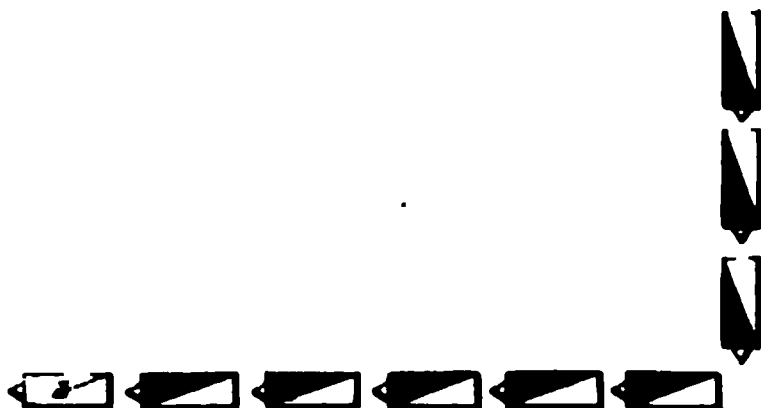


Platoon men marching by fours and forming platoon.

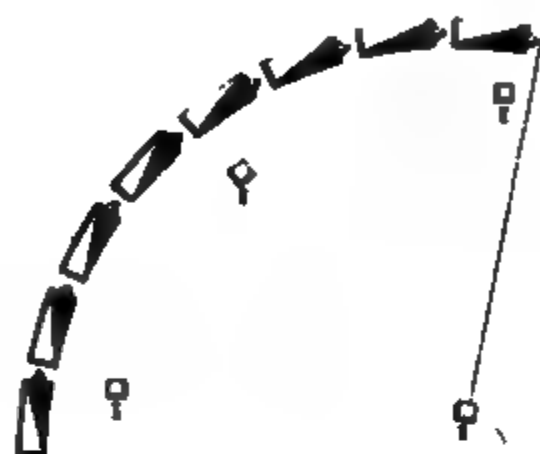
Fig. 1.



The two ranks separately commencing
 to march to the right hand
 by the command.
 By the left. file to the front.



PL. II.



Eight men having broken by the left to march with the company to the right hand, at the command.

By the Left file to the Front. MARCH

Infantry men formed in two ranks, preparing to march

Fig. 1.



Infantry men having resumed their ranks, at the distance of two feet.

Fig. 2.





*Indian men formed in two ranks
breaking by four*

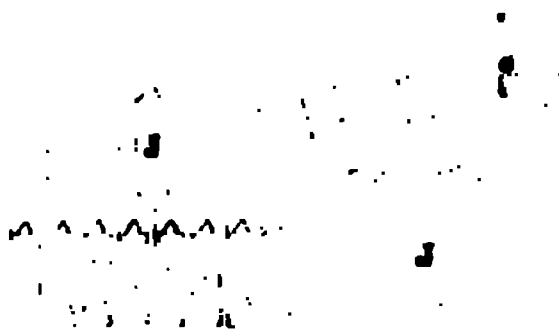
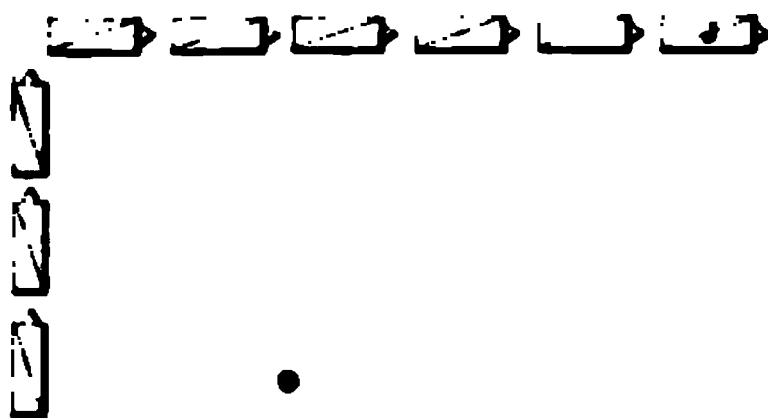


The front rank of the platoon wheeling to the right about.

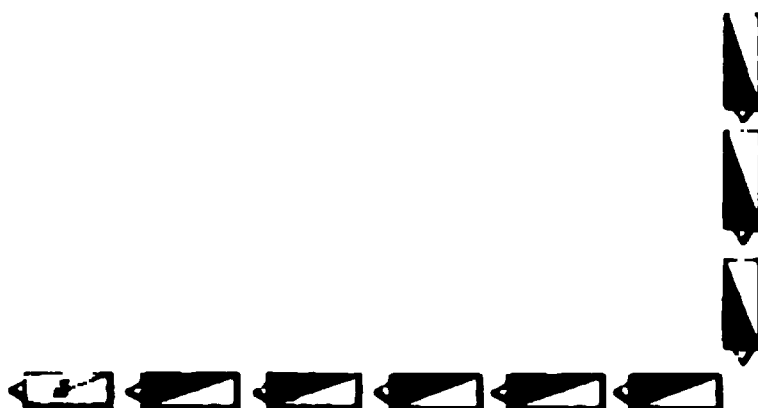



Twelve men marching by fours and forming platoon.

Fig. 1.



*The two ranks separately commencing
to march to the right hand.
by the command.
By the left. file to the front.*





*to hang of direction on the
long side of the ending house*



.

.

.

.

.



.

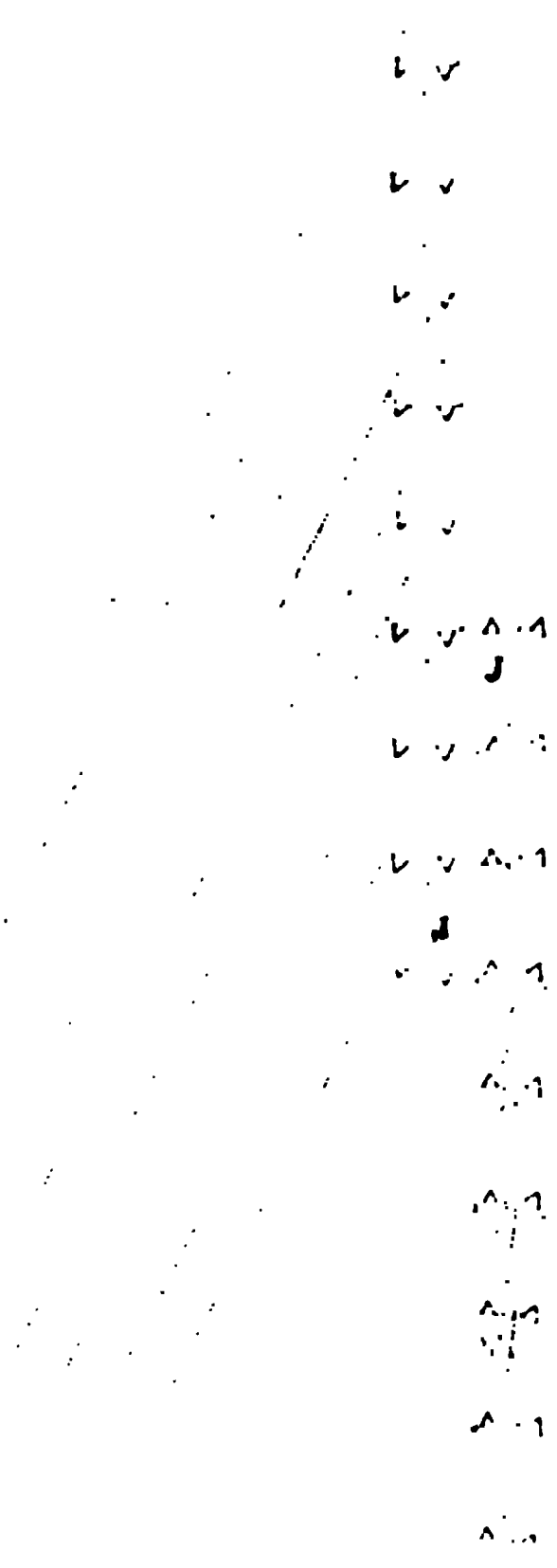
.

.

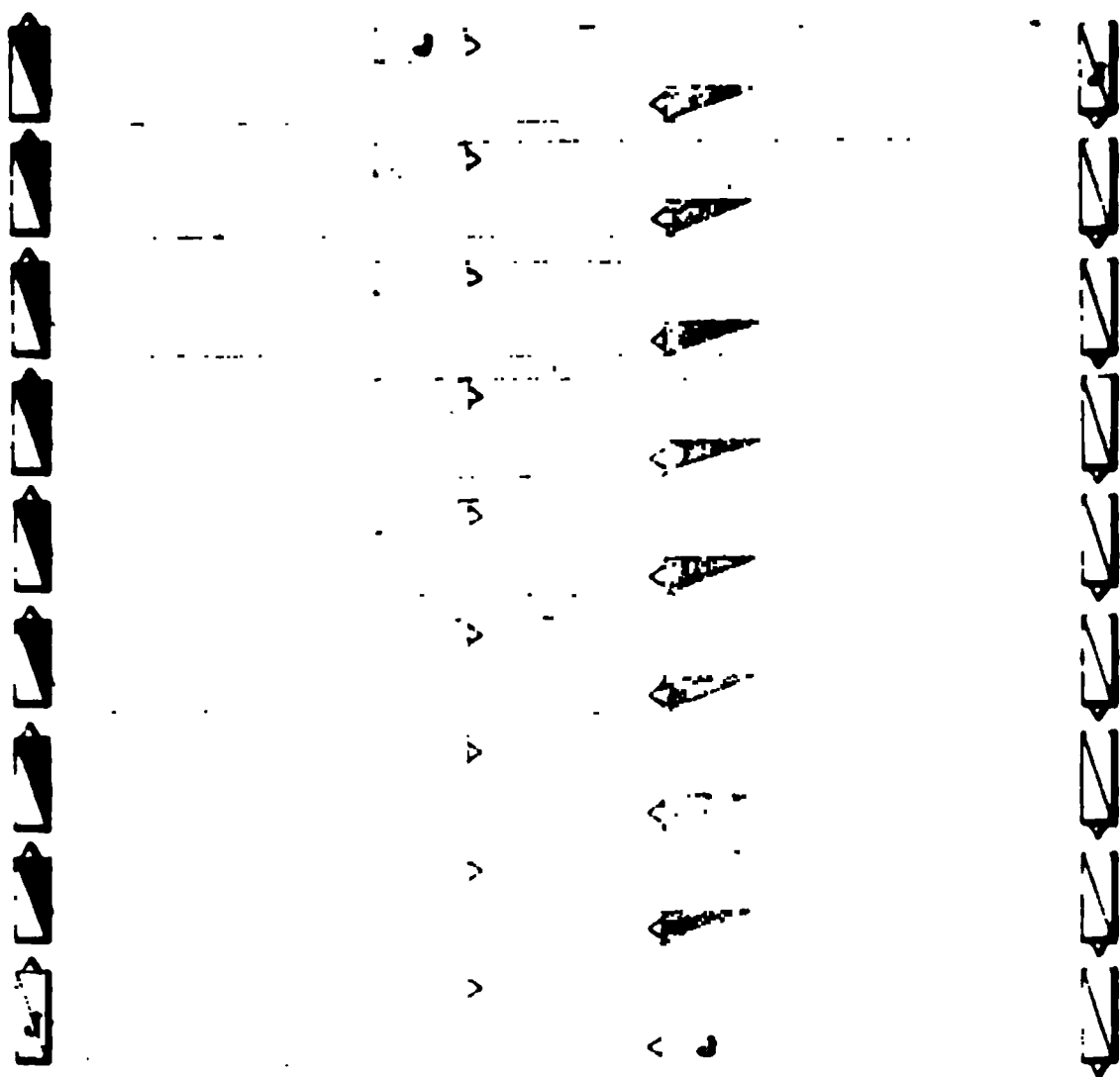
.

.

'Change of direction obliquely to the right'.



*The men of each rank marching to the right hand,
and turning singly to the right, at the command.
By file, right turn. March.*



The front rank of the platoon, wheeling to the right about.



Twelve men marching by fours and forming platoon.






VI
J. I. M. I.

The two ranks separately commencing
to march to the right hand
by the command,
By the left. file to the front.



*Change of direction on the
long side of the riding house*





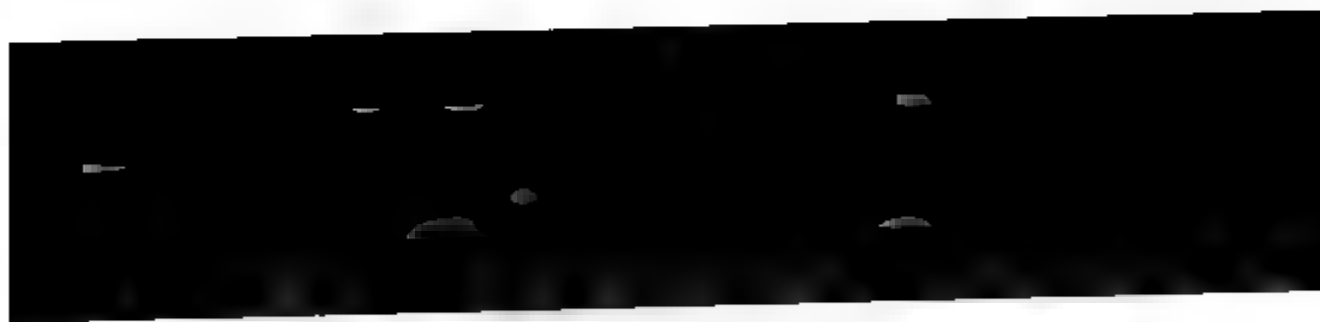
*Change of direction on the
long side of the riding horse*



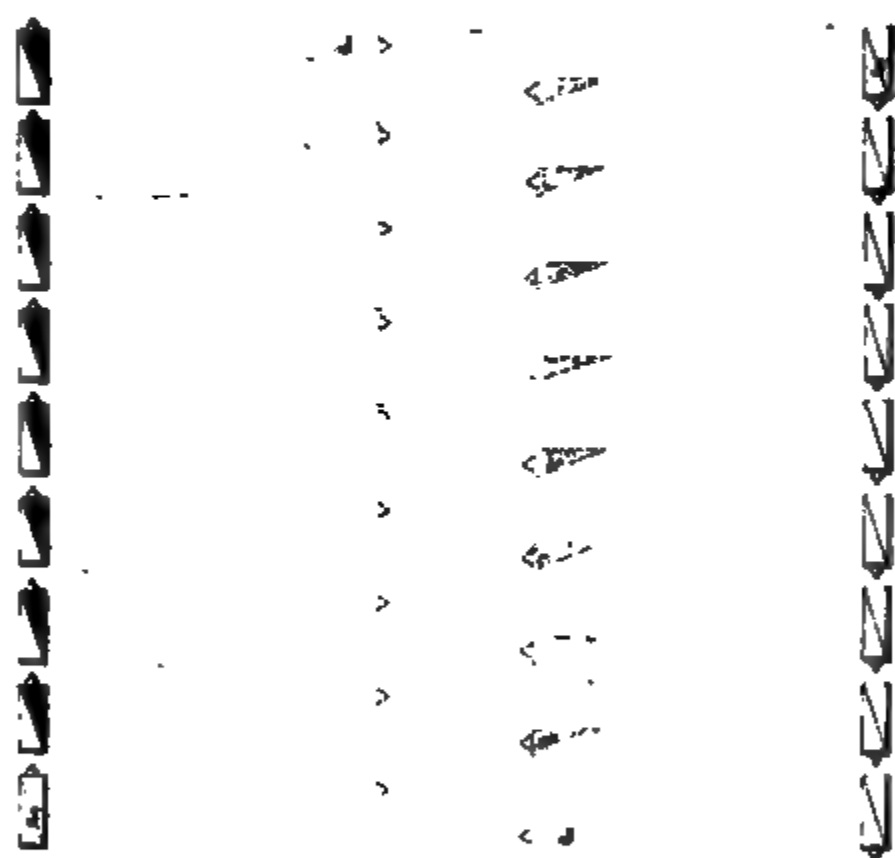
'Change of direction obliquely to the right'.



1. s
 2. v
 3. v
 4. v
 5. v
 6. v
 7. v
 8. v
 9. v
 10. v
 11. v
 12. v



*The men of each rank marching to the right hand,
and turning singly to the right, at the command,
By file, right turn. March.*



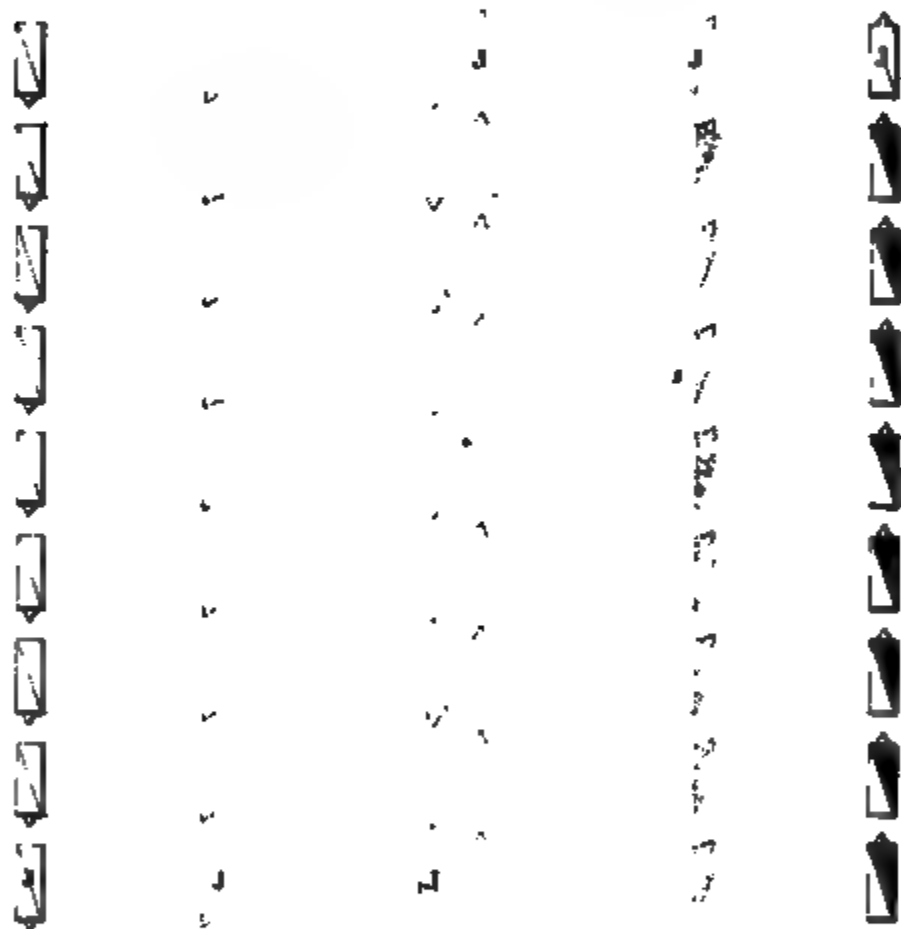
*The men of each rank marching in the right hand and
turning singly to the right hand at the command*

By the right hand turn

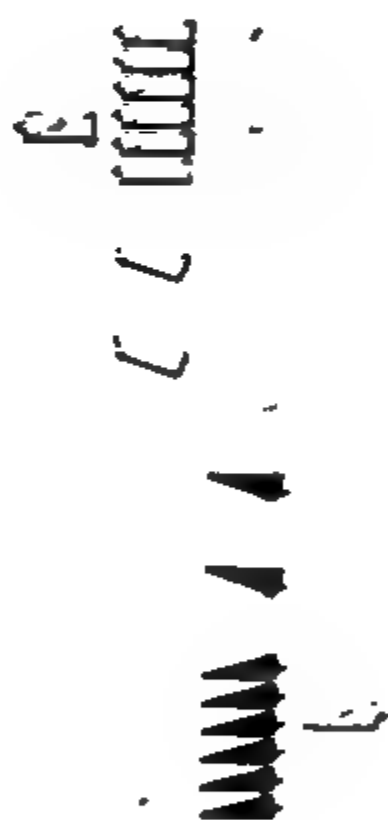
MARCH.



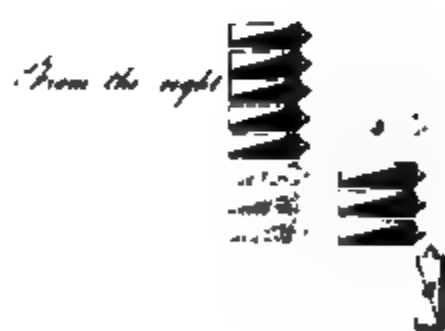
The men of each rank passing to the right after
 marching to the right hands and changing direction
 on the long side of the riding house



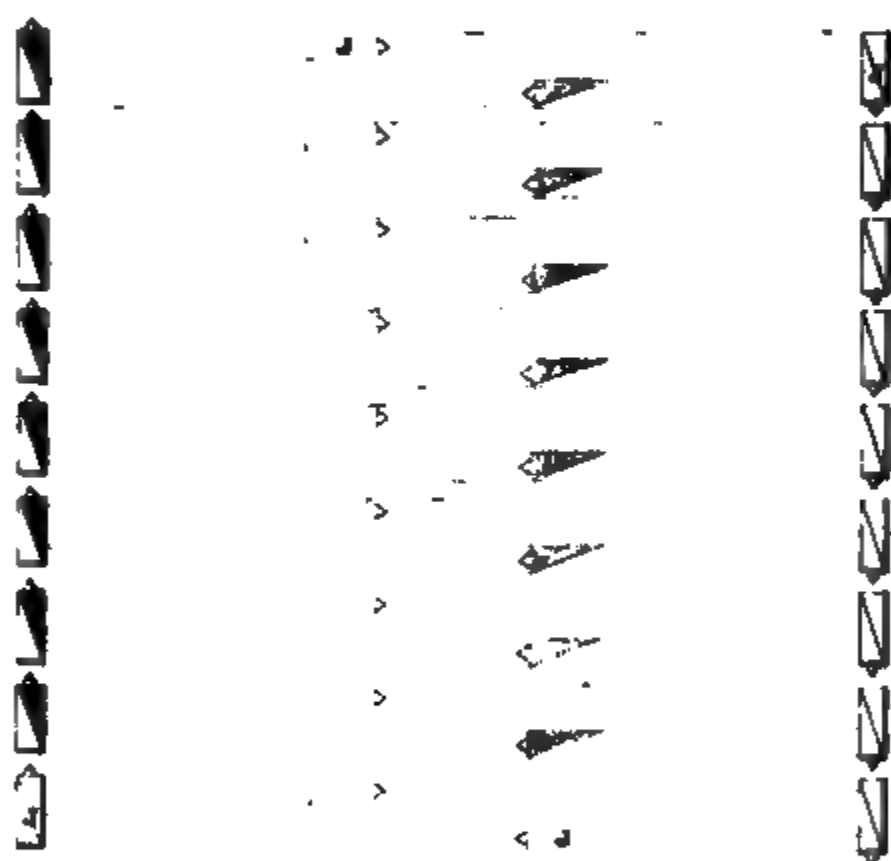
The term *vario* referring to the right in *phthalate* structure.



The two marks separately viewed in the principle
of the alignment, by advancing three files and
drawing upon them



*The men of each rank marching to the right hand,
and turning singly to the right, at the command,
By file, right turn. March.*

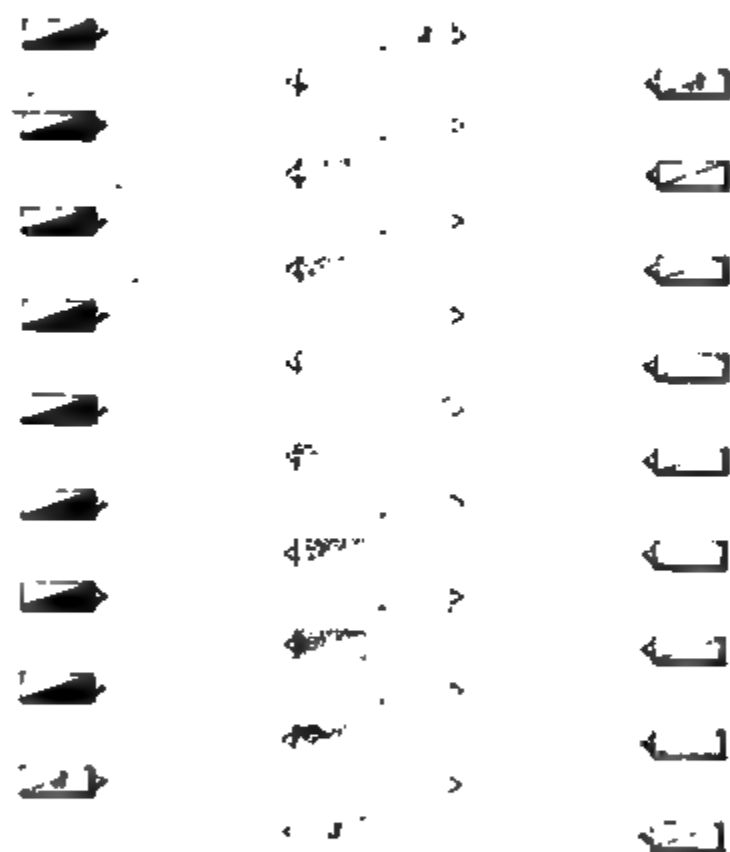




The men of each rank marching to the right hand, and turning singly to the rightabout, at the command.

By the rightabout turn

MARCH.



100

100

100

100

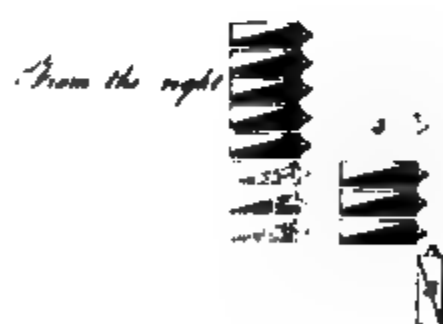
The men of each rank
marching to the right hand
on the long side of the
passing to the right after
and changing direction
marching down



The two ranks closing to the right. in opposite directions.



The two ranks separately occurred in the front of
of the alignment, by advancing three files and
drawing upon them



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

66

67

68

69

70

Eight men wheeling to the right at open files.

1 2 3

4 5 6

7 8 9

10 11 12

13 14 15

16 17 18

19 20 21

22 23 24

25 26 27

28 29 30

31 32 33

34 35 36

37 38 39

40 41 42

43 44 45

46 47 48

49 50 51

52 53 54

55 56 57

58 59 60

61 62 63

64 65 66

67 68 69

70 71 72

73 74 75

76 77 78

79 80 81

82 83 84

Eight men wheeling to the right at close files.

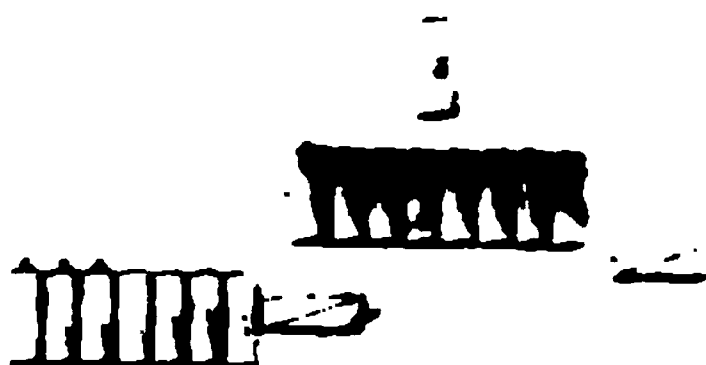
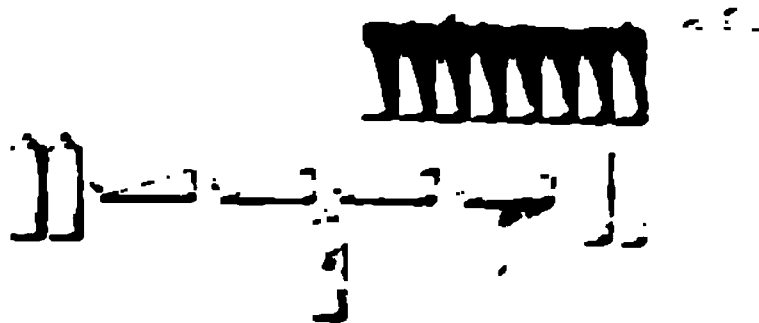


1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
10 11 12
13 14 15
16 17 18
19 20 21
22 23 24
25 26 27
28 29 30
31 32 33
34 35 36
37 38 39
40 41 42
43 44 45
46 47 48
49 50 51
52 53 54
55 56 57
58 59 60
61 62 63
64 65 66
67 68 69
70 71 72
73 74 75
76 77 78
79 80 81
82 83 84

Eighteen men formed in two ranks preparing to dismount



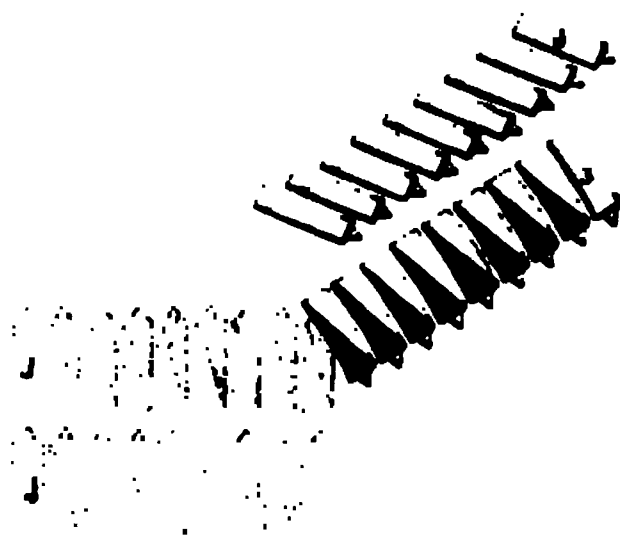
10, 1 PM or 21, 2000, . . .

[illegible]

Wheeling in two ranks at open files



Wheeling in two ranks at close files



Indian men marching by fours to the
left hand and changing position at the
command "Left column March"



Platoon wheeling to the left by rank by files



Fig 1

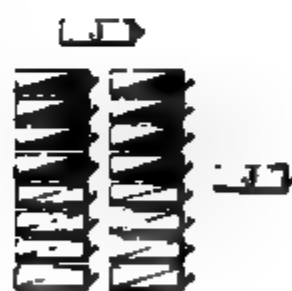
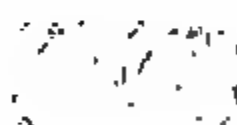
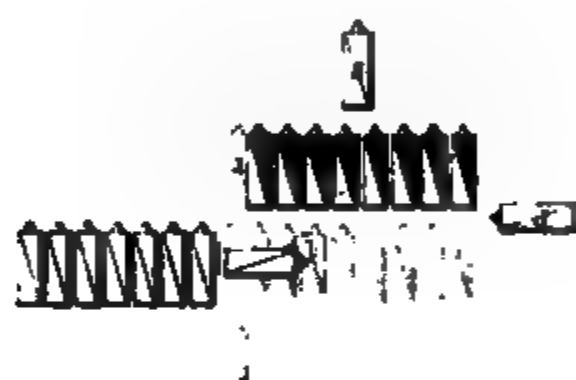


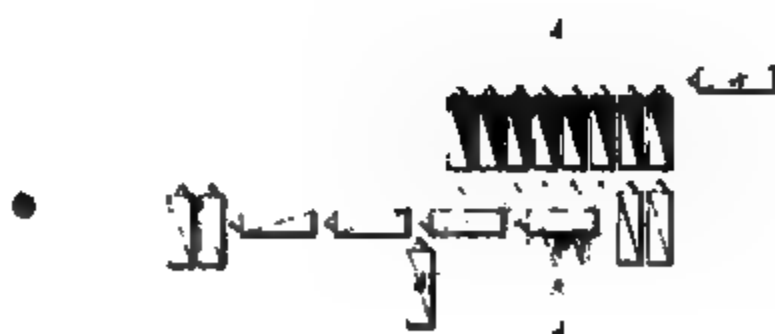
Fig 2

Platoon wheeling to the right by ranks by files

To form to the right in two ranks



To form to the left in one rank

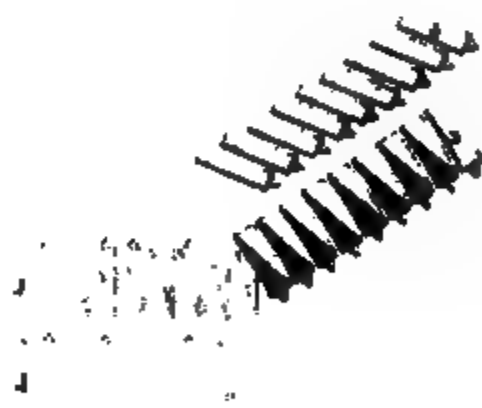


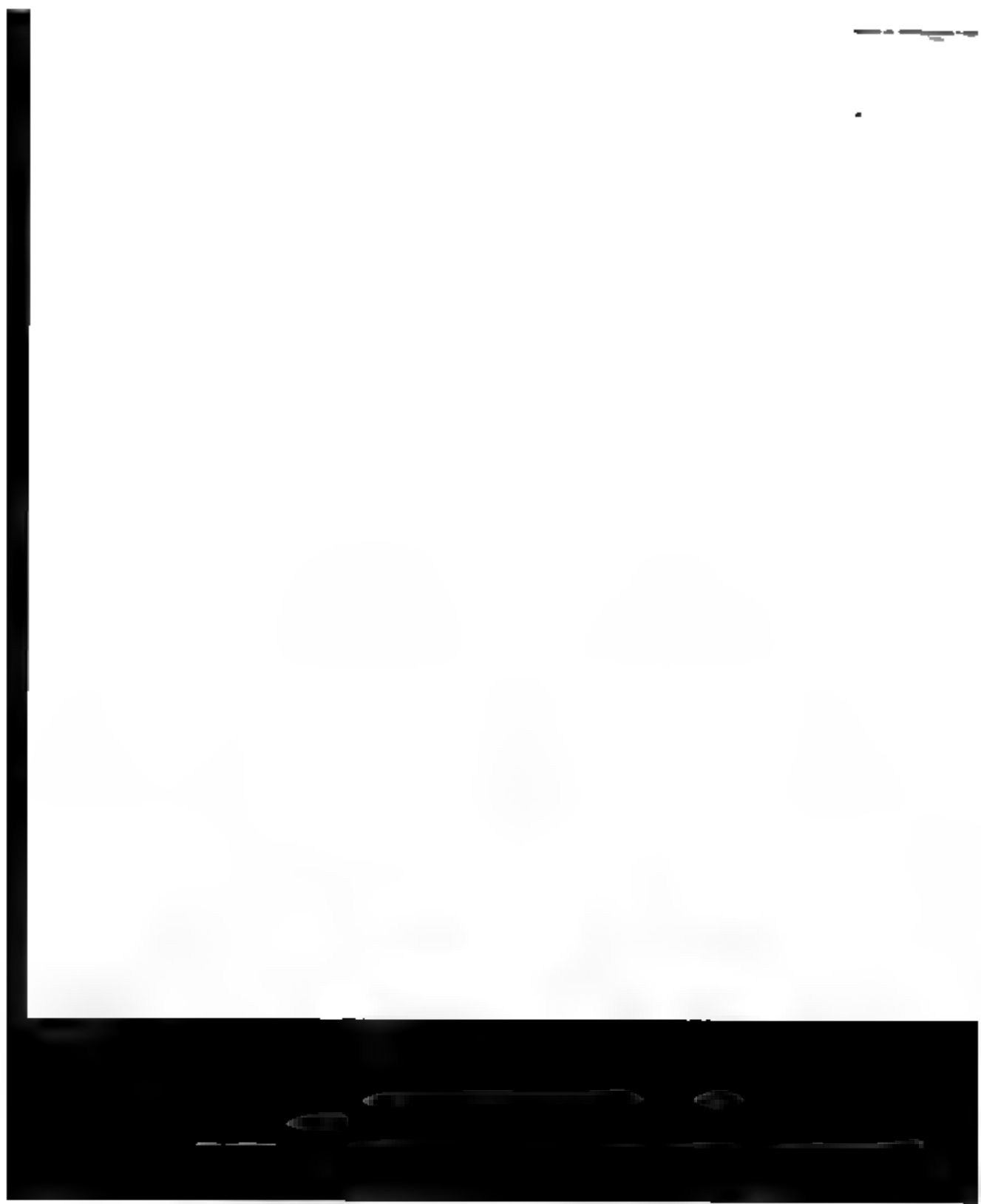


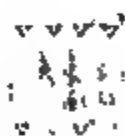
Wheeling in two ranks at open files



Wheeling in two ranks at close files







*Soldiers were marching by fours to the
left hand and changing section at the
command Left oblique March*



Column wheeling to the left by each rank of files



Fig 1



Fig 2

Column wheeling to the right by ranks by files



Fig 1

*Eighteen men marching to a flank by
ranks by fours forming platoon*

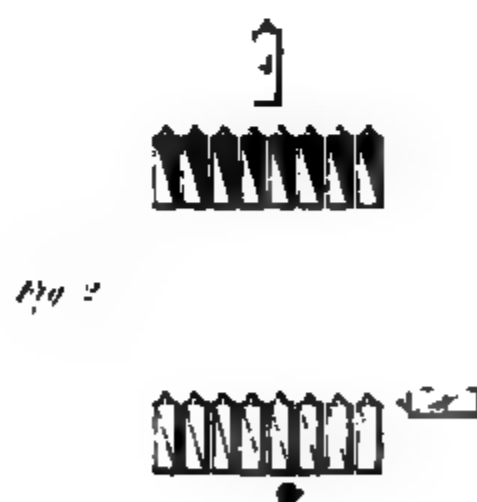
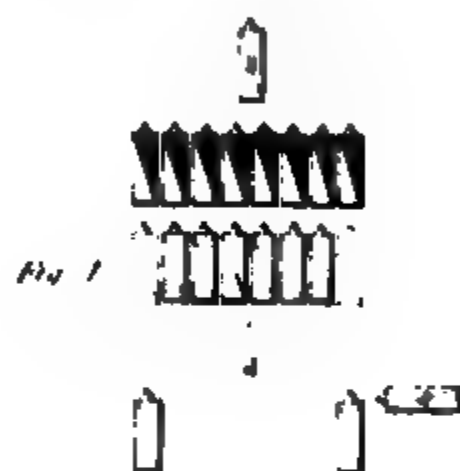


*Wheeling to the left about
by ranks by fours*

Fig. 2.



Opening the ranks



Wheeling in two ranks at open files



Wheeling in two ranks at close files



1000

1000

Section men marching by pairs to the
left hand and changing position in the
moment left hand position.



Column wheeling to the left by each mark of four



Fig 1



Fig 2

Column wheeling to the right by marks by fours



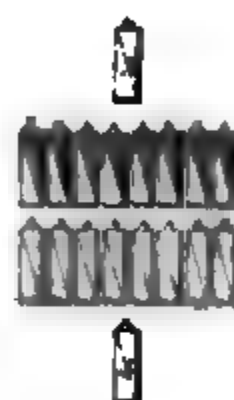


Fig 1

*baton men marching to a flank by
march by fours forming platoon*

(see Pl 24 No 1)



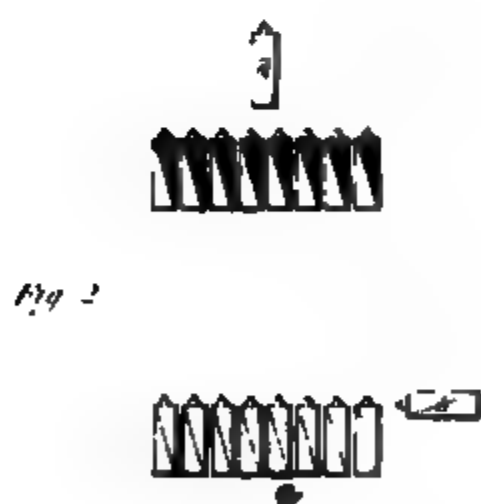
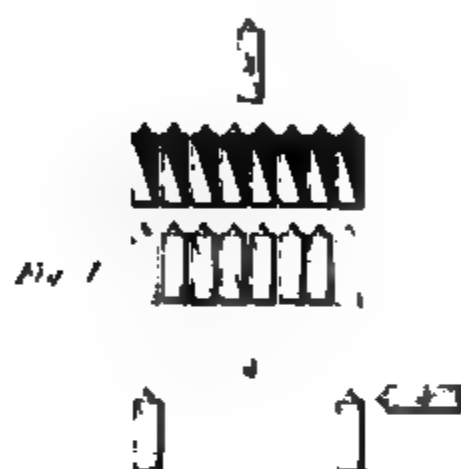
*Wheeling to the left about
by ranks by fours*

Fig. 2.

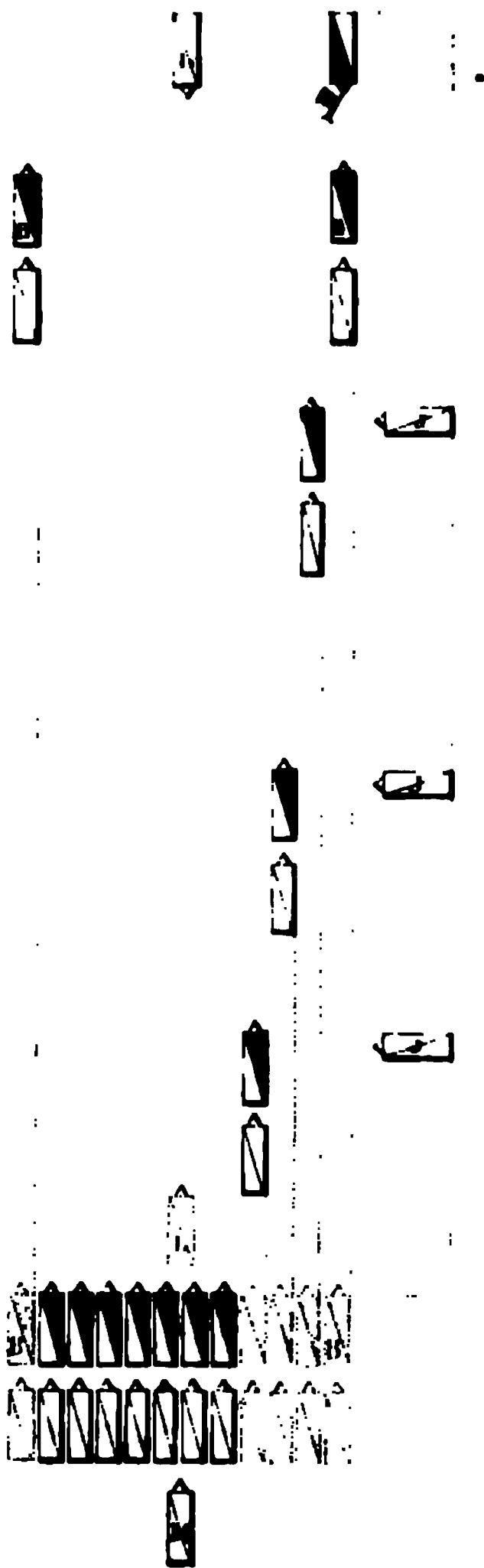




Opening the ranks

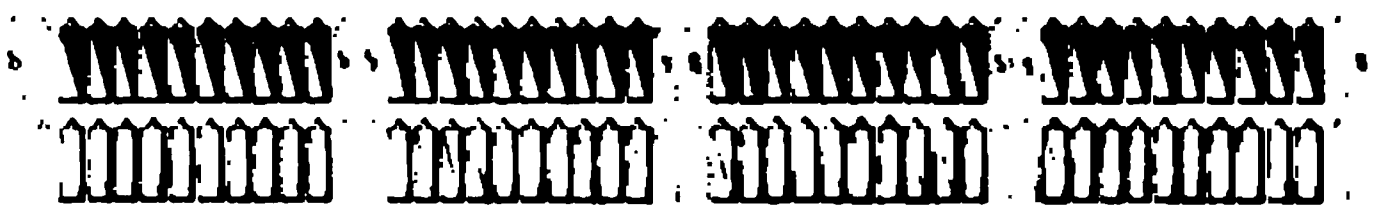
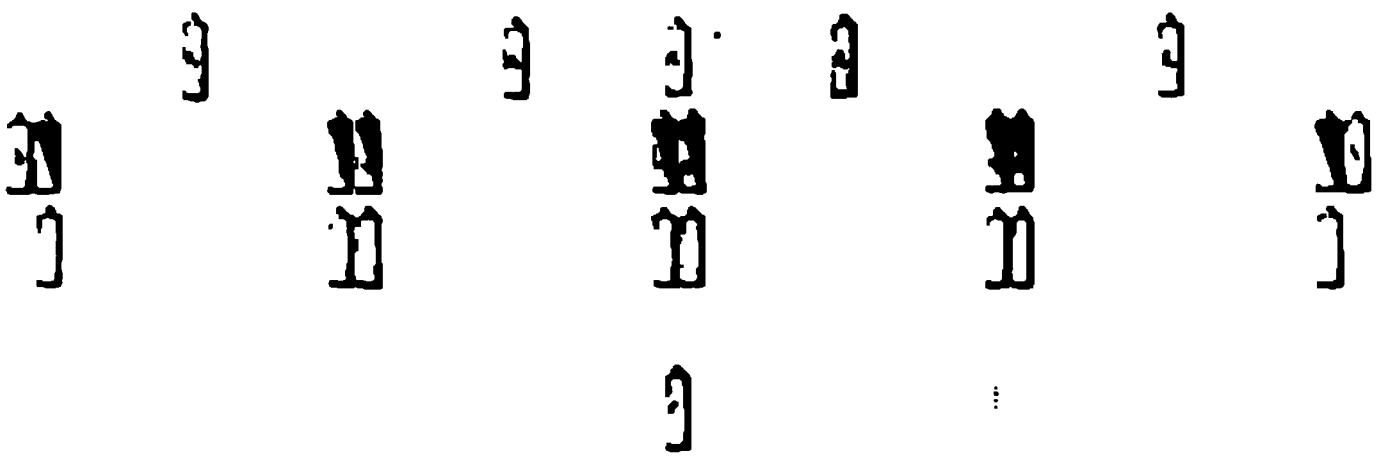


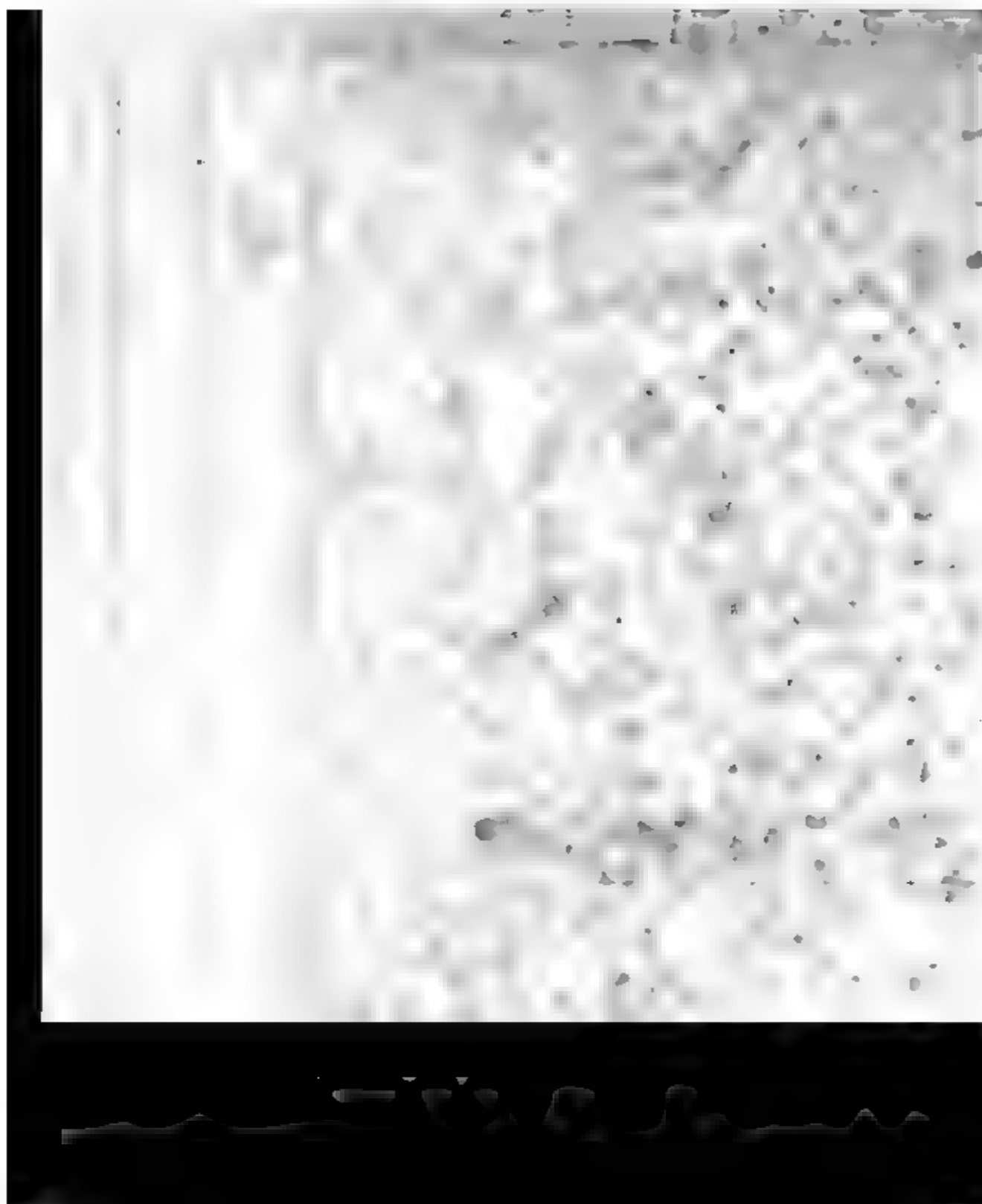
Portrait of the charge supply.



- c. Captain
- d. Lieutenant
- e. Sergeant

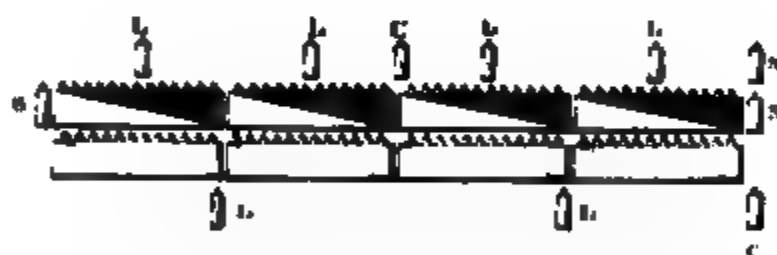
The direct march in square





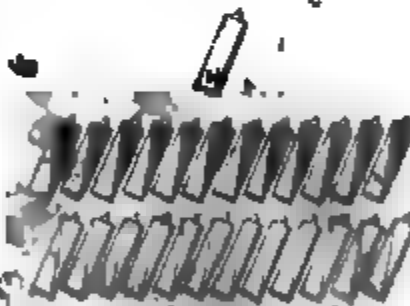
*Squadron. Marching to the front with the
Guide to the right.*

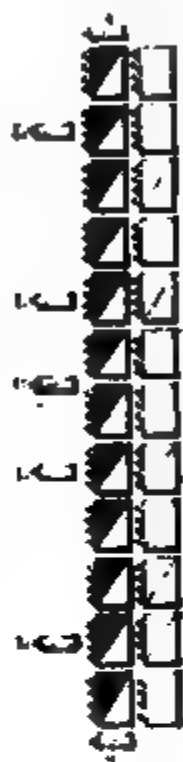
Third point of direction.



1000

Right oblique jet





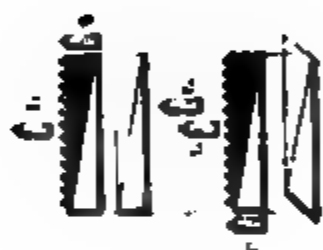
March
by a
flank



1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100



*To break by the Knight,
to march to the Life*

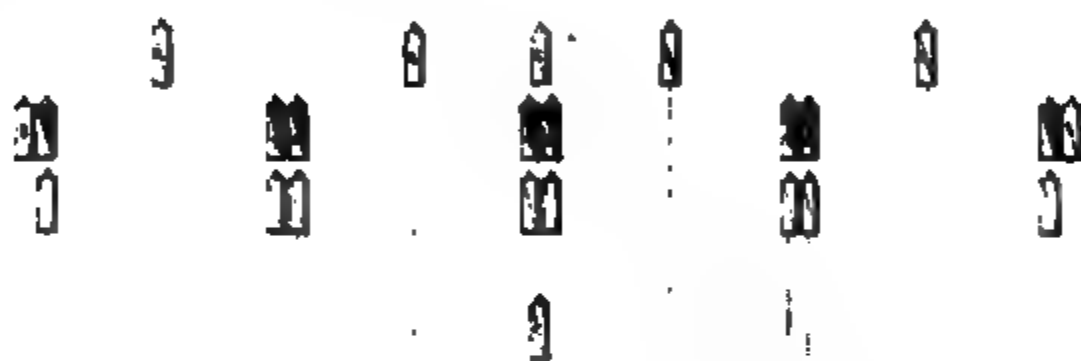


.

2000
1000
1000

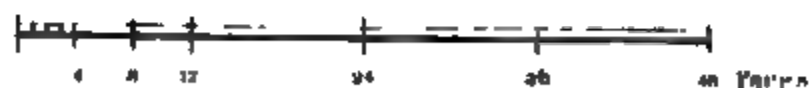
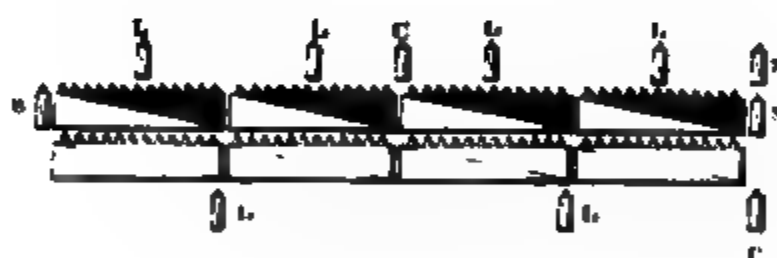
1. Captain
 2. Lieutenant
 3. Sergeant

The direct march to squadron.



*motion. Marching to the front with the
side to the right.*

ward point of direction

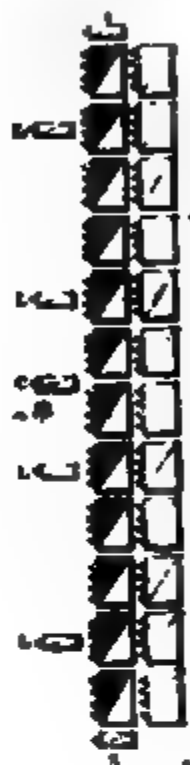




The right oblique, pilot







March
flank.

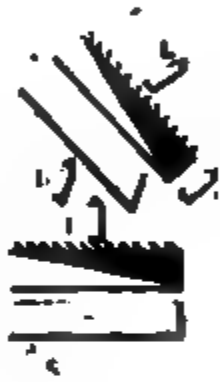


*To bend by the Right,
to march to the Left*

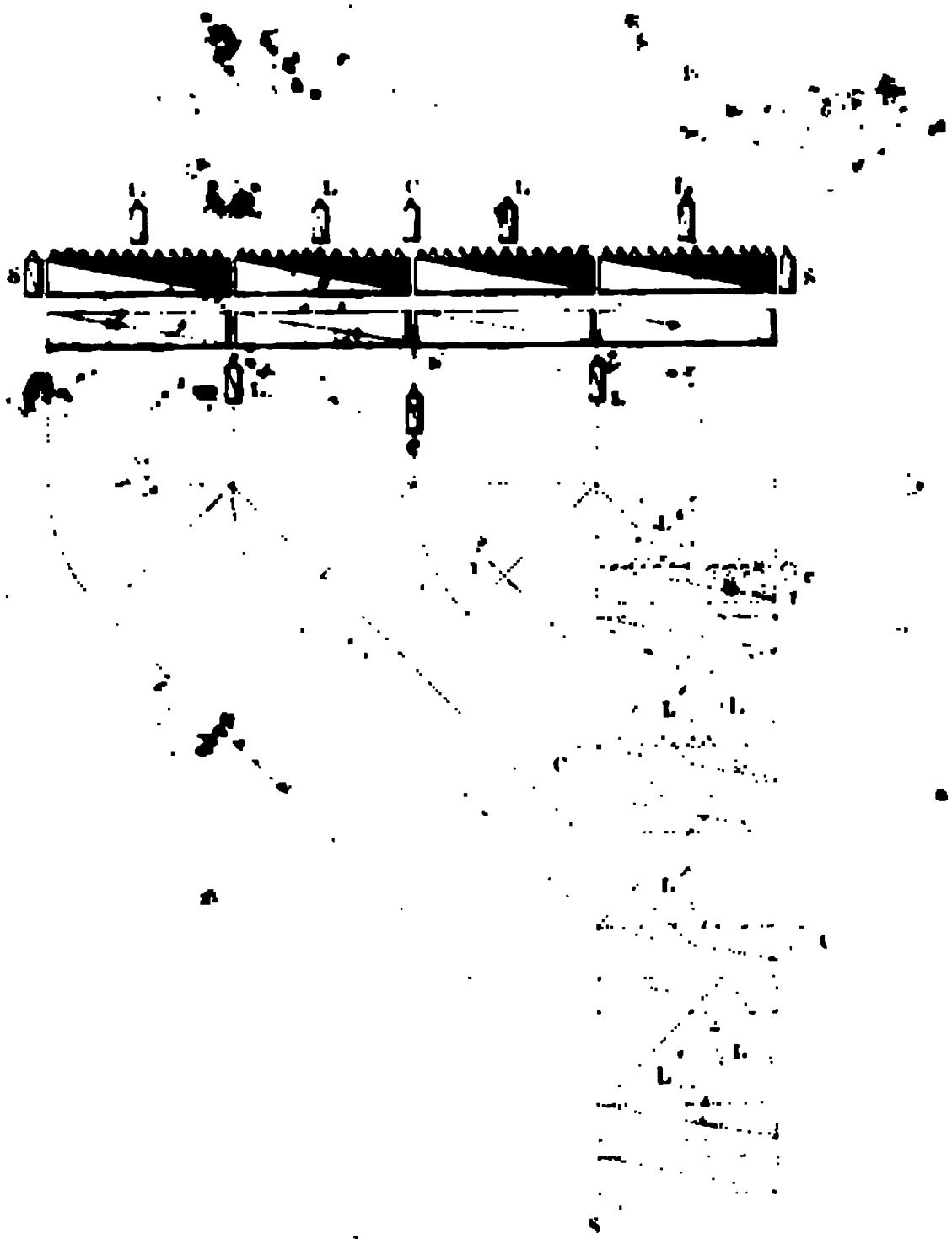




On the right into the



Front into line.



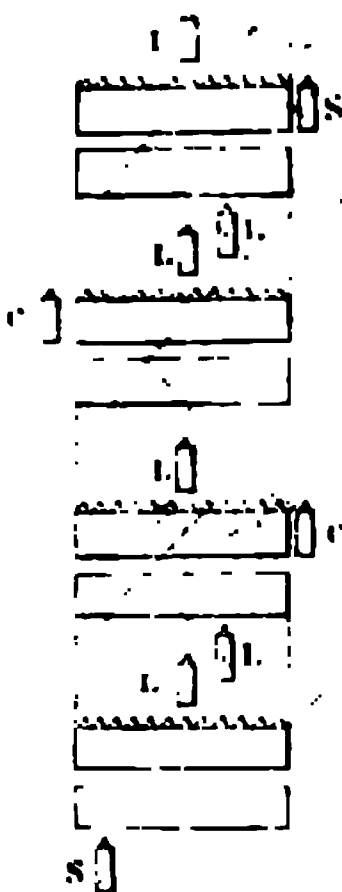
0 12 24 36 Paces

into line facing to the rear



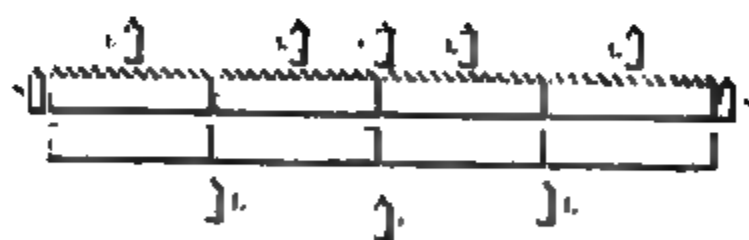
S

I



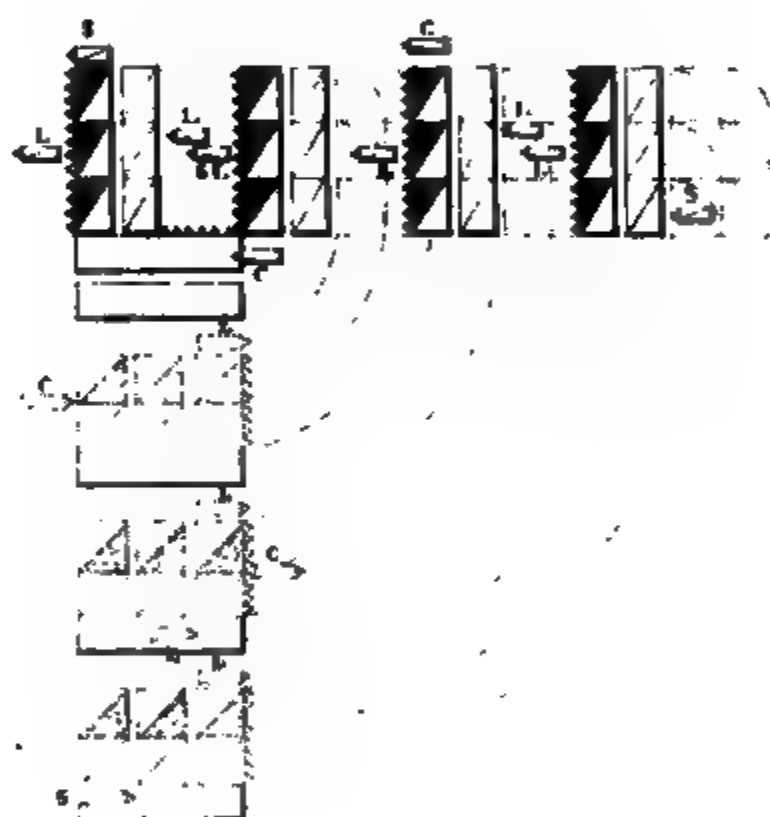
3 6 12 24 48 Feet

The Squadron marching to the front. to break
forward by Masses.



0 12 14 16 18 20 Paces

*Column, changing direction by
the right flank*



1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100

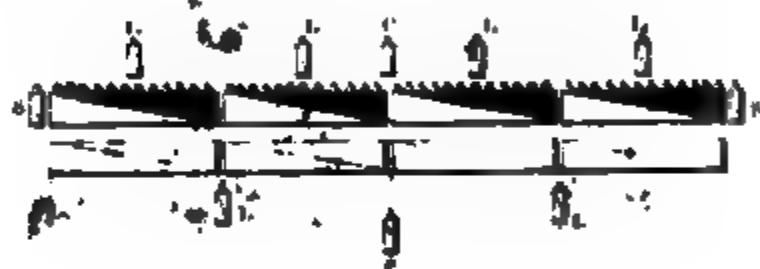
Forming Squadron



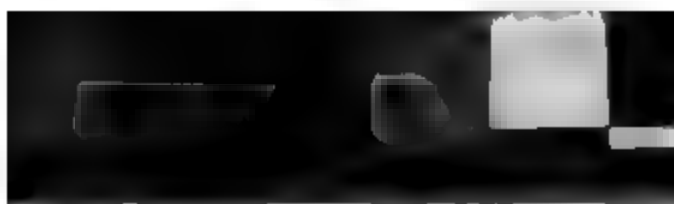


Pl 38

Front into line



1 5 24 20 50 Feet

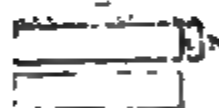




Don't let father to the 10.0



S. I. C.



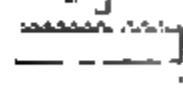
1.3.3.



1.3.



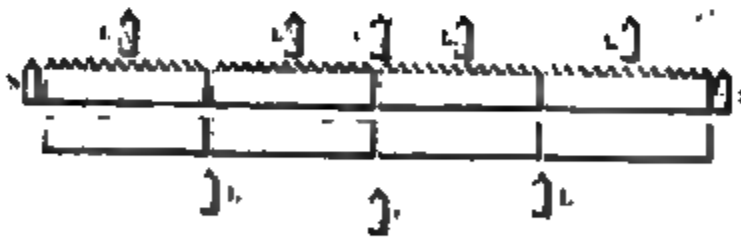
1.3.3.



1.3.

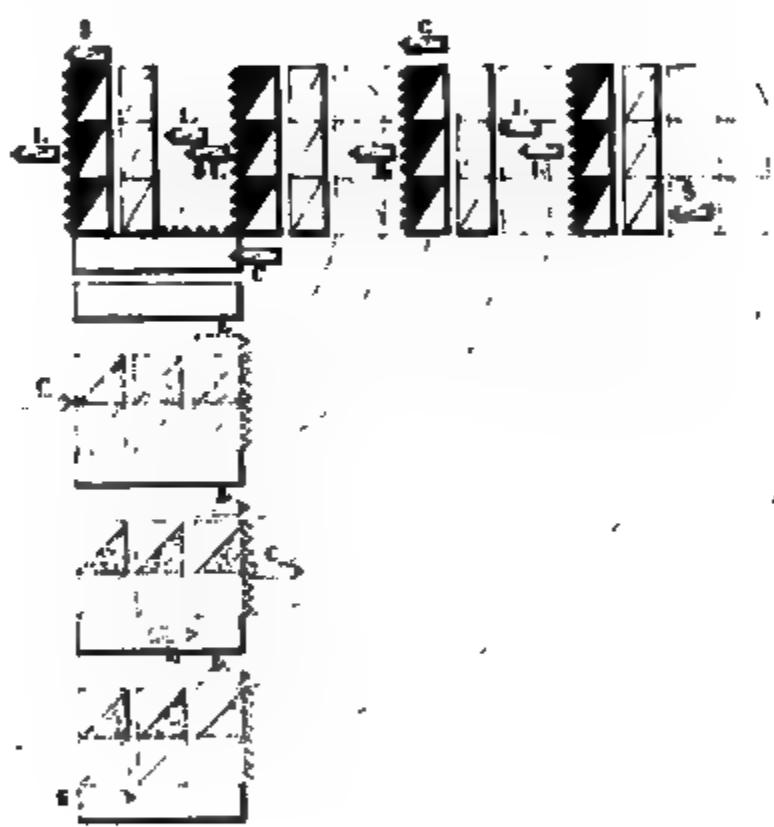


*The Squadron marching to the front, to break
forward by Platoon.*



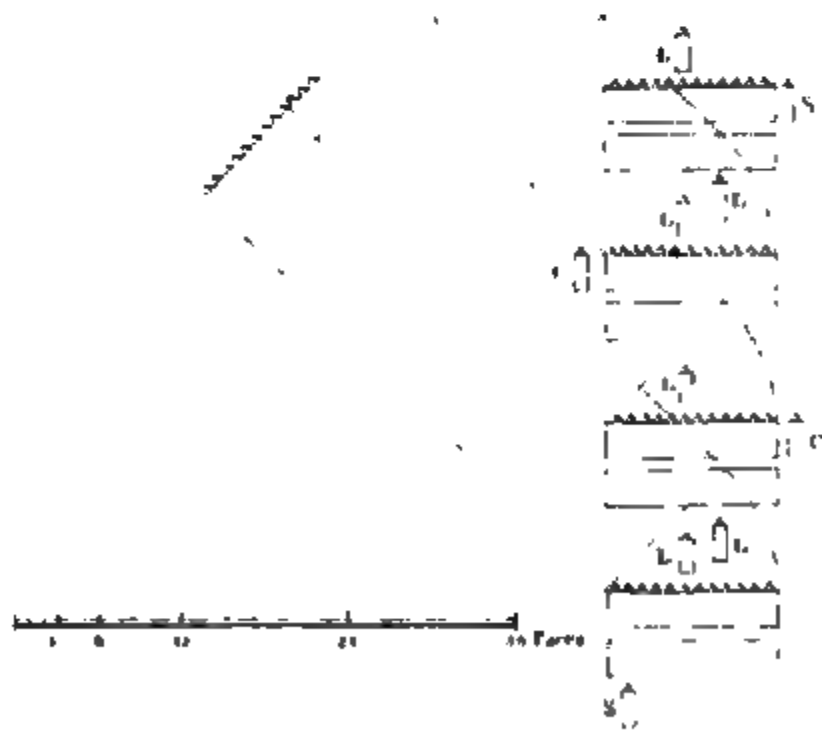
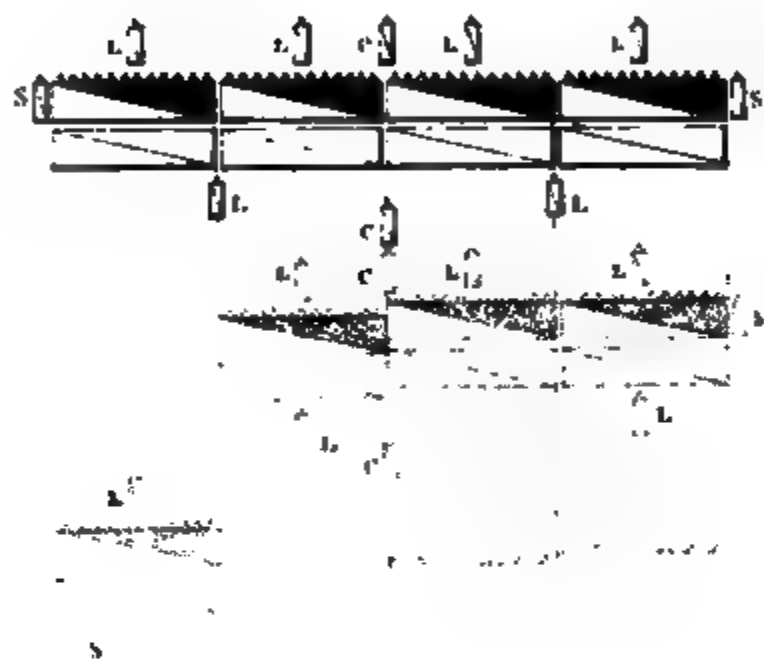
5 10 20 30 40 Paces

*Column, changing direction by
the right flank*

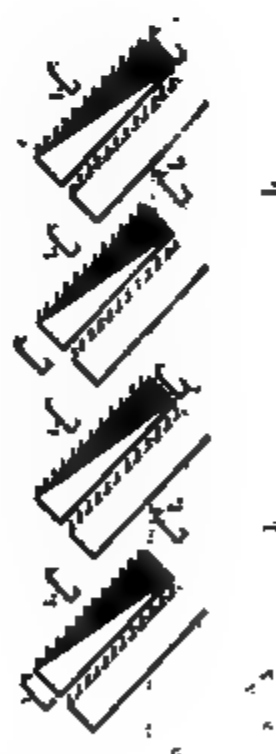


1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100

Forming Squadron



Oblique March by Platoon.



0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Feet

1

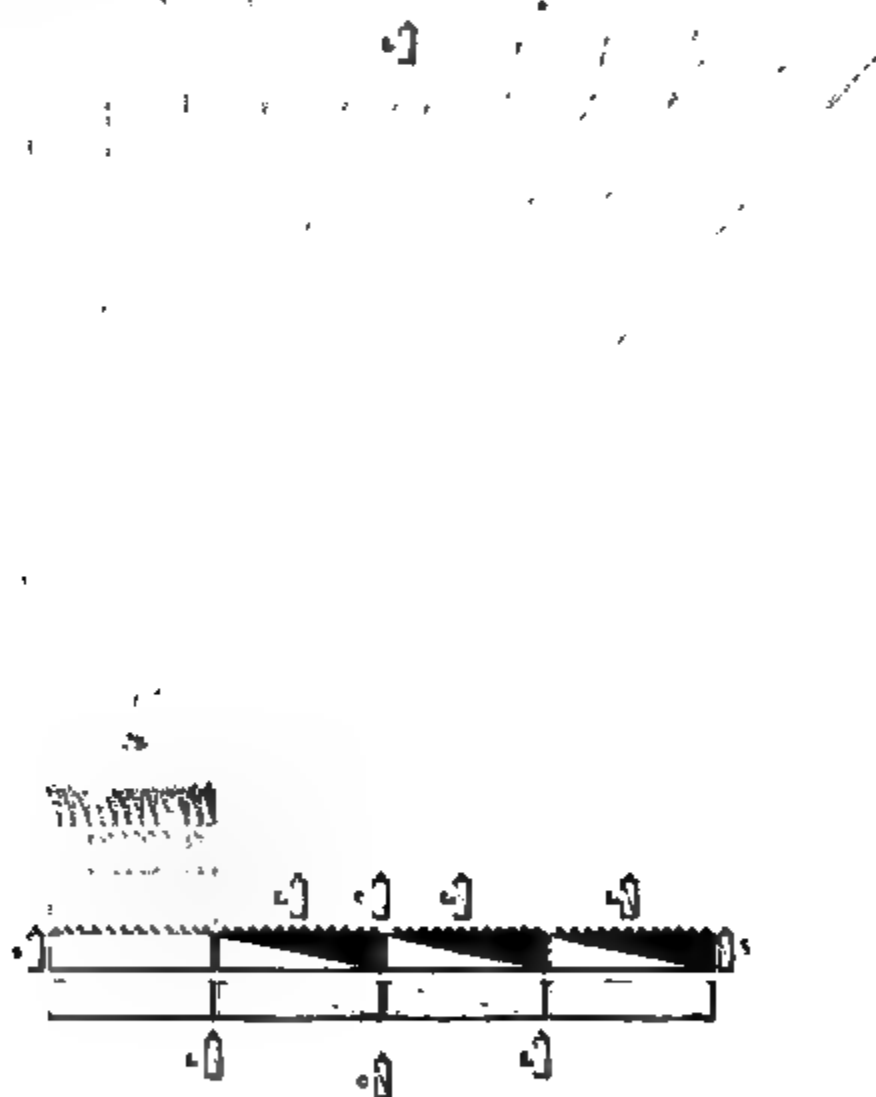
1
1
1

1

1

1

Fourth Platoon skirmishing to the front.



0 6 12 24 36 48 Feet



Fig. 1



Manner of joining intermediate points when
a single point of direction only is established



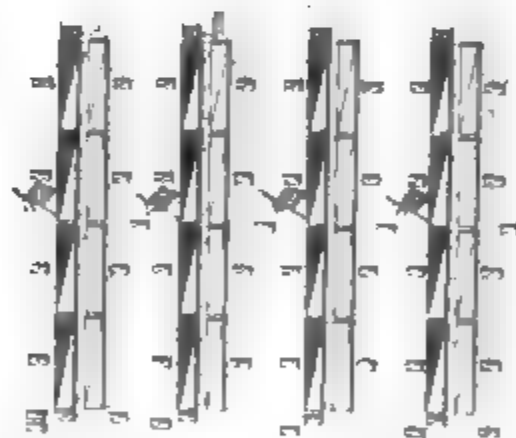
Fig. 2



Manner of joining the intermediate points
between two given points

FIRST MANEUVERE

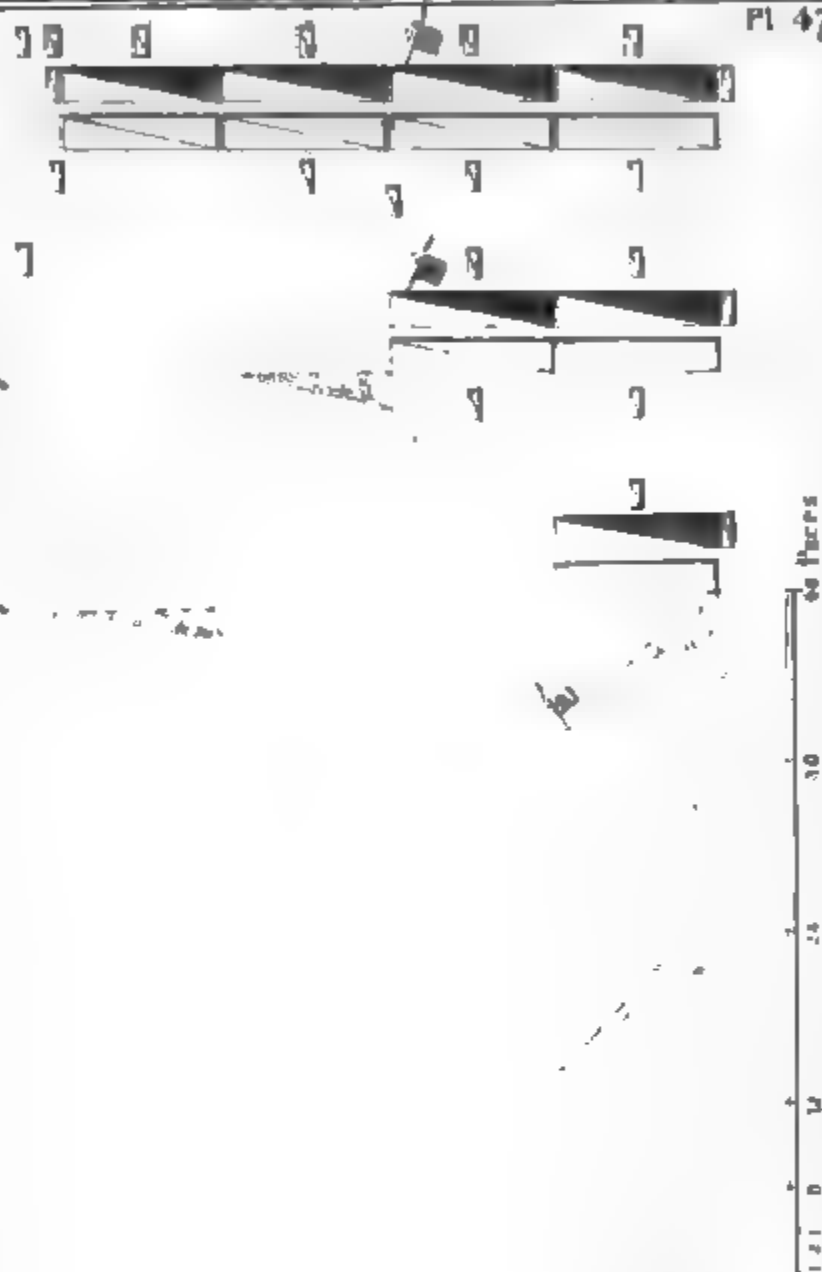
No form into these columns from a hall.



Scale 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100

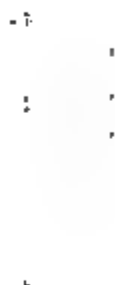
SECOND MANOEUVRE.

To pass from open to close column, by the successive formation of Squadrons.



FOURTH MANOEUVRE

Formation on the Right into Line. To form line to the left or right by inversion



100 0 20 40 60 80 100 Paces

THESE SEPTUOR SEPTUOR SEPTUOR SEPTUOR



THESE SEPTUOR SEPTUOR SEPTUOR SEPTUOR

FIFTH MANOEUVRE

formation to the front, in line

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

SIXTH MANOEUVRE

The game line, joined to the river

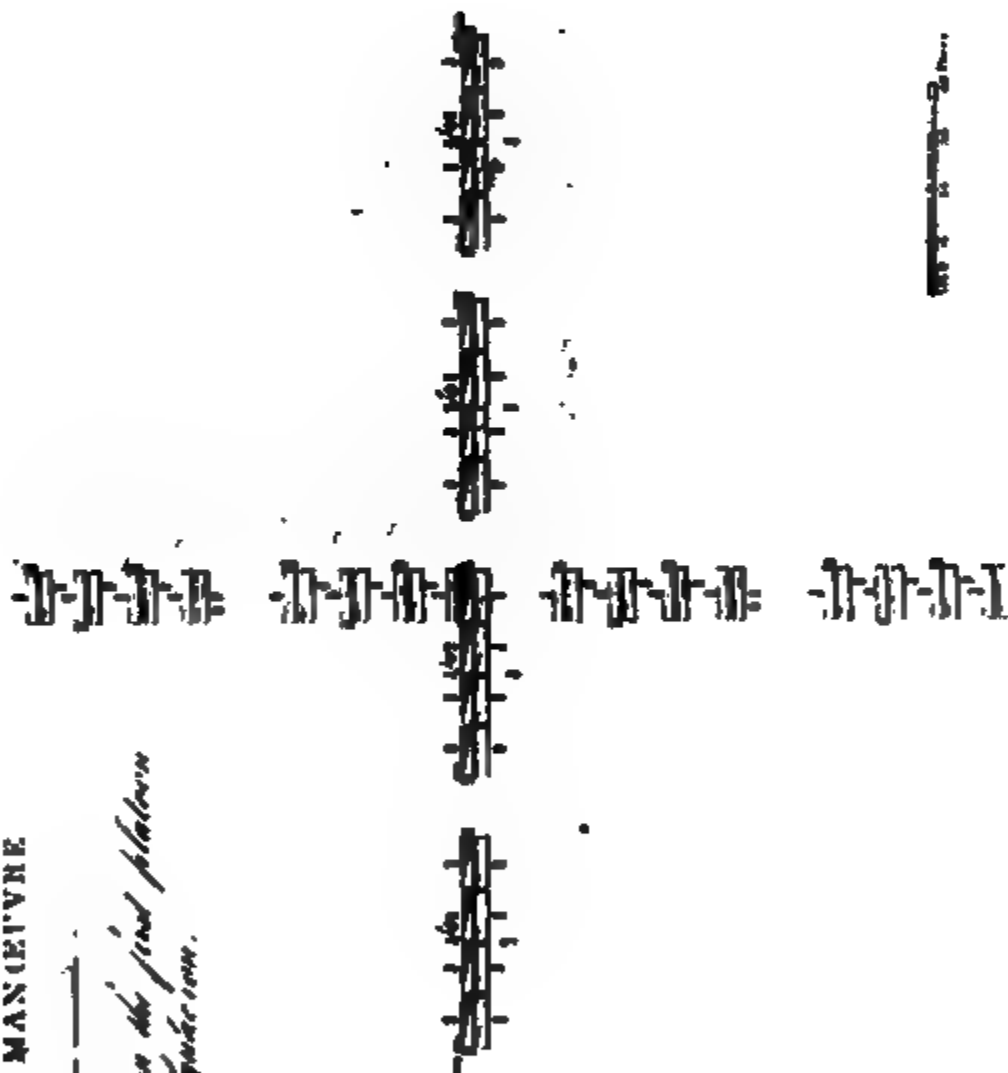


The game line, joined to the river

The game line, joined to the river

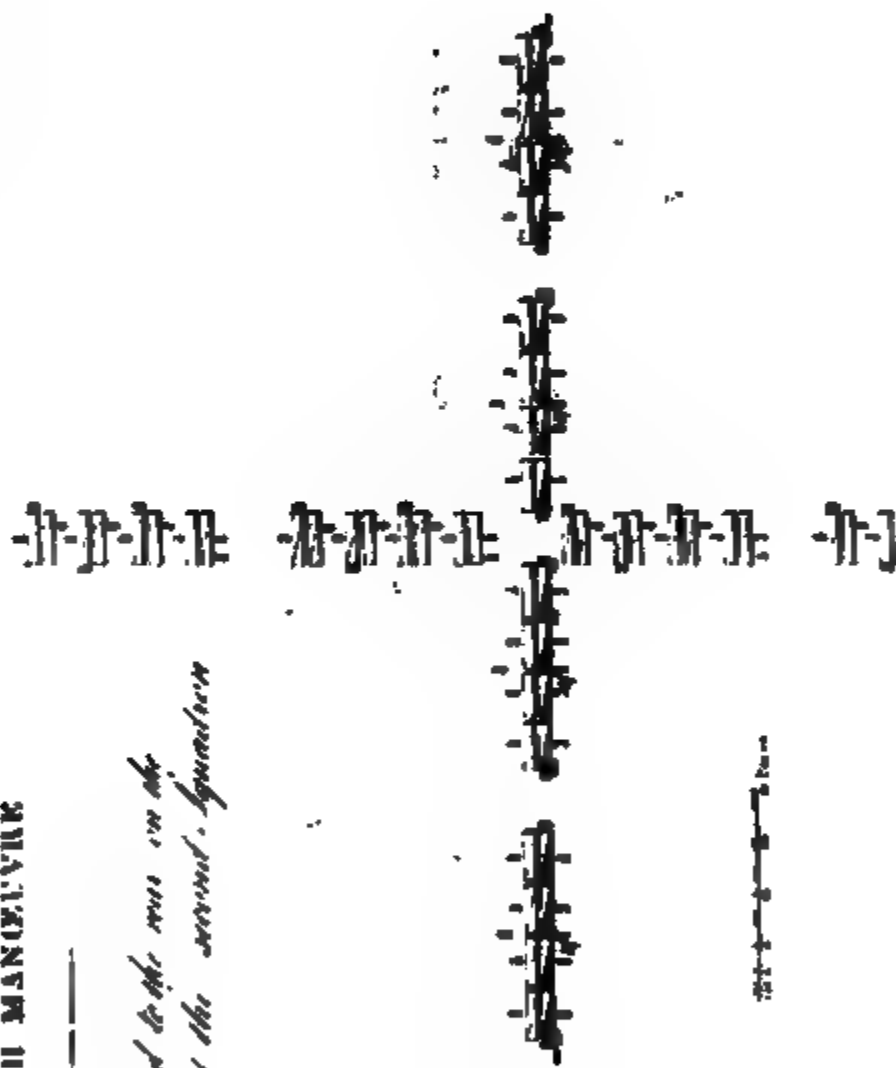
SEVENTH MANOEUVRE

*The form lies on the first plateau
of the third, quadrangle.*



SEVENTH MANOEUVRE

*The form here found to the west in the
fourth plateau of the summit. Squared*



EIGHTH MANOEUVRE

To form line by two movements to the left and join to the rear.





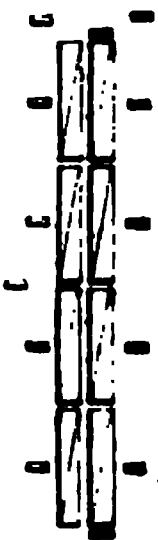
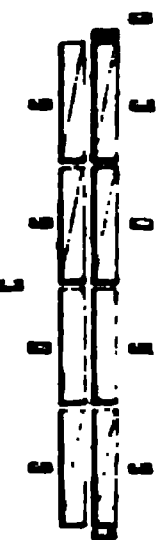
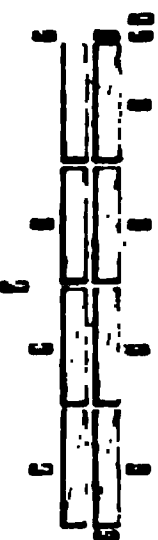
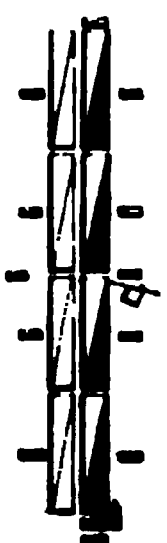
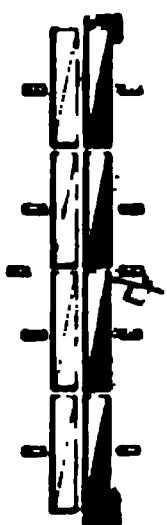
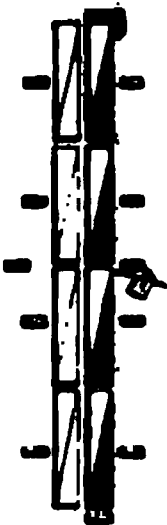
EIGHTH MANOEUVRE

Superior line to the left and front

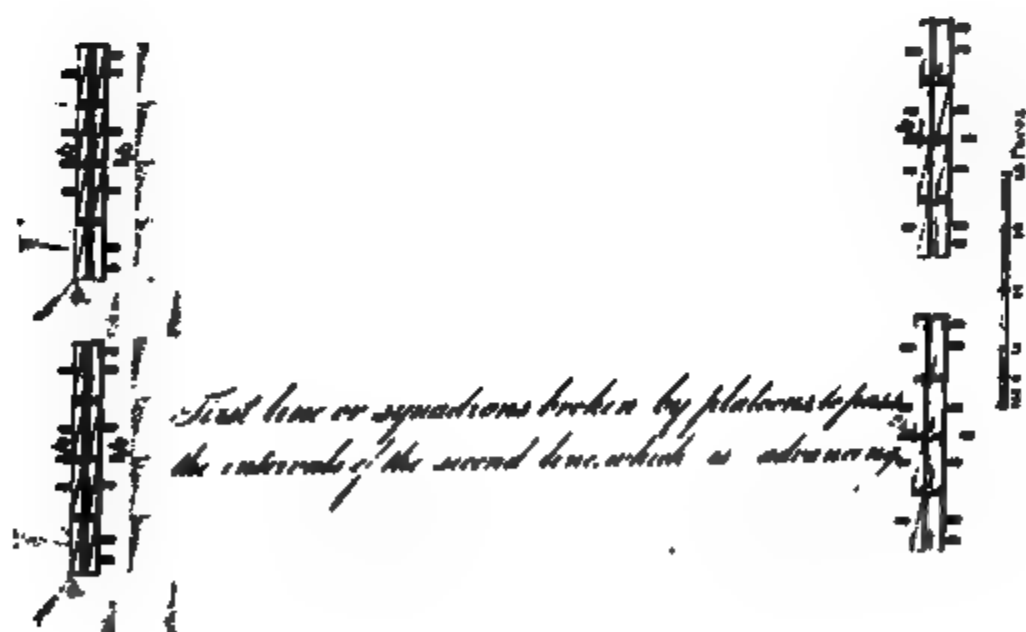
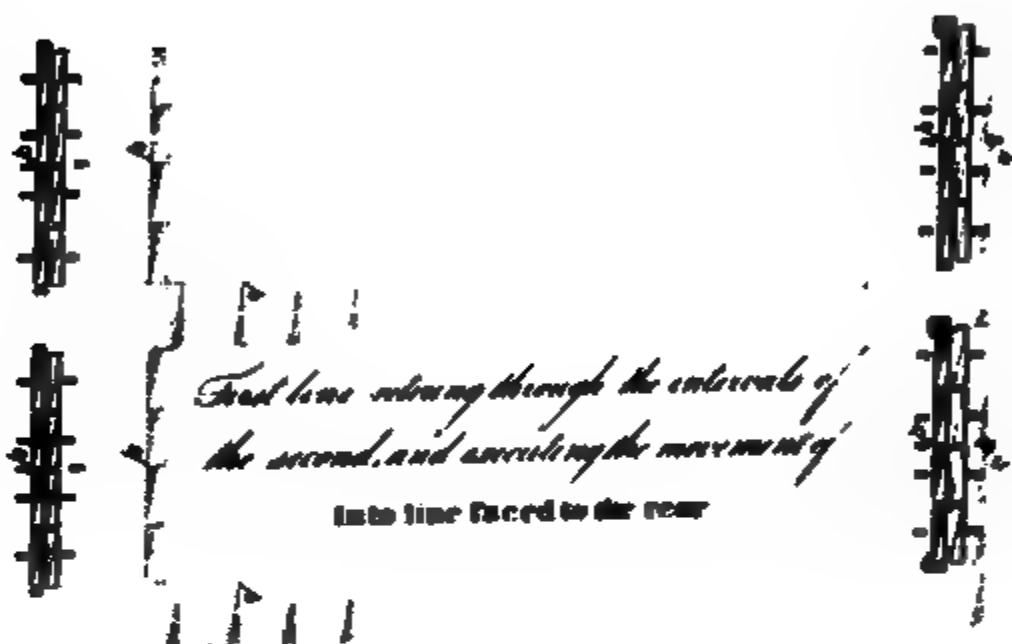
10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 65 70 75 80 85 90 95 100



Deployment of a new column to the front.



ELEVENTH MANŒUVRE.

Passage of lines



TWELFTH MANOEUVRE.

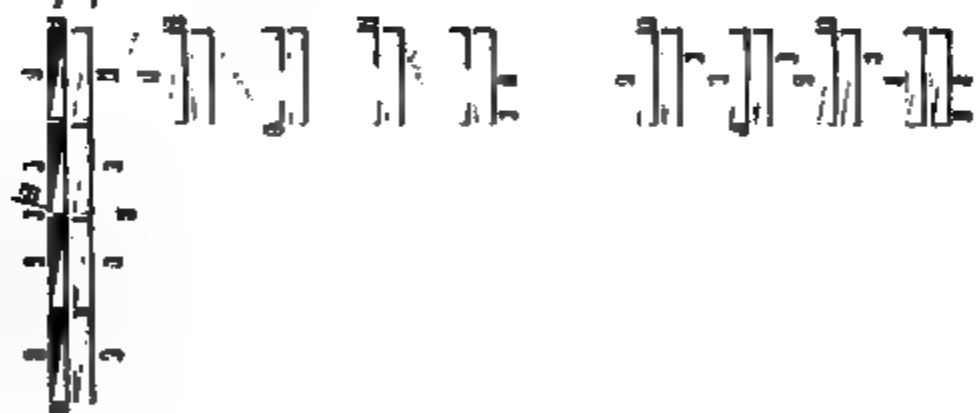
Chaque - M. et M.2^{de} Div3^{de} Div4^{de} Div



KIGHTU MANKIVRE

in plan here to the left and front

100 0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100 Feet



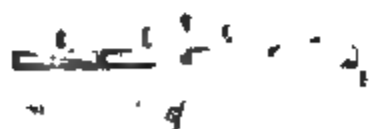
NINTH MANOEUVRE

(Deployment of a new formation to the front)



TENTH MANEUVER

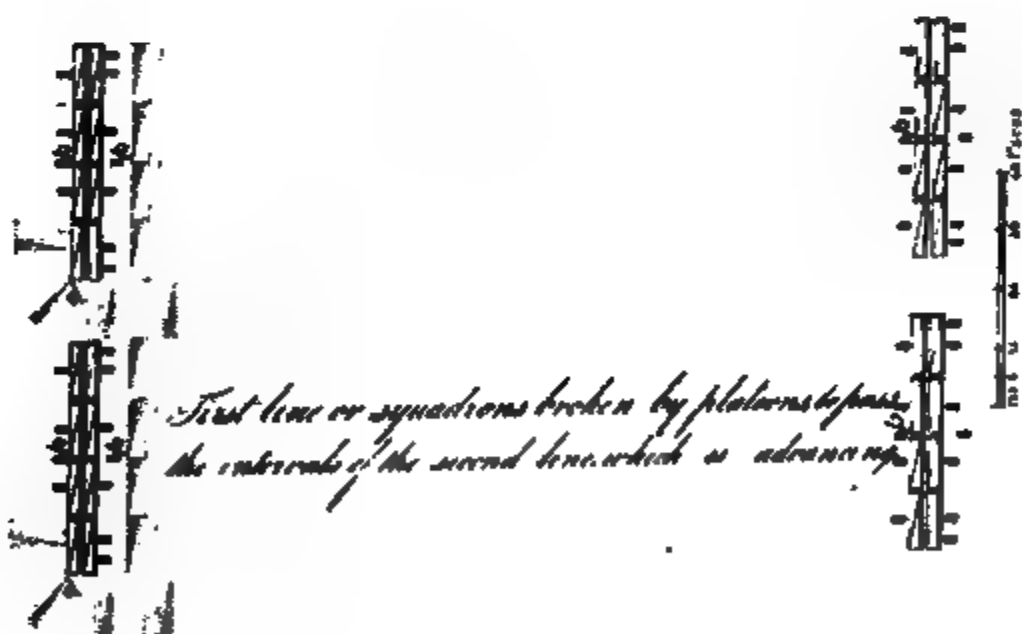
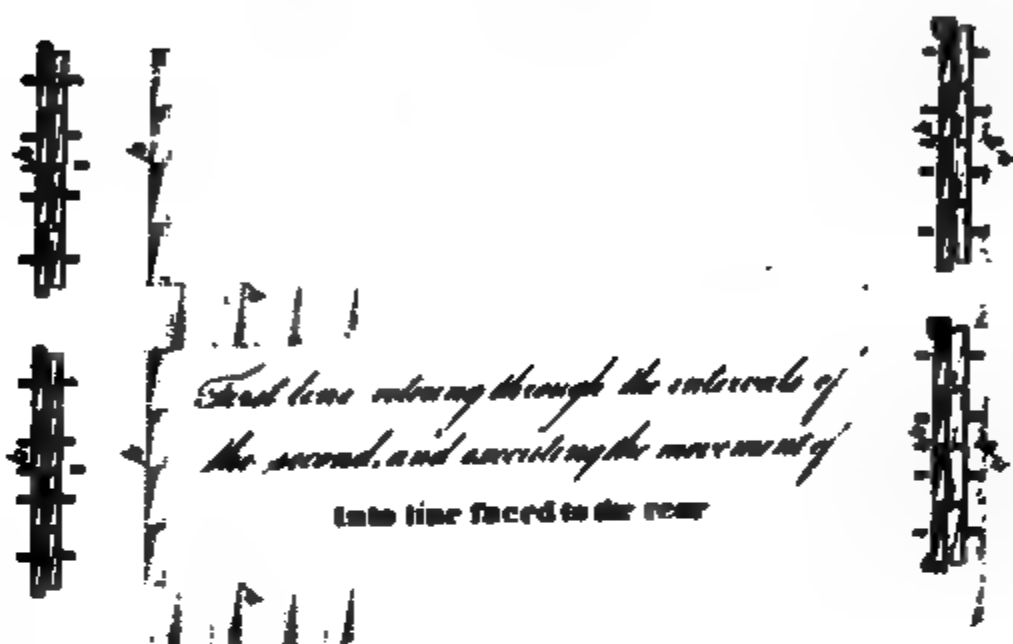
to form line to the left on the rear 'hundreds'



1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th

ELEVENTH MANŒUVRE.

Passage of lines



TWELFTH MANOEUVRE

Chaque - M. de l'art

1^{re} 2^{de} 1^{re} 2^{de} 1^{re} 2^{de} 1^{re} 2^{de}



see Pages

1^{re} 2^{de} 1^{re} 2^{de} 1^{re} 2^{de} 1^{re} 2^{de}

see Pages



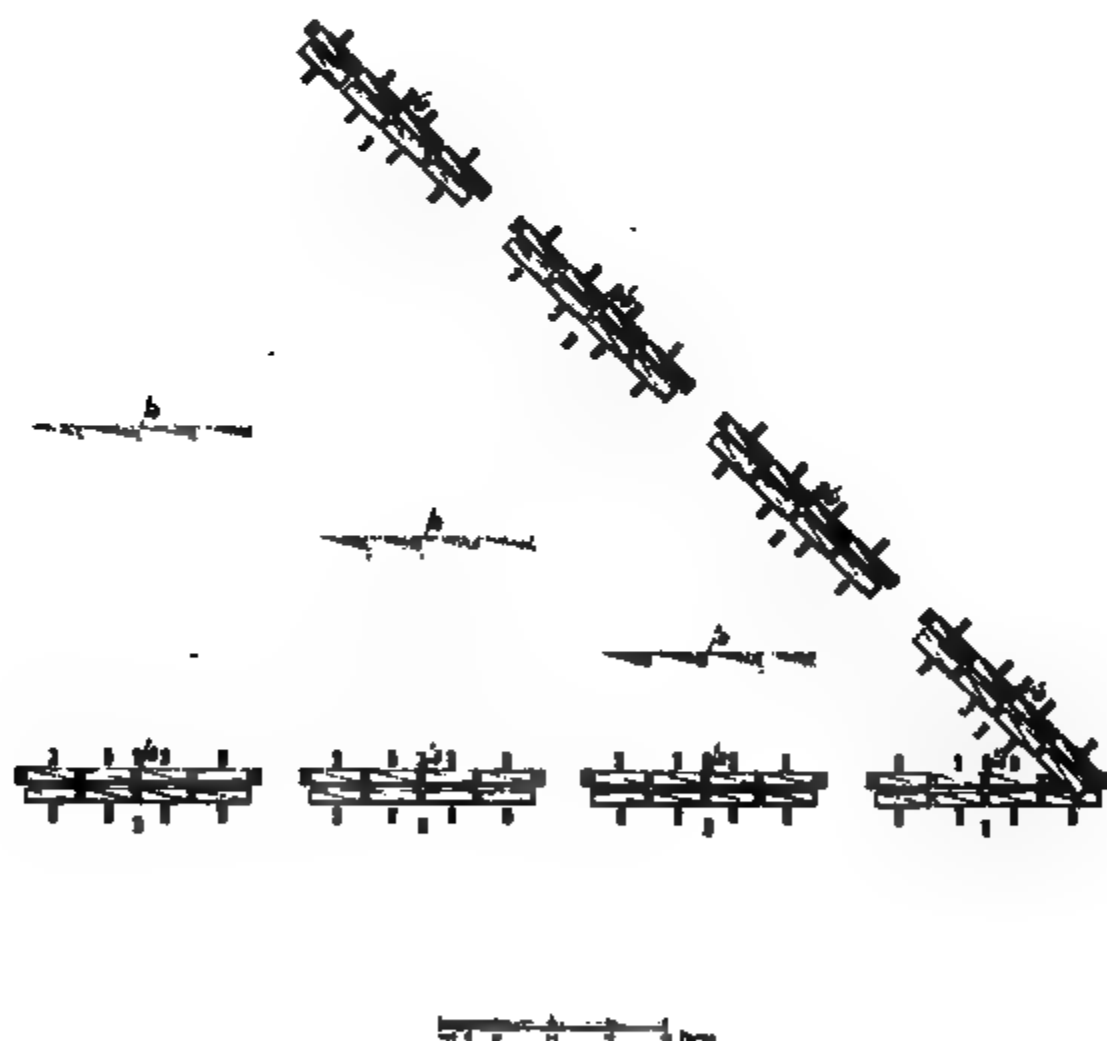
see Pages

1^{re} 2^{de} 1^{re} 2^{de} 1^{re} 2^{de} 1^{re} 2^{de}

see Pages

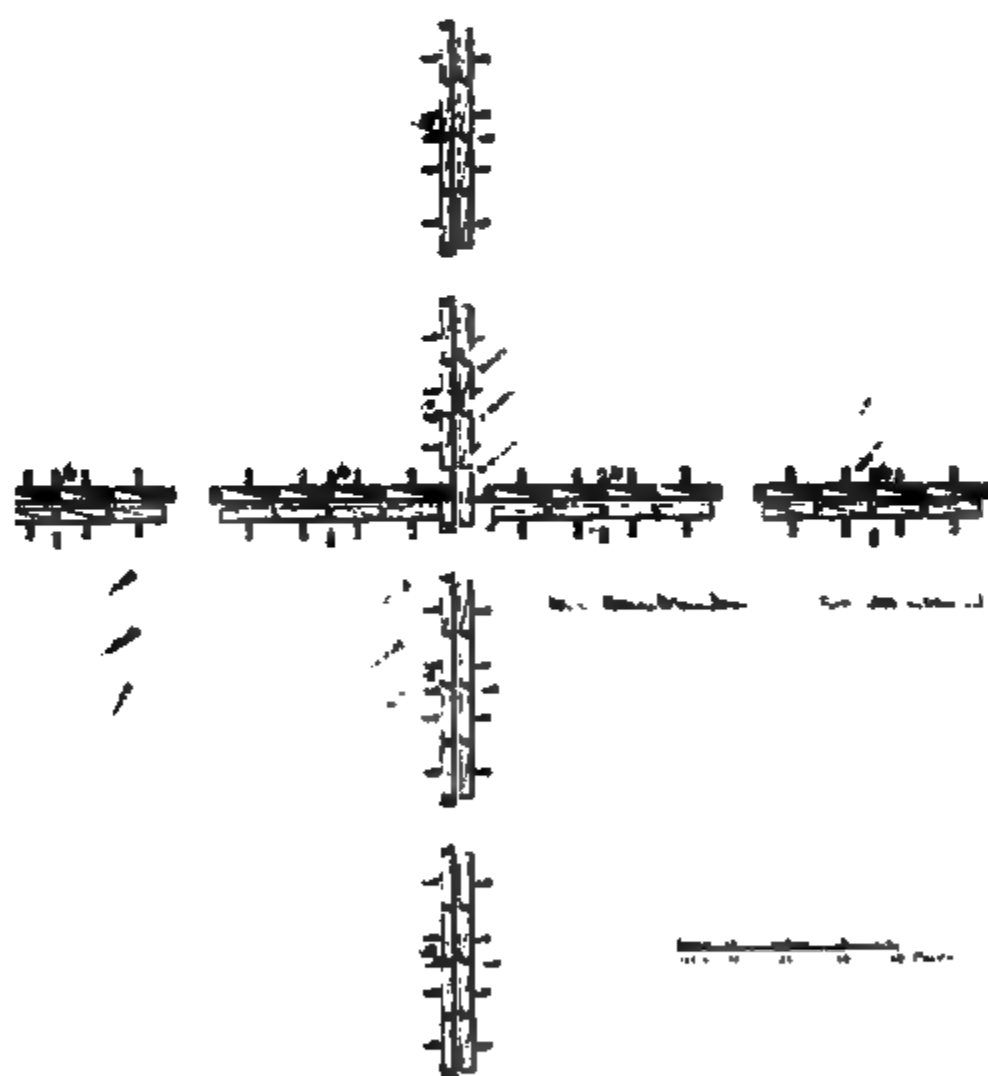
THIRTEENTH MANOEUVRE.

Change of front obliquely upon the Wings and Center.



THIRTEENTH MANOEUVRE

Charge of front, on the 1.st Battalion of the 3.rd Squadron.



Scale: 100 paces = 1 inch

NINTH MANGELWERK

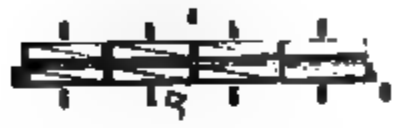
(Deployment of a new volume to the front)



1875-1876

TENTH MANOEUVRE

to join line to the left, on the river 'Apud'.



1000 8 10 12 14 16 18 20 22 24 26 28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42 44 46 48 50 52 54 56 58 60 62 64 66 68 70 72 74 76 78 80 82 84 86 88 90 92 94 96 98 100

”

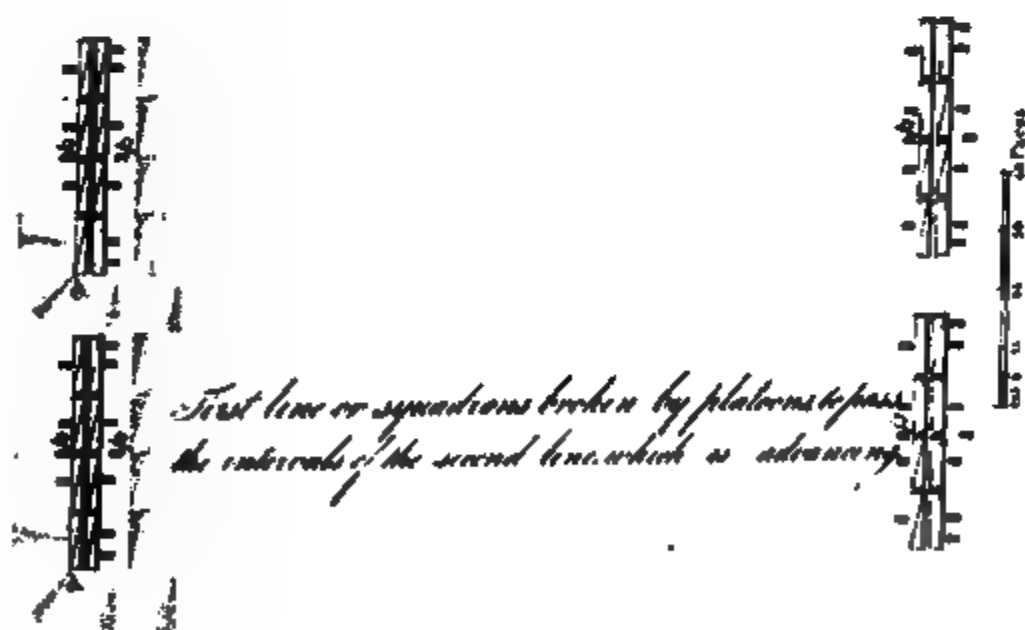
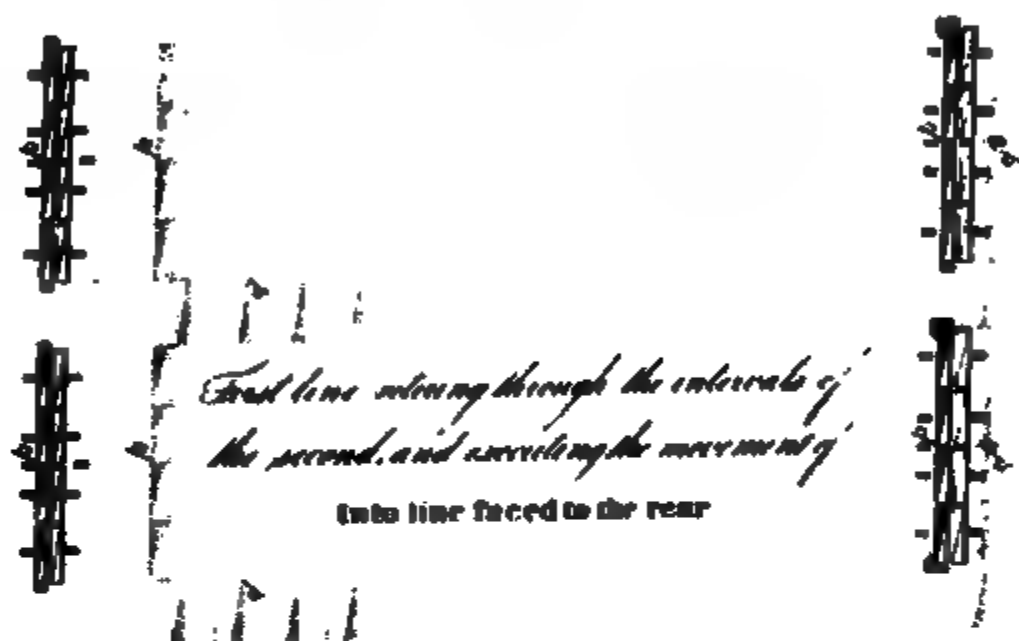
”

”

”

”

ELEVENTH MANŒUVRE.

Passage of lines



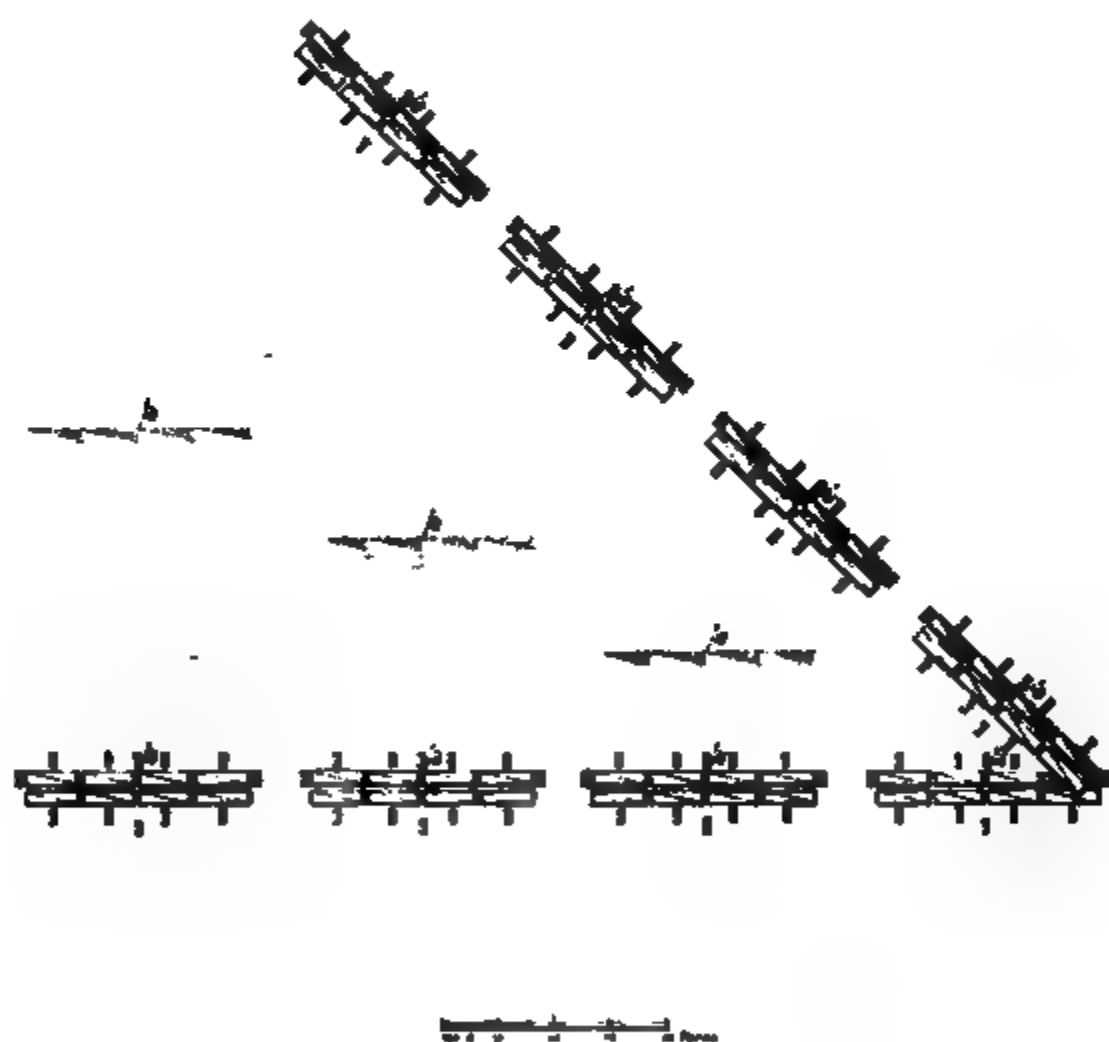
TWELFTH MANOEUVRE.

Chapman - H. School

	1 st	2 nd		1 st	2 nd		1 st	2 nd		1 st	2 nd
1 st	2 nd		1 st	2 nd		1 st	2 nd		1 st	2 nd	

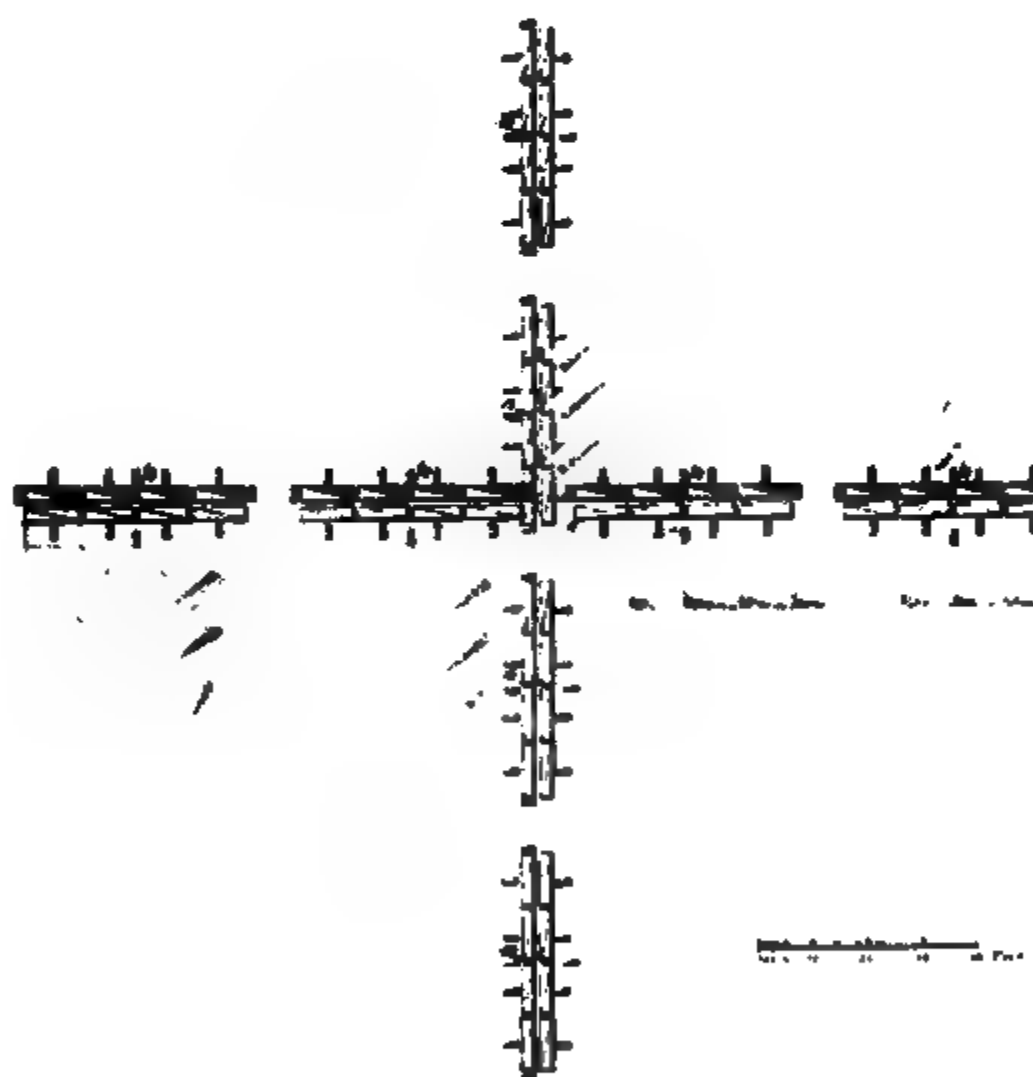
THIRTEENTH MANOEUVRE.

Change of front obliquely upon the Wings and Centre



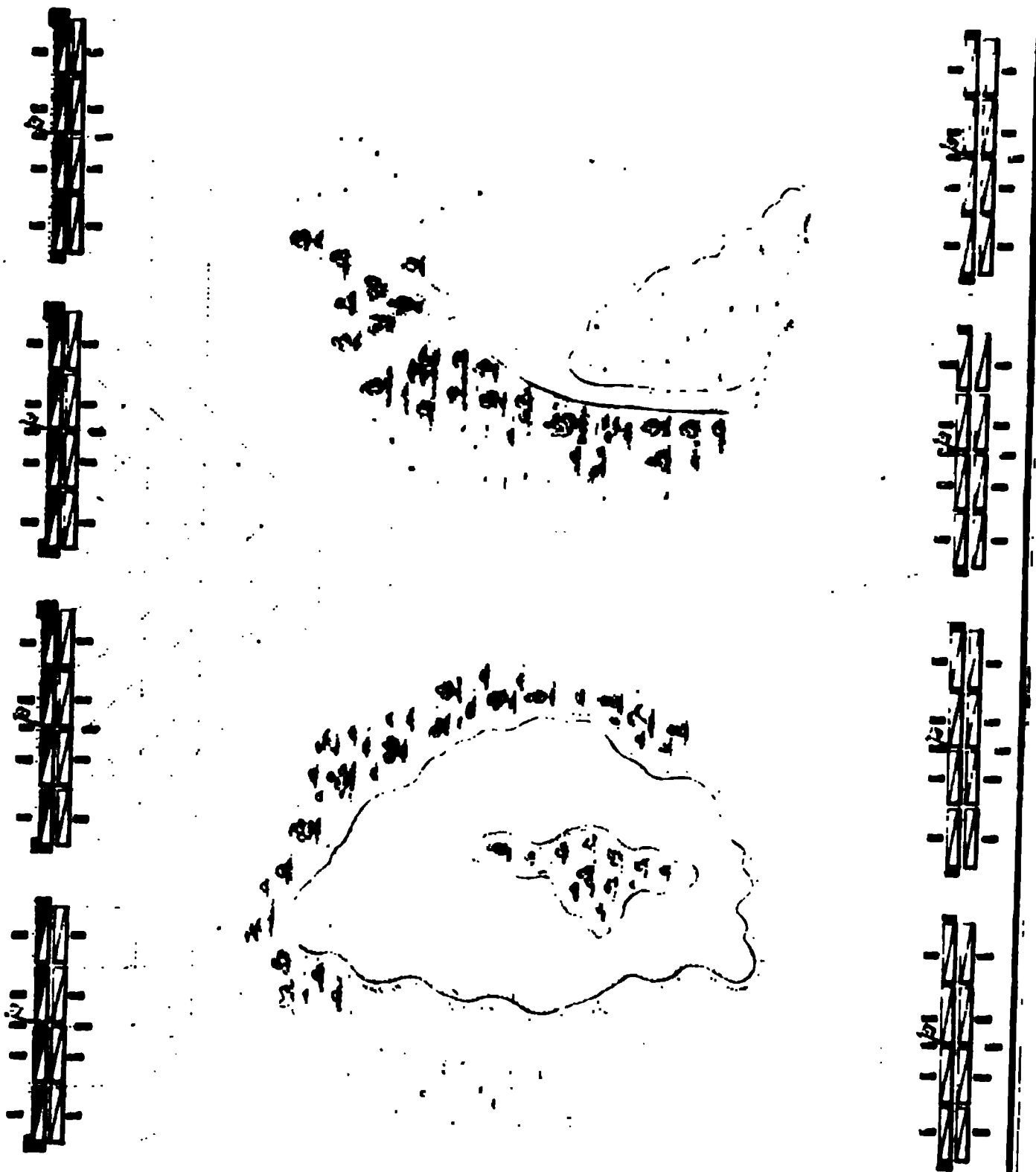
THIRTEENTH MANOEUVRE.

Change of front on the 1st Battalion of the 5th Regt.



FOURTEENTH MANOEUVRE.

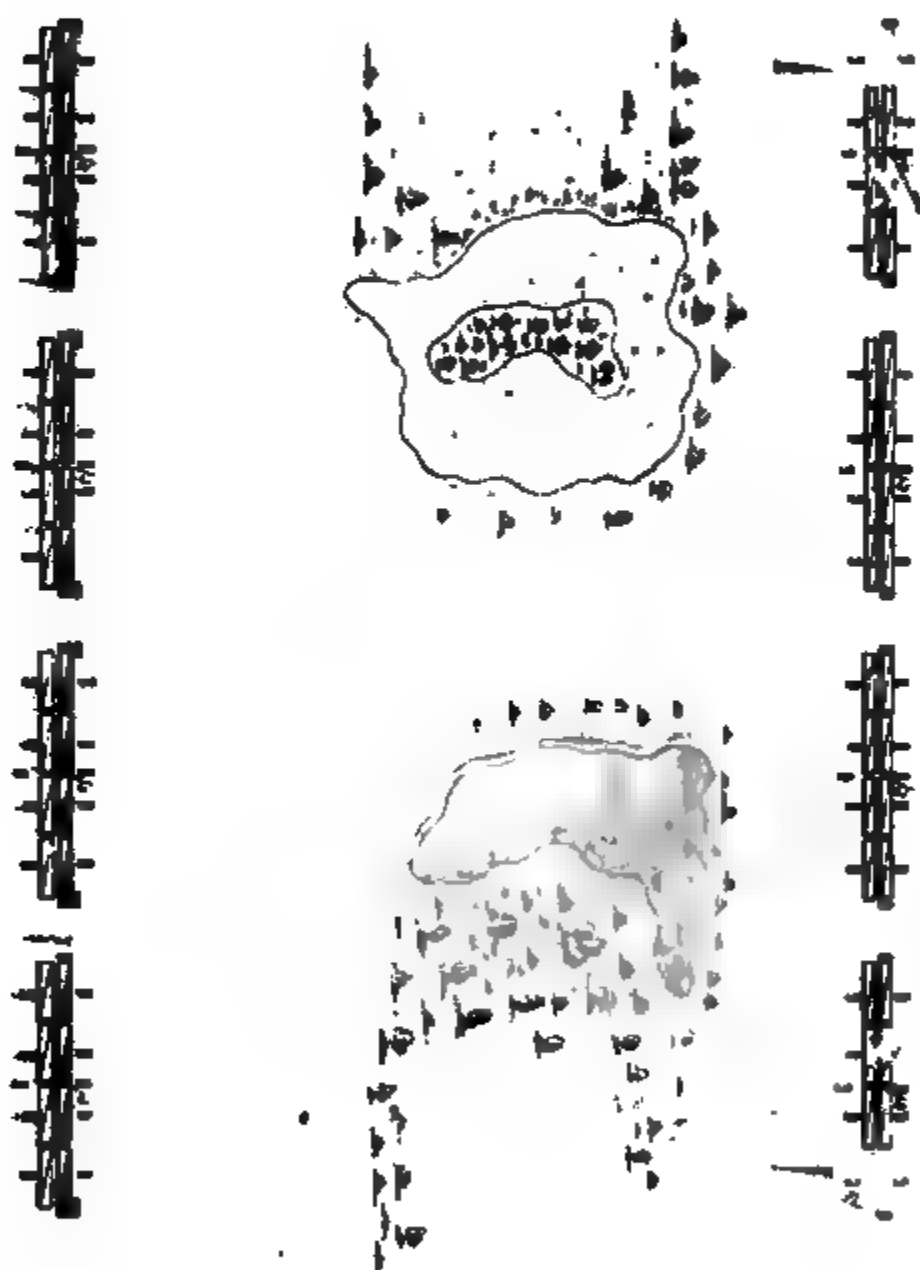
Passage of a Detach. to the front. from line.



0 10 20 30 40 Paces



FIFTEENTH MANOEUVRE

Passage of a Tugboat to the Shore from Sea

100 50 25 12 5 Feet

SIXTEENTH MANOEUVRE.

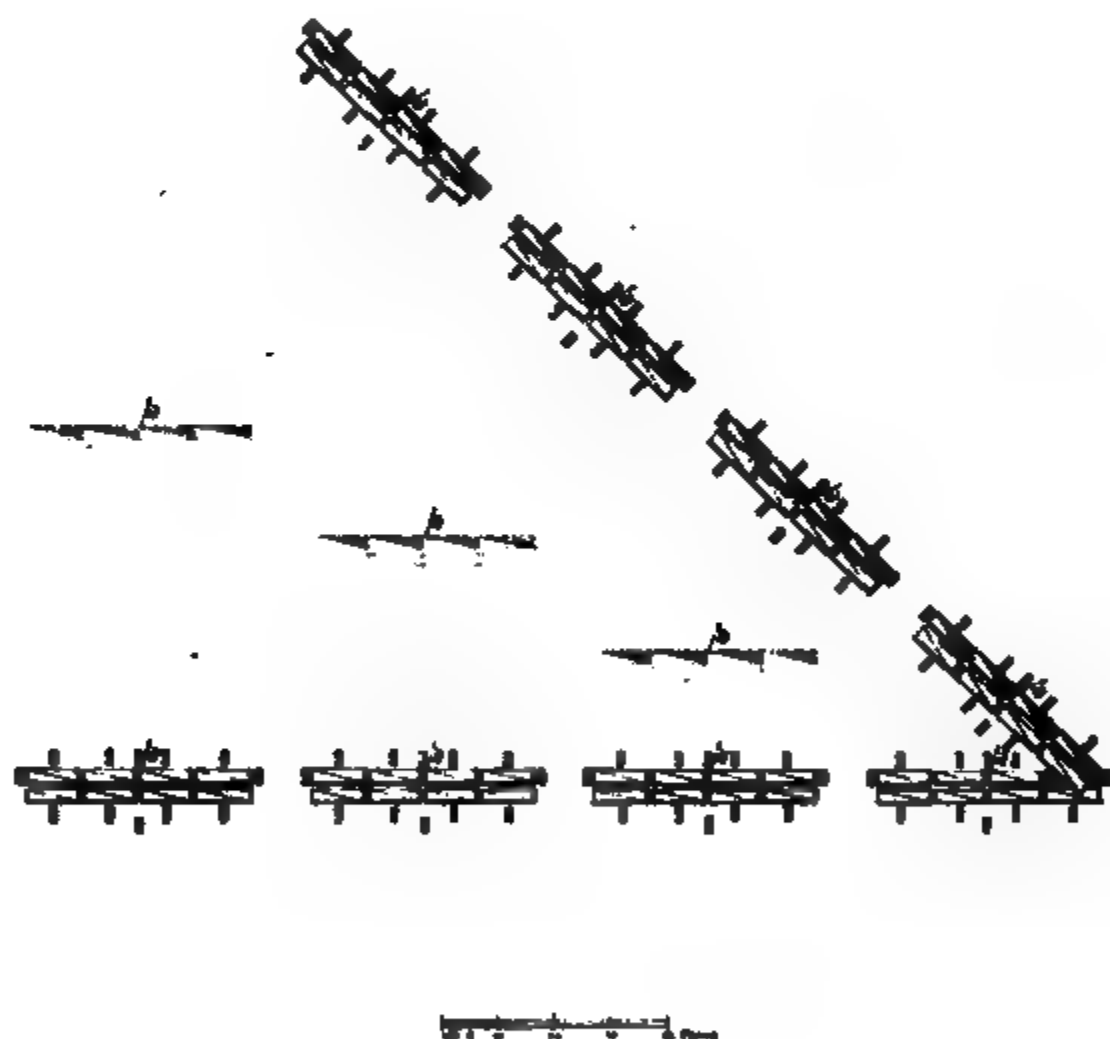
Evolution by Squadrons division distance, advancing by the right.

100 50 25 12 5 Feet



THIRTEENTH MANOEUVRE.

Change of front obliquely upon the Wings and Centre.

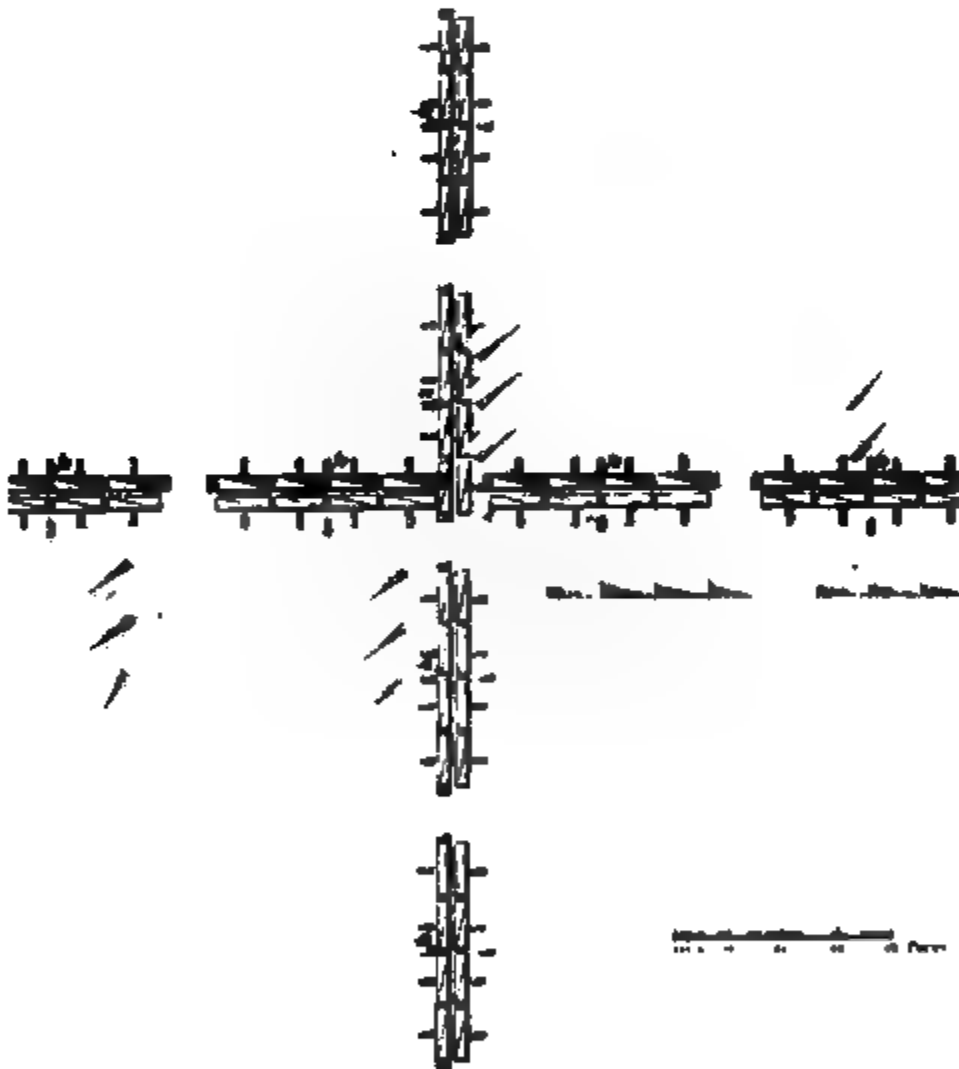




P

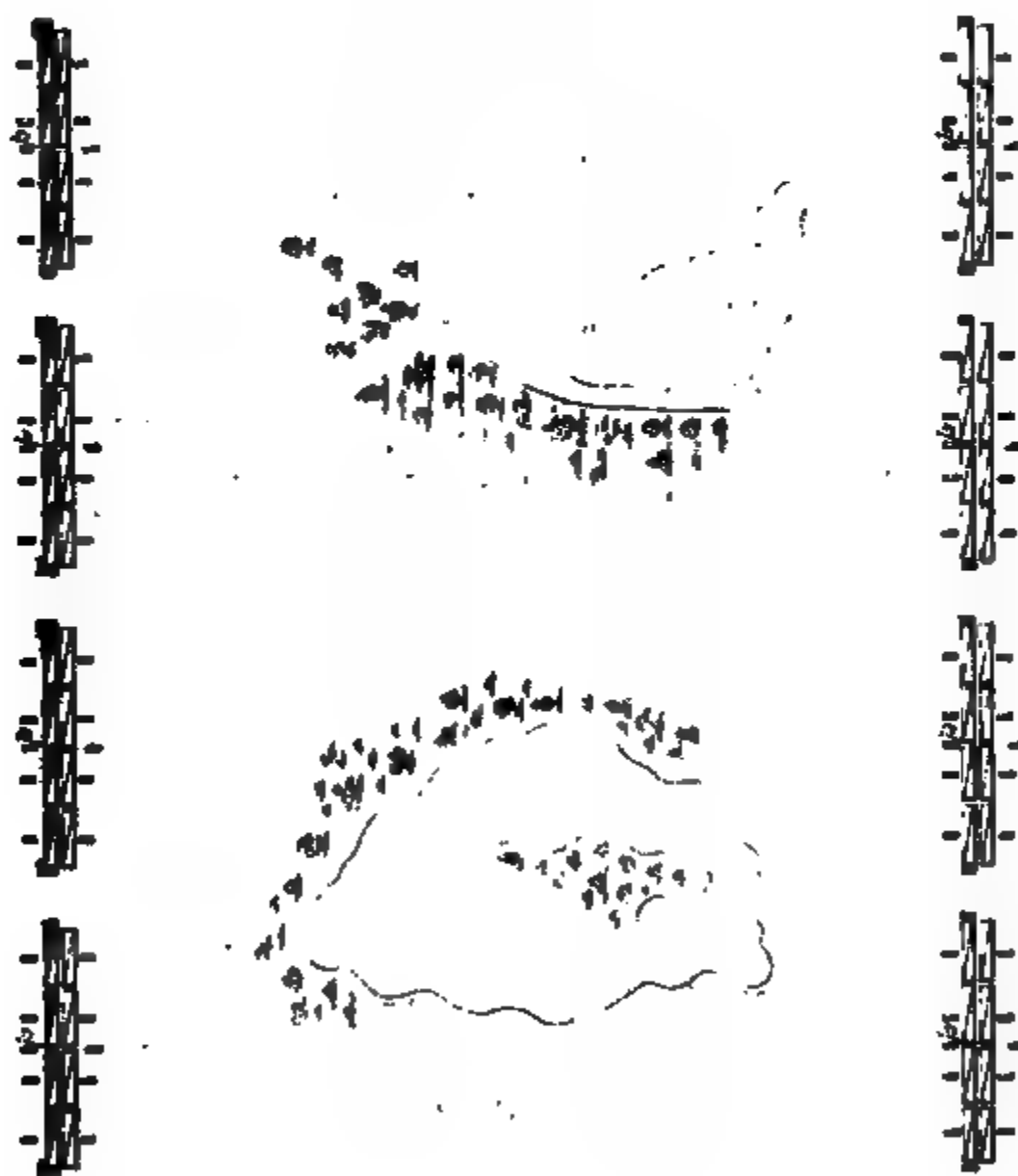
THIRTEENTH MANOEUVRE

Change of front, on the 1st Battalion of the 5^e Line



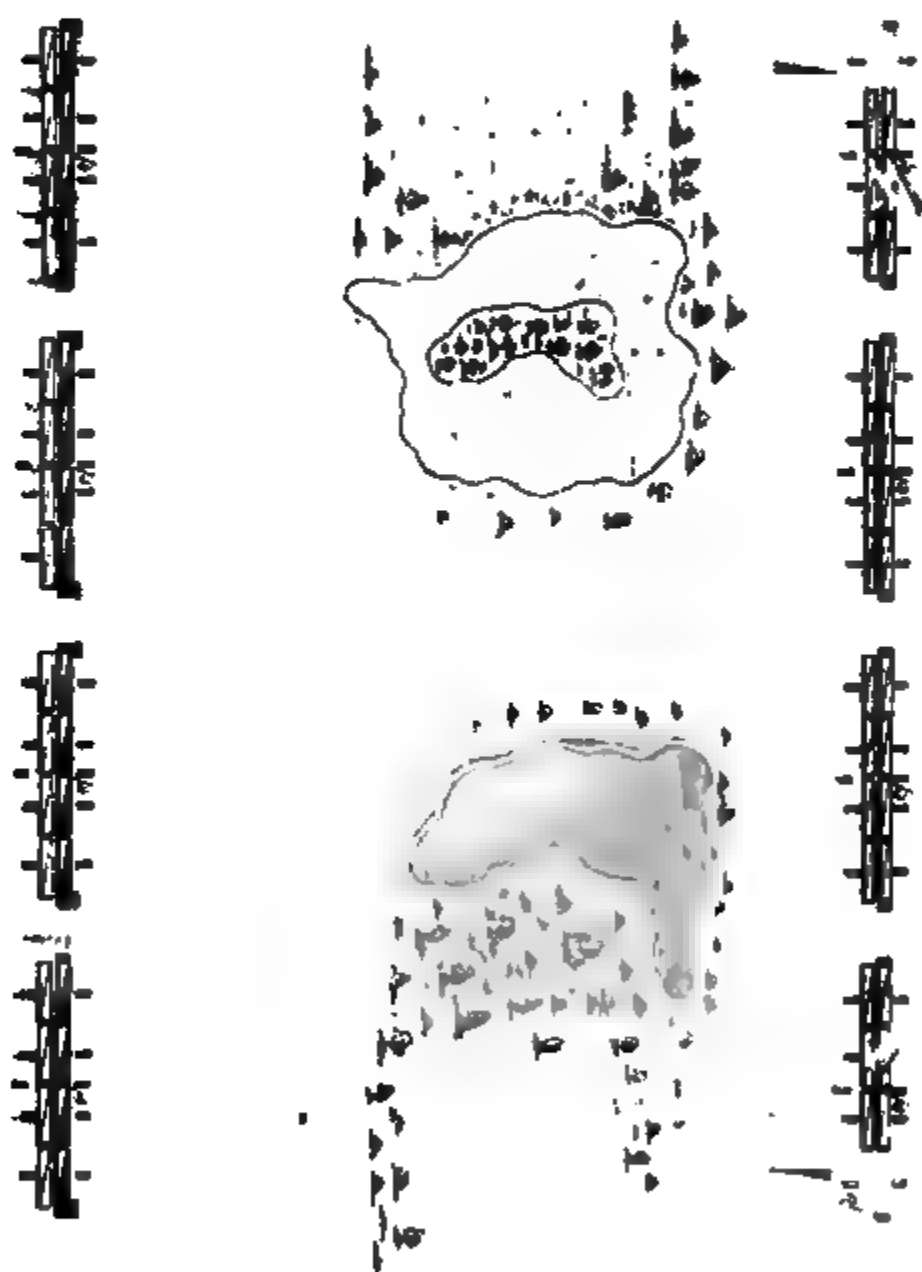
FOURTEENTH MANŒUVRE

Manœuvre of a-Infantry to the front. from line



FIFTEENTH MANOEUVRE

Passage of a Detach. to the River from Line



0 10 20 30 40 50 60 Fms.

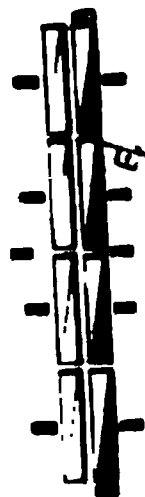
SIXTEENTH MANOEUVRE.

Continued by Squadrons division distance. advancing by the right.



SIXTEENTH MANOEUVRE.

Echellons by squadrons, at various distances, moving by the right.



SEVENTEENTH MANŒUVRE

March in Line

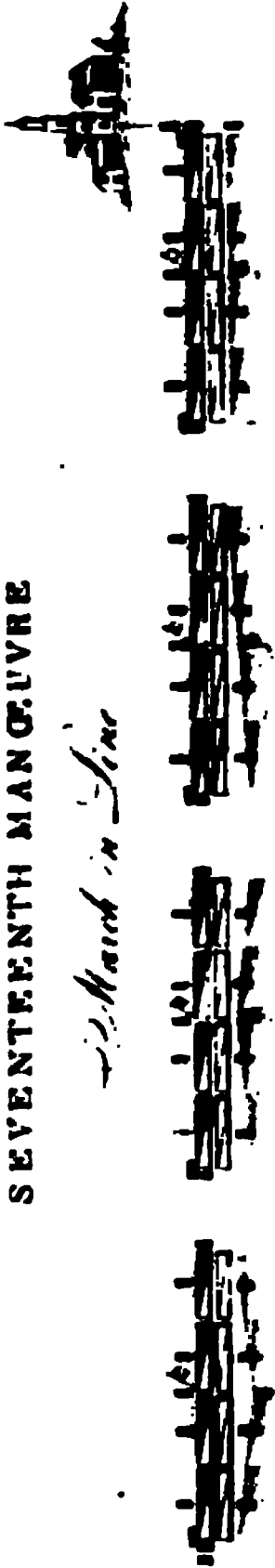
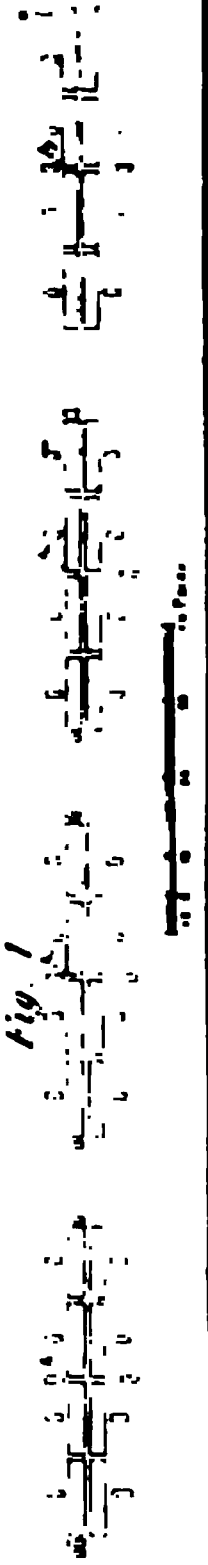


Fig 2.



SOUNDINGS

Allegro

No. 1. Grand



Allegro

No. 2. Andante



Andante

No. 3. Andante



No. 4. Andante



No. 5. March



SOUNDINGS.

Mour.*Mour.**Mour.**Mour.**Mour.**No 1*
*Chorus.**No 2*
*Chorus**No 3*
*Chorus**No 4*
*Chorus**No 5*
Chorus

SONATA

Op. 10

Andante

Andante

Allegro

Allegro

●

●

■

SOUNDINGS.

No 15
Stable Hall
Alligre.

No 16
Matruy Hall
Alligre

No 17
(Lustrations)
Alligretto

No 17
Argem Hall
Alligre.

SOUNDINGS

And out of the great
voice

And out of the great

And out of the great
voice

And out of the great

And out of the great
voice

SOUNDINGS.

Pedestrian



No. 21
Climax Call.



Allegro



No. 22
Argued Call

Bravo



No. 23
Impassioned

SOUNDINGS

Allegro

No. 24
*Strongly Call
for answering*

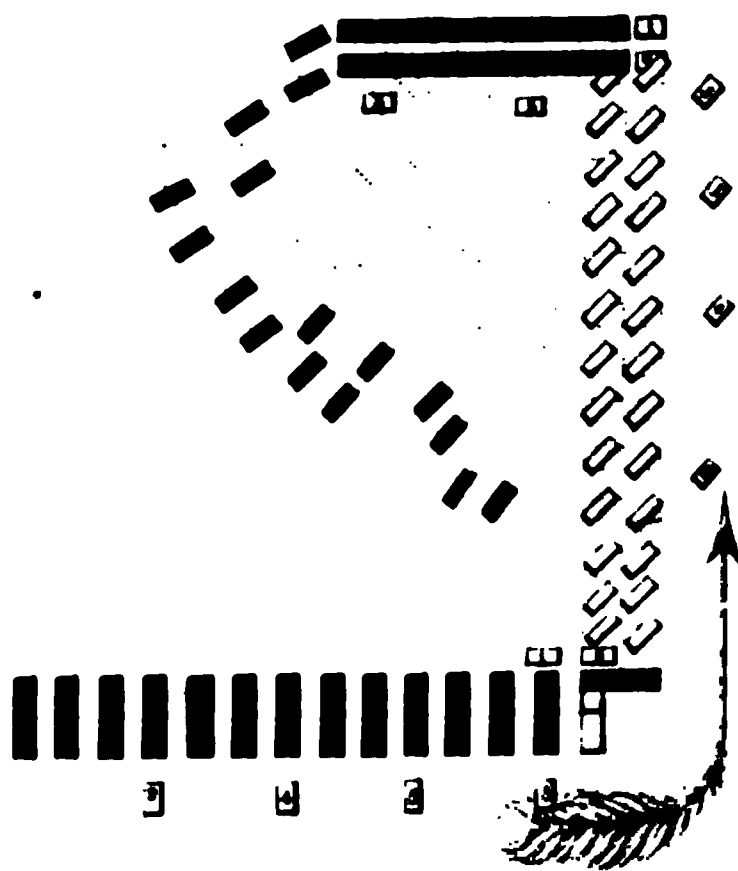


No. 25
Allegro

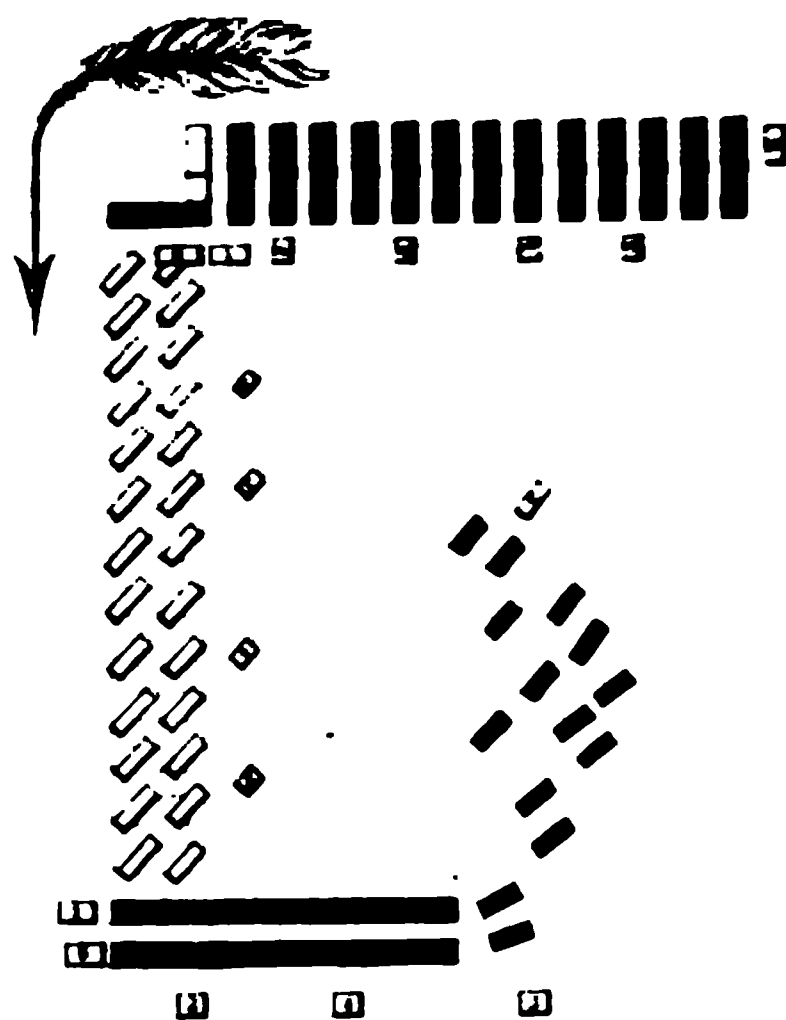


Pl. 73.

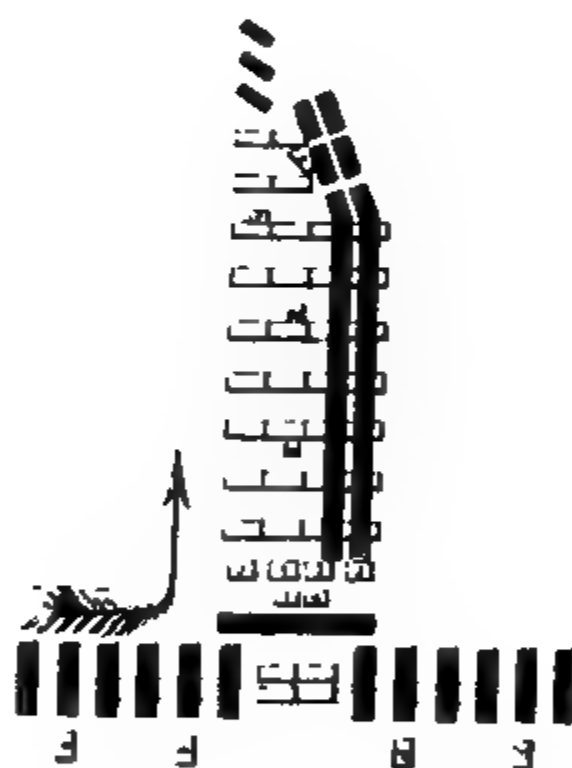
LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE - — COMPANY



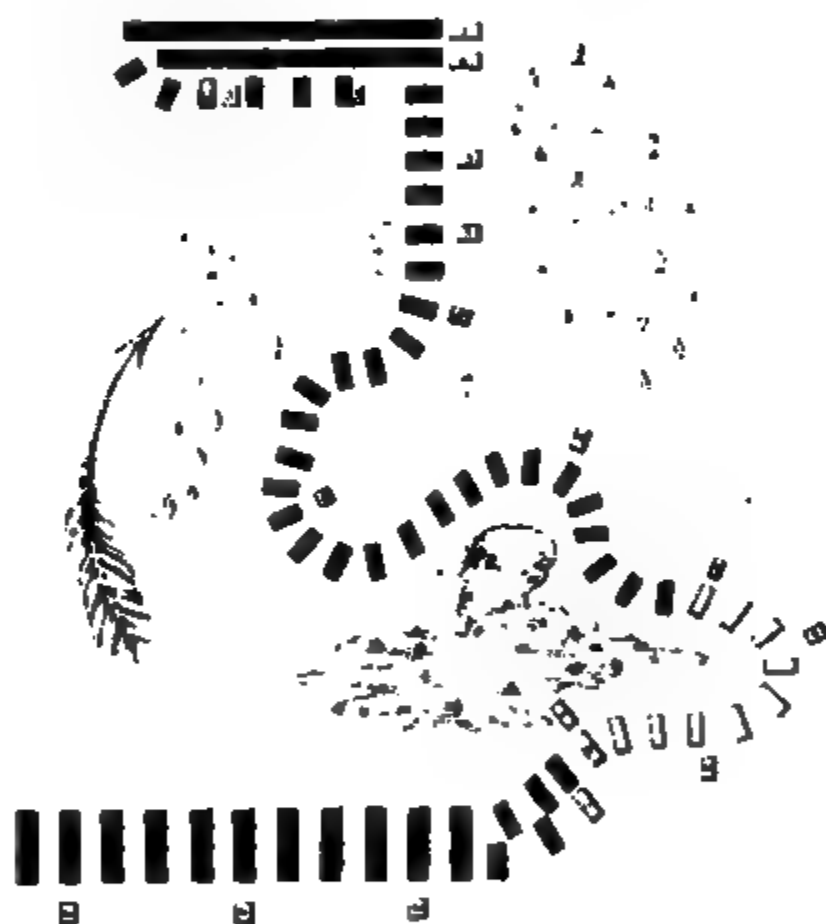
LIGHT INFANTRY AND RIFLE — COMPANY



LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE — — COMPANY.



SHORT INFANTRY and RIFLE COMPANY



11

12

13

14

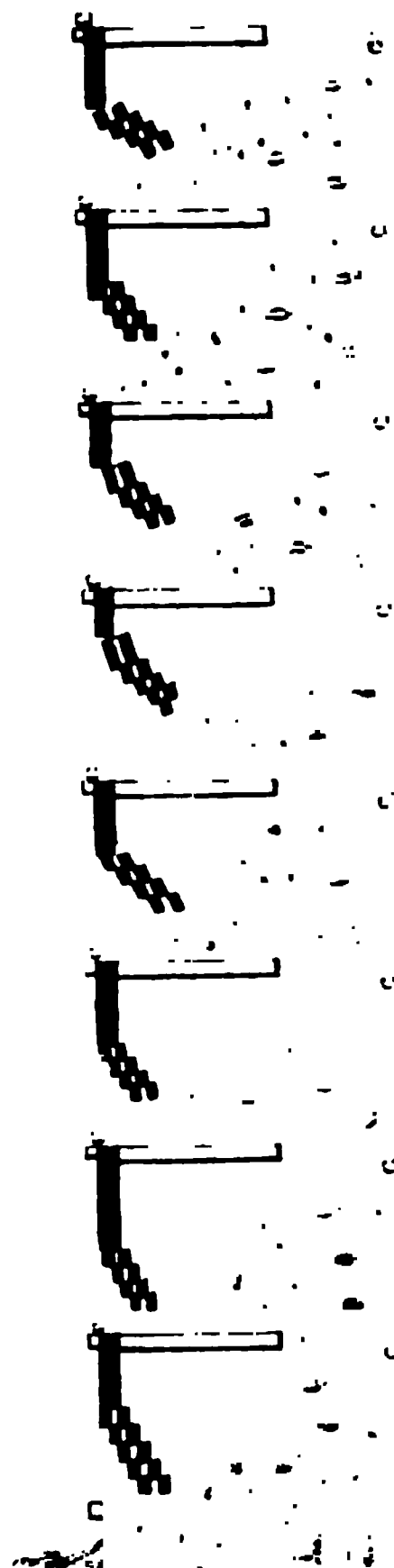
15

16

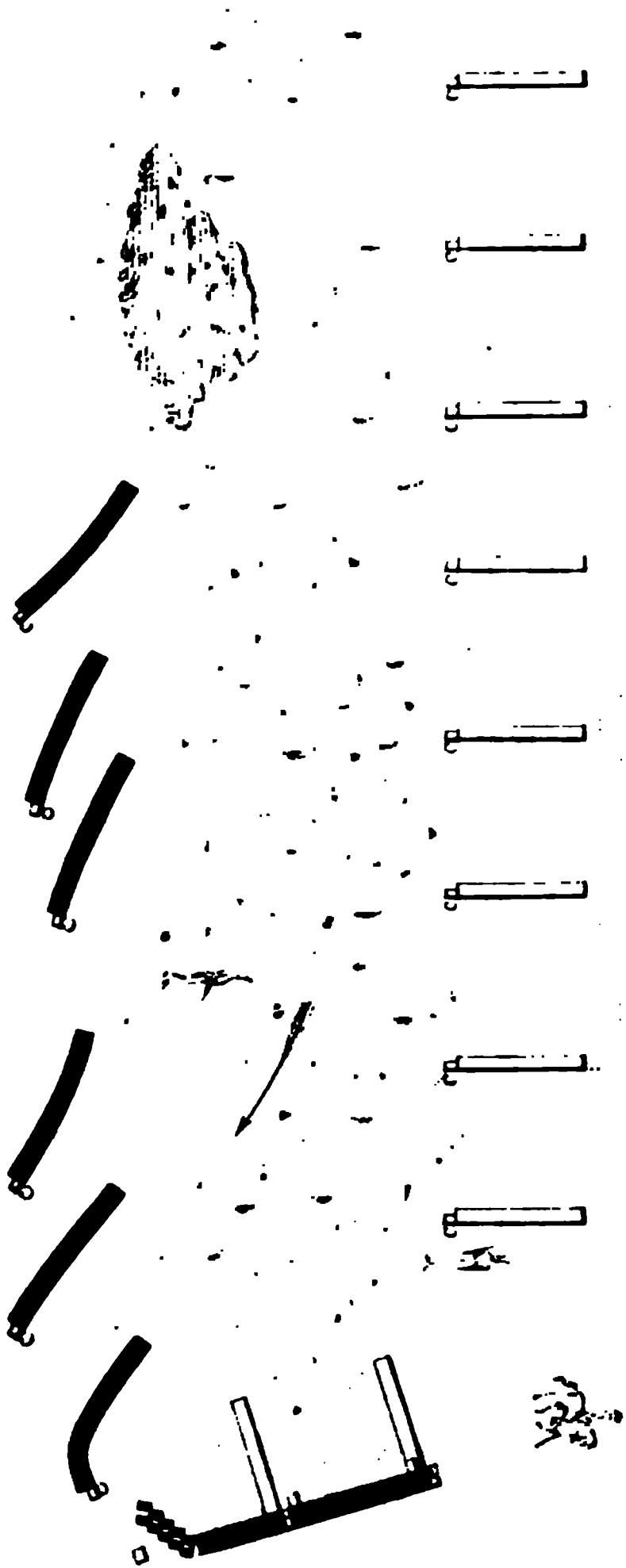
17

18

LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE — BATTALION

~~22~~

LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE - BATTALION.



7

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

199

.

.

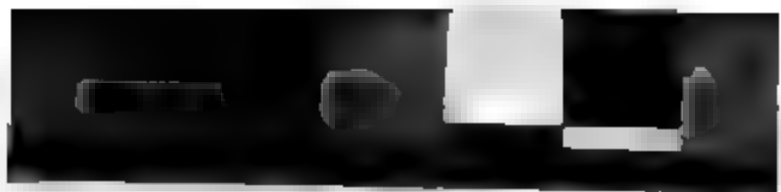
.

.

.

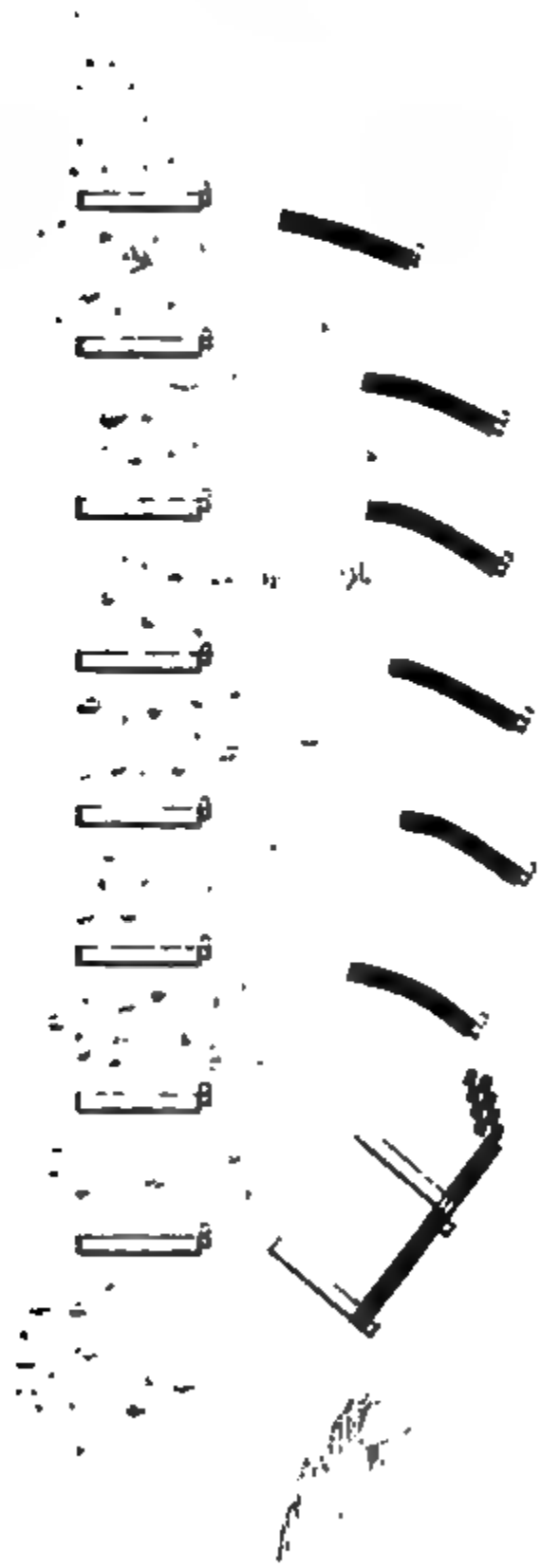
LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE — BATTALION





PL 10

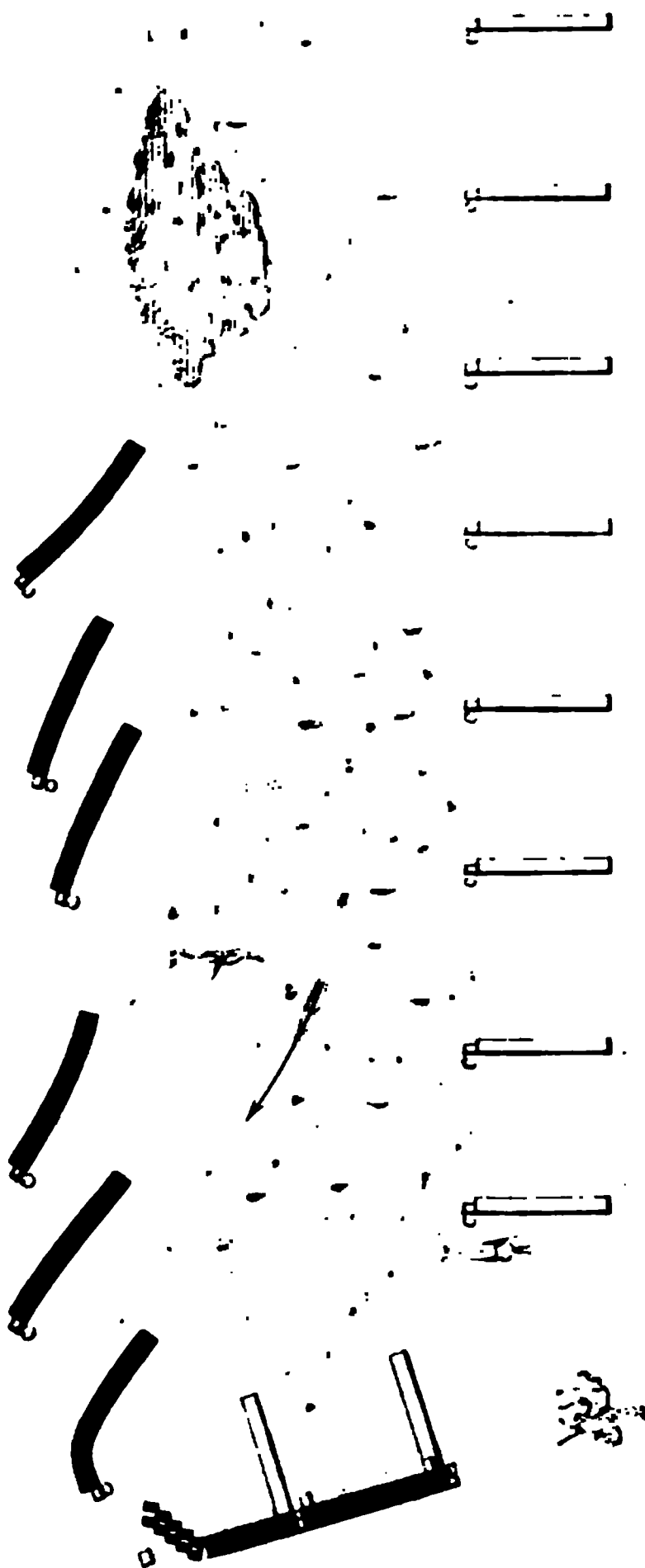
LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE -- BATTALION.



LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE - BATTALION



LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE - BATTALION.



.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

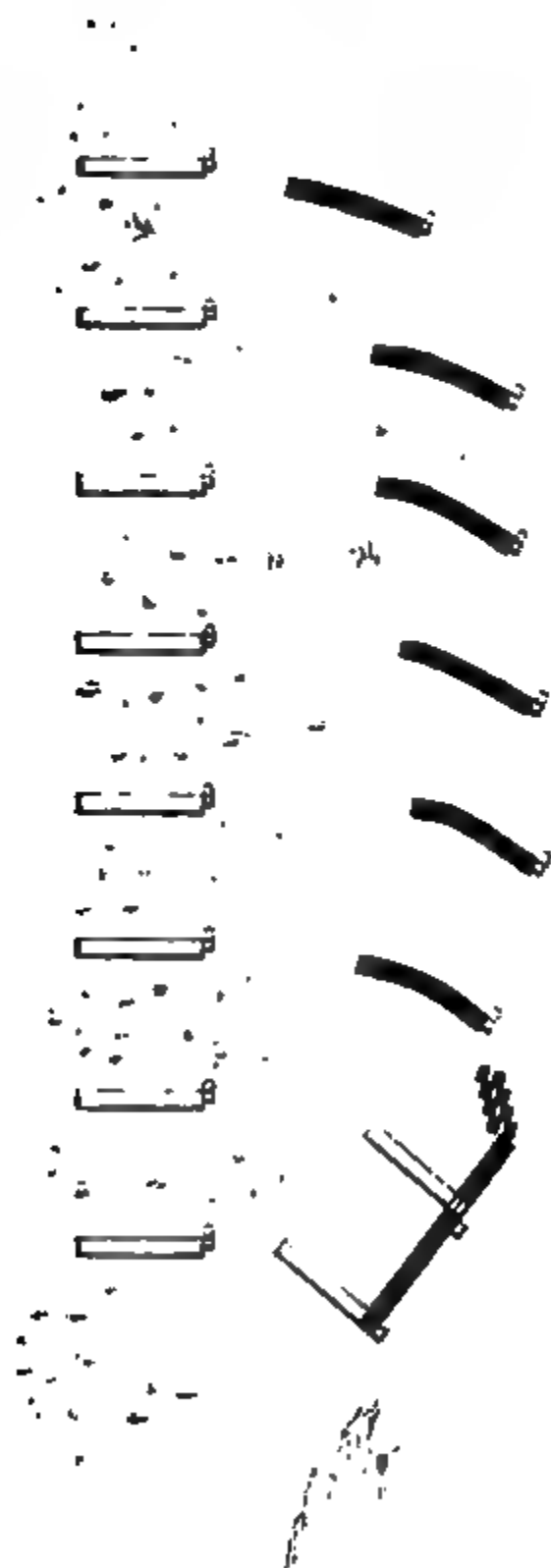
.

.

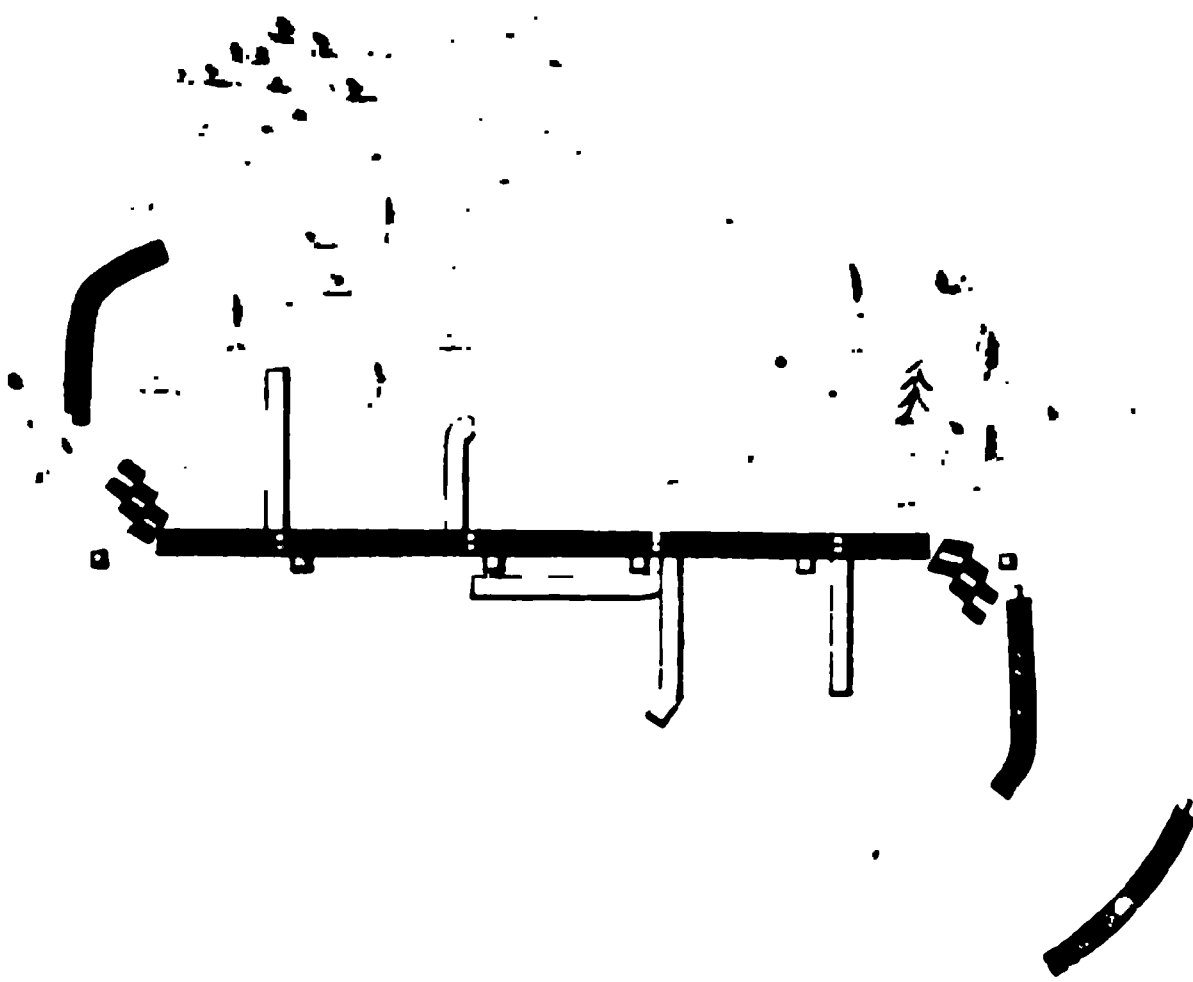
LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE — BATTALION



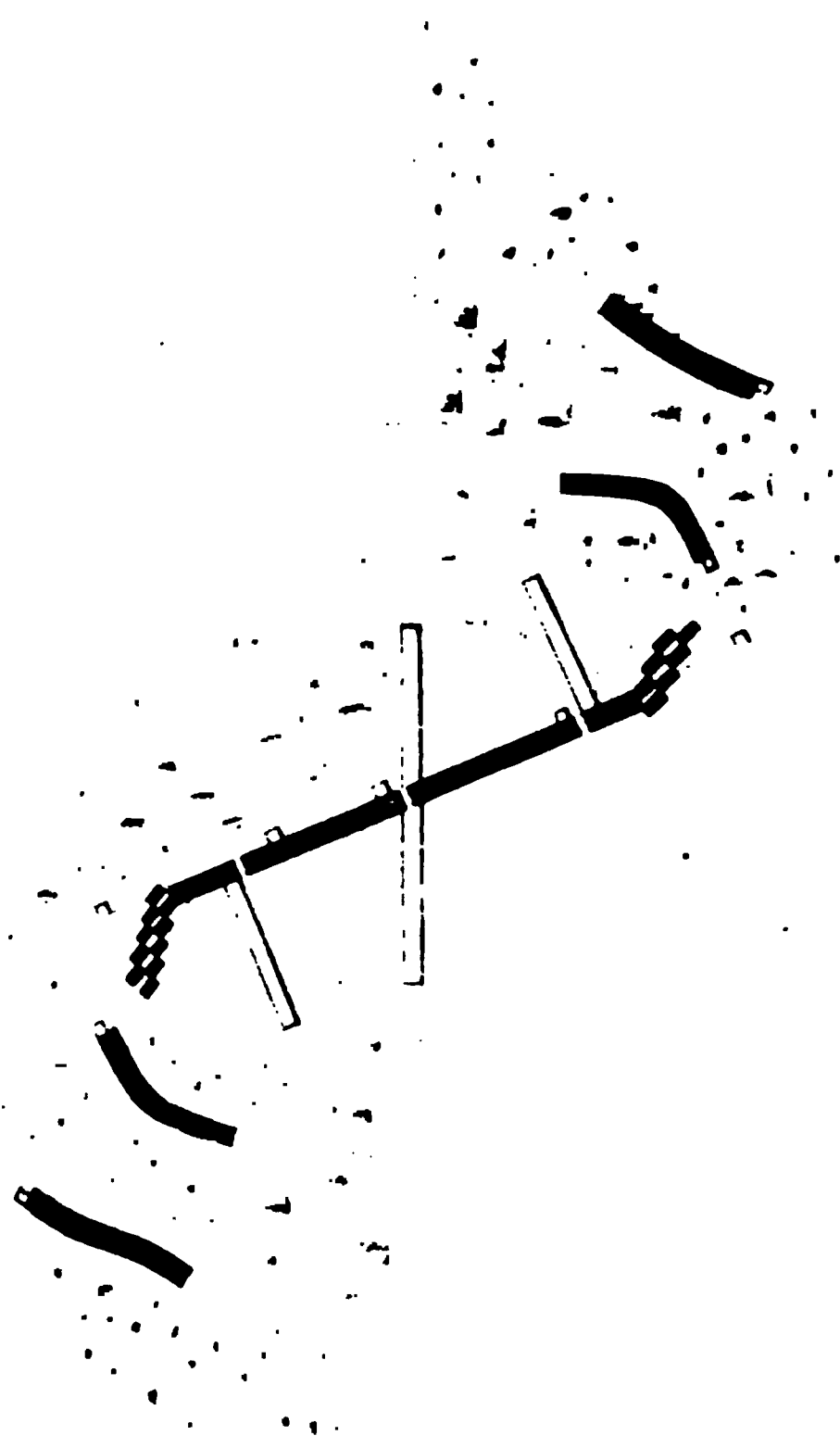
LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE — BATTALION.



LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE BATTALION.



LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE — BATTALION.



'

.

'

LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE BATTALION



LIGHT INFANTRY and RIFLE --- BATTALION

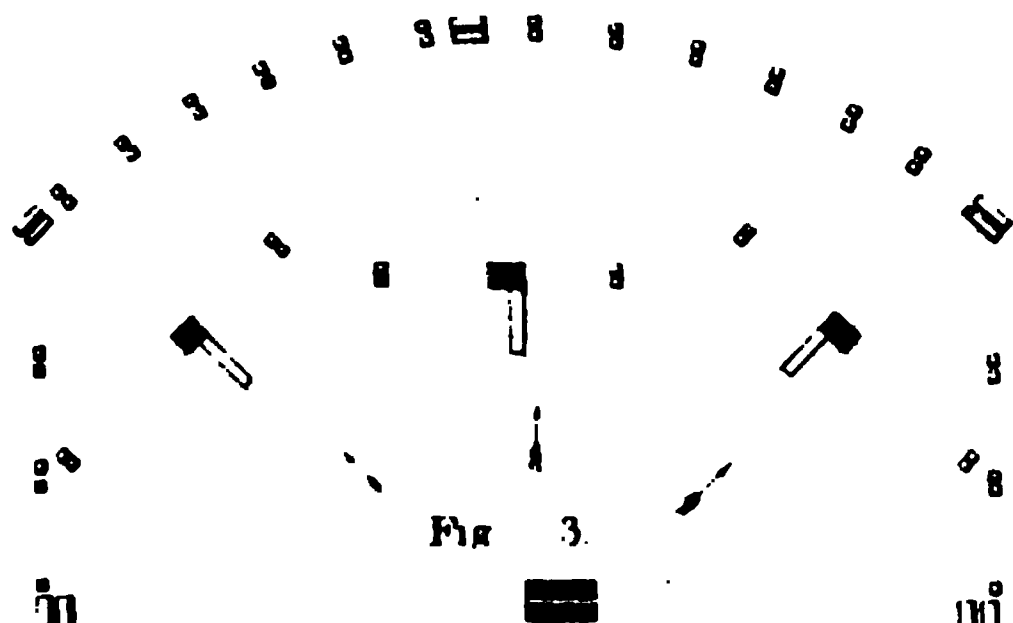


Fig 3.

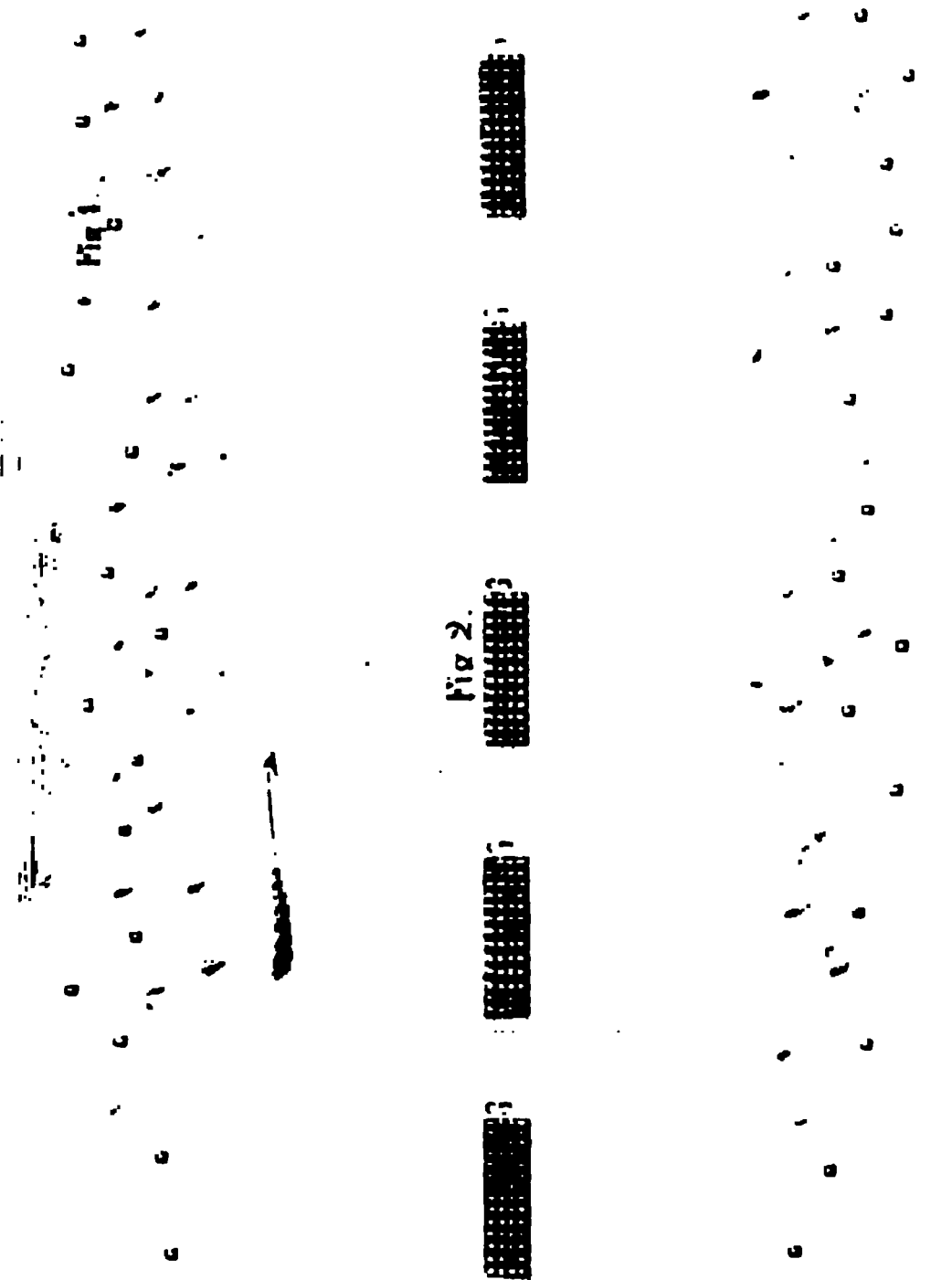


Fig 2.

Light Infanterie - 24te Brigade - Lyones

N^o 1
Violon

N^o 2
Clarin

N^o 3
Admiral

N^o 4
Walt

N^o 5
Admiral

Light Infanteries Hells. Hough. Signals.



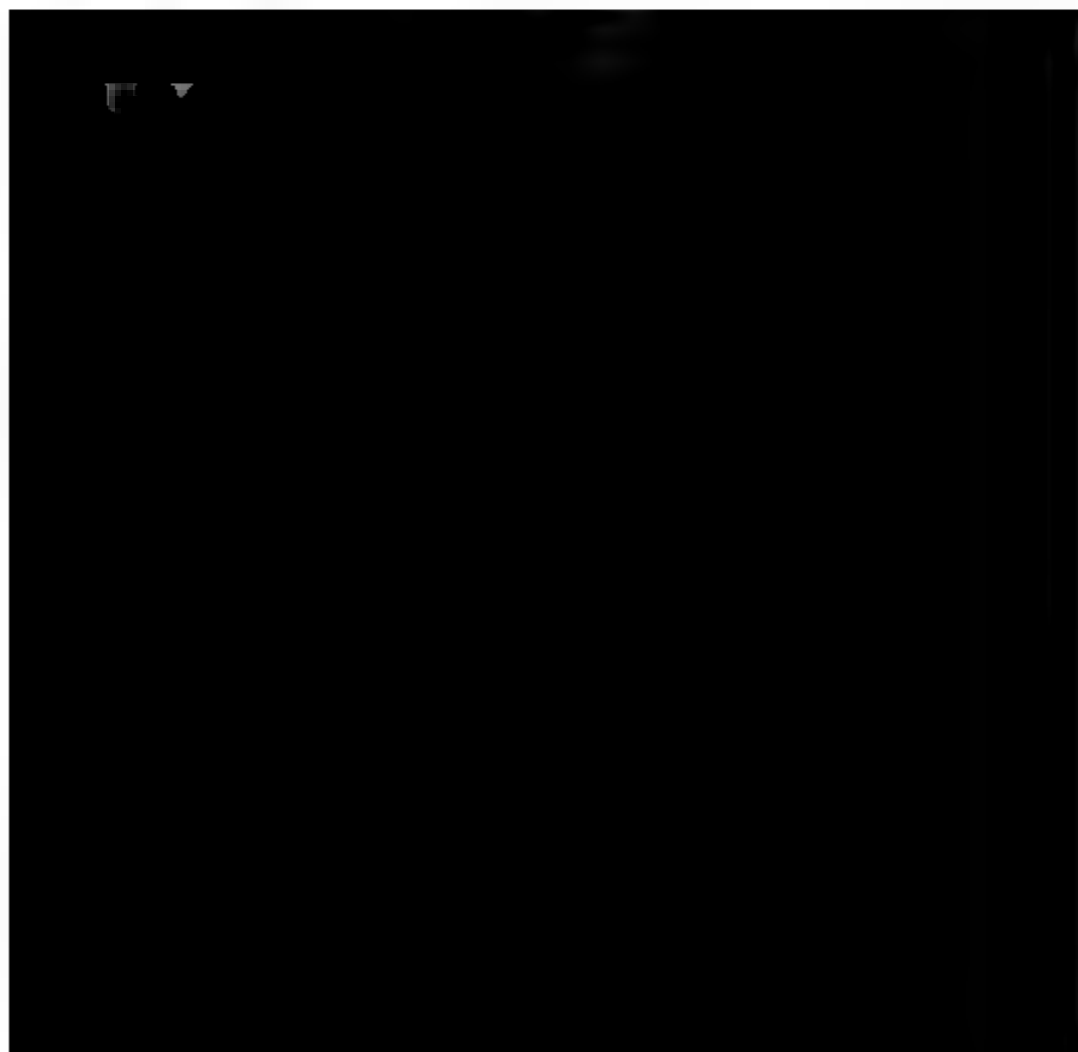
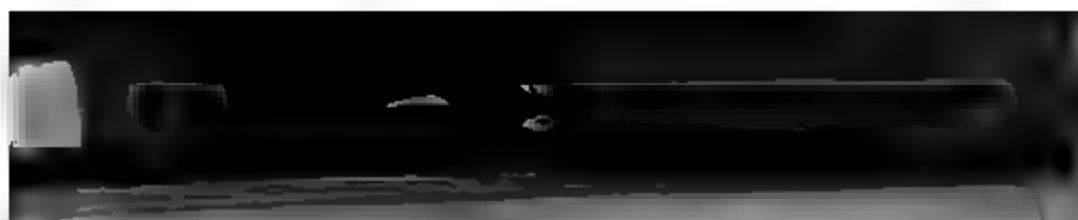
Light Infantry 1-8 9th. Bugle. Signals.

Drum

Assembly

Post

Men



Pl. 88.

Light. Symplocos. 4 1/2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100.

No 14
Mature

No 13
Mature

No 16
Mature

No 18
Mature, good to me.

No 19
Mature



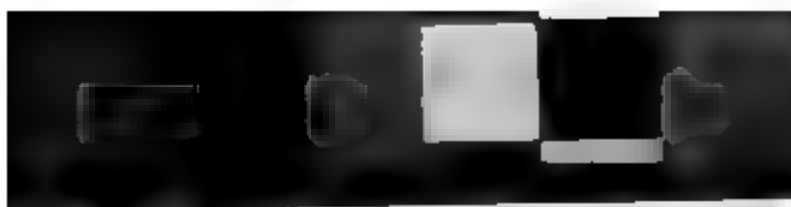
•

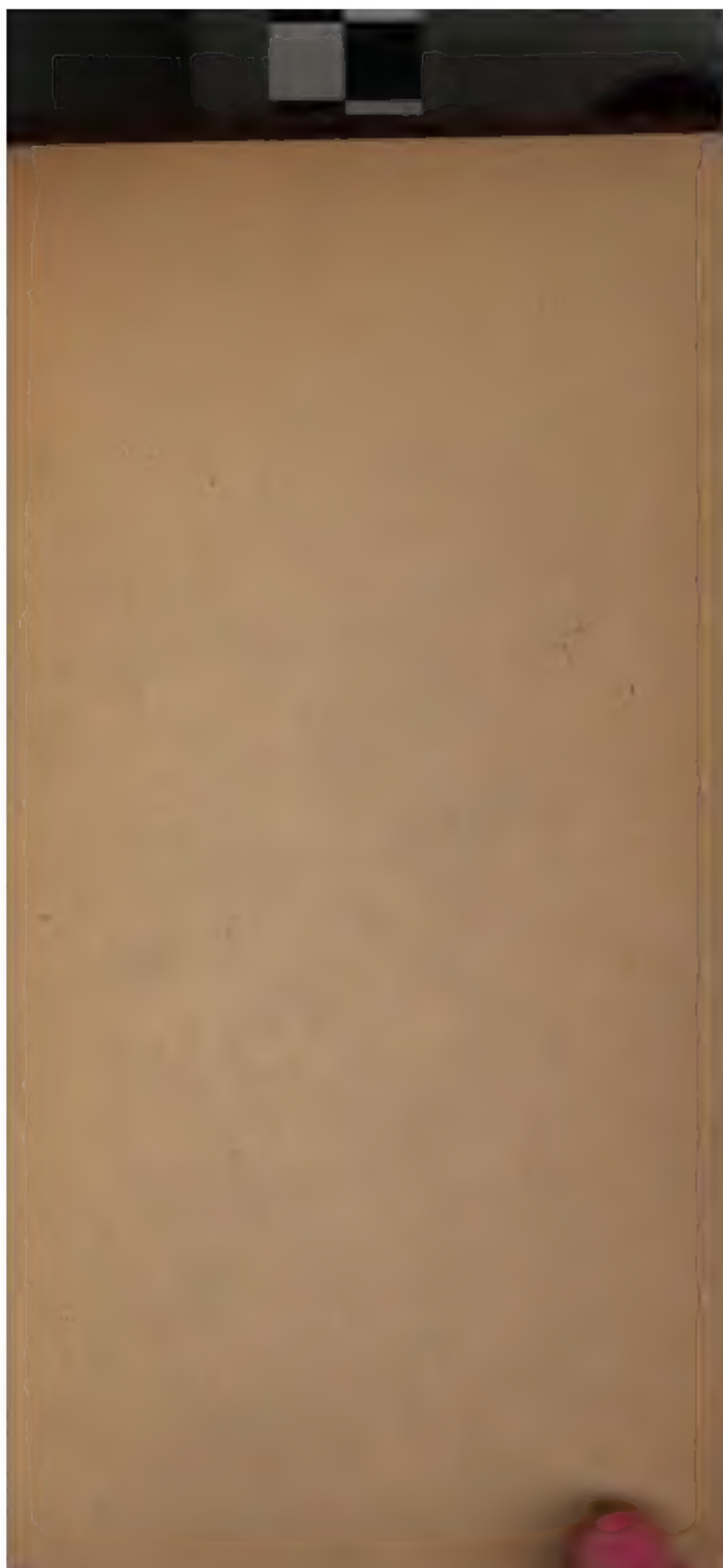
•

•

•

•









3 2044 017 931 429

